

ARTEP 1-425-MTP

MISSION TRAINING PLAN

FOR THE

# AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES BATTALION



**HEADQUARTERS, DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

**DECEMBER 2002**

**DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited**

**This publication is available on the  
General Dennis J. Reimer Training  
and Doctrine Digital Library at  
[www.adtdl.army.mil](http://www.adtdl.army.mil)**

# **Mission Training Plan for the AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES BATTALION**

## **Contents**

	<b>Page</b>
<b>PREFACE</b> .....	<b>iii</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1 UNIT TRAINING</b> .....	<b>1-1</b>
1-1. General .....	1-1
1-2. Supporting Material .....	1-1
1-3. Contents .....	1-2
1-4. Missions and Tasks .....	1-3
1-5. Principles of Training .....	1-5
1-6. Training Strategy .....	1-6
1-7. Conducting Training .....	1-10
1-8. Force Protection (Safety) .....	1-12
1-9. Environmental Protection .....	1-12
1-10. Evaluation .....	1-13
1-11. Feedback .....	1-13
<b>CHAPTER 2 TRAINING MATRIXES</b> .....	<b>2-1</b>
2-1. General .....	2-1
2-2. Mission to Collective Tasks Listing .....	2-1
2-3. Supporting References to Collective Tasks List .....	2-4
2-4. Individual Task to Collective Task Listing .....	2-17
<b>CHAPTER 3 TRAINING PLANS</b> .....	<b>3-1</b>
3-1. General .....	3-1
3-2. Long-Range Planning .....	3-2
3-3. Short-Range Planning .....	3-8
3-4. Near-Term Planning .....	3-10
3-5. Training the Headquarters .....	3-13
3-6. Developing Training Exercises .....	3-18
3-7. Mission Outline .....	3-19

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

\*This publication supersedes ARTEP 1-425-MTP, 5 April 1996.

<b>CHAPTER 4</b>	<b>TRAINING EXERCISES</b> .....	<b>4-1</b>
	4-1. General.....	4-1
	4-2. Field Training Exercise (FTX).....	4-1
	4-3. Situational Training Exercise (STX).....	4-1
	4-4. Other Training Exercises.....	4-1
<b>CHAPTER 5</b>	<b>TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES</b> .....	<b>5-1</b>
	5-1. Introduction.....	5-1
	5-2. Structure .....	5-1
	5-3. Format .....	5-1
	5-4. Use .....	5-2
<b>CHAPTER 6</b>	<b>EXTERNAL EVALUATIONS</b> .....	<b>6-1</b>
	6-1. General.....	6-1
	6-2. Preparing the Evaluation .....	6-1
	6-3. Resource Requirements and Planning Considerations .....	6-6
	6-4. Selecting and Training Observers/Controllers .....	6-7
	6-5. Selecting and Training Opposing Forces .....	6-8
	6-6. Conducting the Evaluation .....	6-9
	6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information.....	6-11
	6-8. Conducting After Action Review.....	6-13
<b>APPENDIX A</b>	<b>COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY</b> .....	<b>A-1</b>
<b>APPENDIX B</b>	<b>OPERATION ORDERS AND FRAGOS</b> .....	<b>B-1</b>
<b>APPENDIX C</b>	<b>RISK MANAGEMENT</b> .....	<b>C-1</b>
<b>APPENDIX D</b>	<b>TRAINING AIDS, DEVICES, SIMULATORS, AND SIMULATIONS (TADSS)</b> .....	<b>D-1</b>
<b>GLOSSARY</b>	.....	<b>Glossary-1</b>
<b>REFERENCES</b>	.....	<b>References-1</b>
<b>USER FEEDBACK</b> .....		<b>User Feedback-1</b>

## Preface

Army operations require worldwide strategic and tactical mobility. As a fully integrated member of the combined arms team, aviation forces conduct combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) operations in support of combined arms and joint operations. Air Traffic Services (ATS) elements support aviation operations in each of these missions. ATS personnel at division, corps, and echelon above corps (EAC) perform airspace integration with joint and combined forces. They help other members of the Army Airspace Command and Control (A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>) cell at division, corps, and EAC to integrate the airspace requirements for joint and combined forces. ATS terminal facilities provide division, corps, and EAC with an instrument recovery capability. Airspace information centers provide airspace guidance and an airspace-management interface. When requested, tactical aviation control teams (TACTs) provide Army aviation units with on-the-spot control and advisory capabilities in any environment. They operate throughout the battlefield framework and are capable of conducting operations day and night.

Mission training plans (MTPs) are a basic source document for collective training and are developed for use by all leaders who have training responsibilities. They are descriptive training documents that provide leaders an inventory of collective tasks that describe “what” to train and a suggested method of how to train to achieve critical wartime mission proficiency for each unit echelon. The MTPs are based on the training principles listed in FM 25-100 and FM 25-101.

This, Army Evaluation and Training Program MTP, Air Traffic Services Battalion, ARTEP 1-425-MTP, complements the Army's collective training doctrine from an ATS battalion commander's perspective. It is intended for all ATS battalions with the common mission to provide terminal and forward ATS to support Joint/Allied/Coalition/Army aviation operations and to conduct A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> at EAC, corps, and division. These battalions include:

TOE 01425A100 Air Traffic Services Battalion, when supporting III CORPS.

TOE 01425A200 Air Traffic Services Battalion, when supporting XVIII CORPS.

TOE 01425A300 Air Traffic Services Battalion, when supporting I CORPS.

TOE 01425A400 Air Traffic Services Battalion, when supporting V CORPS.

The proponent of this publication is Headquarters, Training and Doctrine Command (HQ TRADOC). Send comments and recommendations on DA Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) directly to Commander, U.S. Army Aviation Center, ATTN: ATZQ-TDS-D, Fort Rucker, AL 36362-5000.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

This publication has been reviewed for operations security (OPSEC) considerations.



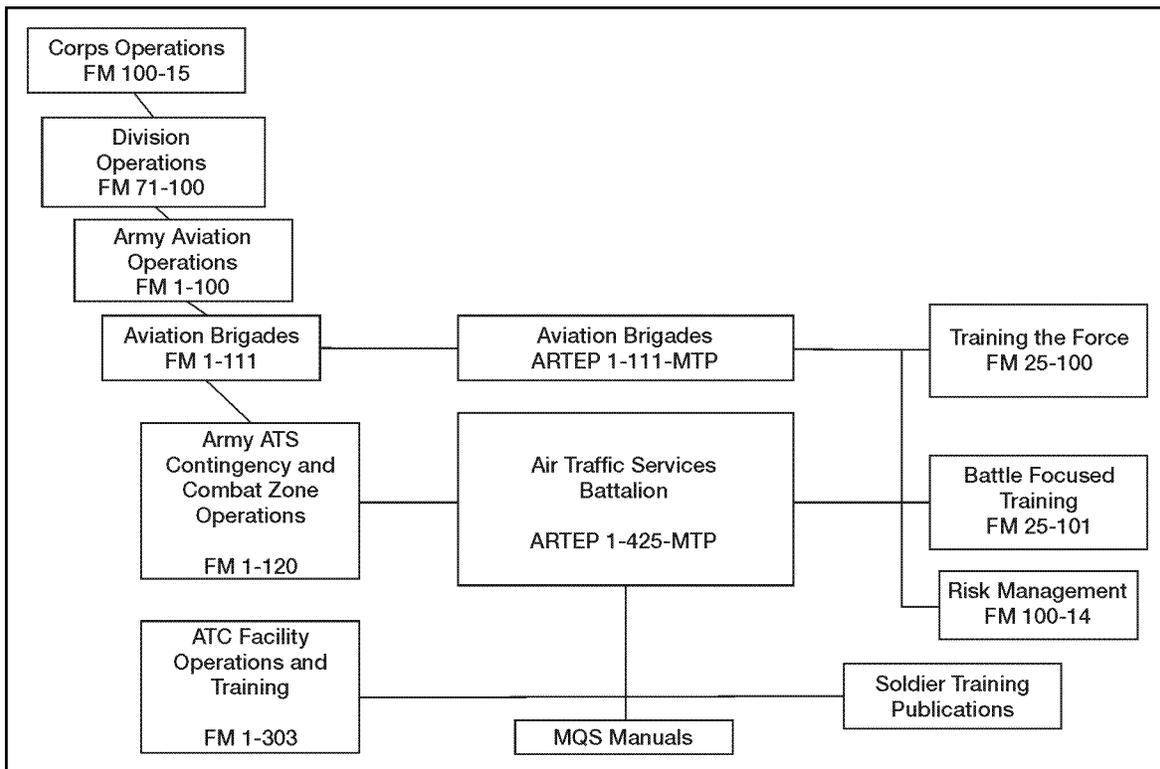
# Chapter 1

## UNIT TRAINING

**1-1. General.** This mission training plan (MTP) provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit's training program will depend on the following factors:

- a. Unit's mission essential task list (METL).
- b. Chain of command training directives and guidance.
- c. Training priorities of the unit.
- d. Availability of training resources and areas.

**1-2. Supporting Material.** Aviation forces routinely conduct combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) missions as members of combined arms or joint task forces. Consequently, aviation commanders and their subordinate leadership must be well versed in battle tasks across the battlefield operating systems (BOSs). Air traffic services (ATS) battalion soldiers must be prepared to support operations at all levels of command. Often this support is conducted with minimal guidance, prior planning, and under some of the most severe adverse environmental conditions. The battalion's training program is oriented toward its critical wartime missions. Besides this MTP, the training program is based on the following publications. (Figure 1-1 illustrates the relationship of these publications.)



**Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationships.**

- a. Soldier's manuals (SMs) for the appropriate military occupational specialty (MOS) and skill level. This includes manuals for the low-density MOSs held by company and battalion personnel.
- b. Refer to the references appendix for a complete listing of appropriate soldier training publications (STPs).
- c. Military qualification standards (MQS) manual for (aviation) company grade officers (STP 1-15II-MQS) and MQS II manual of common tasks (STP 21-II-MQS).

---

**NOTE:** MQS manuals will be phased out upon replacement by Officer Foundation Standards (OFS) products.

---

- d. ARTEP 1-111-MTP.
- e. FM 100-15.
- f. FM 71-100.
- g. FM 100-14.
- h. FM 1-100.
- i. FM 1-111.
- j. FM 1-120.

---

**NOTE:** The Army is fielding a fully integrated training system through the use of CD-ROM and the Internet. The Standard Army Training System (SATS) is a unit-level training development tool that ties into the U.S. Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC) training database Automated System Approach to Training (ASAT), (<http://www.asat.army.mil>). Through SATS, units are able to download current doctrine from the General Dennis J. Reimer Training and Doctrine Digital Library (RDL) (<http://155.217.58.100>) for their use in training and training development. The RDL (<http://www.adtdl.army.mil/atdls.htm>) is the official Department of the Army (DA) web site that contains Army field manuals (FMs), training circulars, Army training and evaluation program (ARTEP) MTPs, and STPs. These training products are "built" from the RDL database. Information on how to obtain SATS software and a user's guide for the database are available through the project manager at the U.S. Army Training Support Center.

---

**1-3. Contents.** This MTP comprises six chapters and four appendixes:

- a. **Chapter 1, Unit Training.** This chapter provides a variety of information regarding the training program. It stresses aspects of training unique to aviation units. It serves as a foundation for other chapters and appendixes and explains their use. It explains how to use the MTP in establishing an effective training program.
- b. **Chapter 2, Training Matrixes.** This chapter provides matrixes that show the relationship between battalion missions and supporting collective tasks. It also contains references for each collective task sorted by BOS.
- c. **Chapter 3, Training Plans.** This chapter describes the use of the MTP for developing battalion-level training plans and also provides mission outlines. It is designed to assist commanders in preparing training plans for critical wartime missions.
- d. **Chapter 4, Training Exercises.** This chapter provides guidance on planning, preparing, and executing battalion-training exercises. These exercises may be modified to suit the training needs of each individual unit.
- e. **Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.** This chapter provides training criteria for all collective tasks that the battalion and its subordinate elements—staff, HHC, and CSS sections—must

master so the unit can perform its critical wartime missions. Each training and evaluation outline (T&EO) constitutes a part of one or more critical missions. In various combinations, T&EOs compose larger training vehicles such as situational training exercises (STXs) and field training exercises (FTXs) described in chapter 4.

**f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations.** This chapter is a guide for planning, preparing, and executing evaluations of battalion training exercises. Evaluation involves determining proficiency based on the training objectives of the exercises and this particular MTP. This chapter goes into detail describing how to conduct an AAR.

**g. Appendix A, Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS).** This appendix addresses the overarching strategy of training in the combined arms realm as it applies to aviation. CATS is the U.S. Army's training strategy that captures training event frequency, critical gates, and supporting resources. The strategy describes the mix of training in the institution, unit, and for the individual, both now and in the future. In addition, it prescribes the mix of training resources Army aviation requires for present and long-range training.

**h. Appendix B, Operation Orders and FRAGOS.** A sample exercise operation order (OPORD) and a fragmentary order (FRAGO) are provided to lead the trainer through the process of developing an order to coordinate the execution of an exercise. The sample OPORD/FRAGO is a combat order; i.e., it pertains to strategic, operational, or tactical operations and their service support.

**i. Appendix C, Risk Management.** The risk management appendix is included to aid the trainer or commander in assessing tactical, operational, and fratricide hazards associated with a mission. A thorough risk assessment, which includes mitigated factors to reduce the overall risk, can be an effective combat multiplier in applying assets to a task with emphasis on protecting the force.

**j. Appendix D, Training Aids, Devices, Simulators, and Simulations (TADSS).** This appendix presents the United States Army Aviation simulation strategy. This strategy is a management and planning tool for the Army aviation simulation community. The strategy addresses current and future systems requirements and support Army Aviation Modernization and the process of continuous transformation to Force XXI. Included are recommended training, exercises, and military operations for all echelons, from individual trainers through collective, combined arms, and joint exercises. It includes example rehearsals for plans and operations and evaluations of completed missions.

#### 1-4. Missions and Tasks.

**a.** The battalion's table of organization and equipment (TOE) wartime mission is to support ATS, C<sup>2</sup>, and combat, CS, and CSS operations. Critical missions for the ATS battalion are found in its CATS.

- (1) Air traffic services.
- (2) Command and control.
- (3) CS and CSS operations.

**b.** The key to training and sustaining proficiency of these wartime tasks is to understand "how we train to fight" at every echelon. Training programs must result in demonstrated tactical and technical competence, confidence, and initiative in soldiers and their leaders. The Army's training doctrine is established in FM 25-100. Techniques and procedures for planning, executing, and assessing training is found in FM 25-101. Unique guidance for ATS commanders is found in FM 1-303. Every commander is expected to know, understand, and apply the concepts found in these manuals.

**(1) Battle-Focused Training.** Battle focus is a concept used to derive peacetime training requirements from wartime missions. Battle focus guides the planning, execution, and assessment of each organization's training program to ensure its members train as they are going to fight. Battle focus is critical throughout the entire training process and is used by commanders to allocate resources for training based on the unit's METL. Its implementation enables commanders to structure a training program that copes with nonmission-related requirements while focusing on mission essential training activities. Battle focus is recognition that a unit cannot attain proficiency to standard on

every task that it is capable of performing whether because of time or other resource constraints. However, commanders can achieve a successful training program by narrowing the focus to a reduced number of mission essential tasks.

**(2) Mission Training Plan (MTP).** Collective training builds combat teams. It develops critical teamwork needed by units and provides a challenging environment where units at various echelons can train to progressively tougher and more realistic conditions. It prepares soldiers to perform collective tasks that are essential for success in combat through training events. MTP 1-425 is the basic source document for the collective training required by an ATS battalion. The MTP is a descriptive training document that provides leaders with an inventory of critical tasks that describe “what” to train and a suggested method on “how” to train to achieve critical wartime mission proficiency. The CATS compliments MTPs by describing “who,” “when,” “where,” and “how” collective tasks will be trained.

**(3) Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS).** CATS is the Army's "overarching training architecture." CATS contains approved training and doctrinal strategy, and provides the framework for total Army structured training for both units and institutions. CATS functionally groups tasks to guide the integration of tasks into combined arms oriented training strategies. Current CATS provides doctrine-based training strategies including events, gates, and training resource options for the institution or unit trainer and integrates training horizontally among levels of a type unit and vertically across the combined arms and services team.

**(a)** The training program developed and executed by the ATS battalion is a component of the Army's CATS. CATS provides direction and guidance on how the total Army will train, and to identify the resources required to support that training. CATS provides the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training and resources required to train to standard. They provide the commander with a descriptive menu for training.

**(b)** The ATS battalion CATS is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the battalion to standard. It lists required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP those tasks required to train his METL. He then uses the strategies in the CATS to develop a battle-focused training plan by integrating and linking METL-driven MTP tasks with CATS training events.

**(c)** The building blocks of the training program for each critical operation are individual tasks that are found in appropriate SMs, STPs, MQS manuals, FM 1-303, and the collective unit tasks covered by the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in chapter 5 of this MTP. These tasks may be trained individually or combined with others to form more complex exercises, such as STXs and FTXs (see chapter 4). Tasks are selected for training using the process outlined in FM 25-100 and chapter 3 of this MTP.

**(4) Integration of Soldier, Leader, and Collective Training.** A critical aspect of the battle focus concept is to understand the responsibility for, and the linkage between, the collective mission essential tasks and the individual and crew tasks that support them. A unique aspect of Army aviation is the individual and crew training requirements that commanders must satisfy. Commanders must provide the training guidance, resources, and focus to ensure that they are effectively and efficiently trained to standard. Fortunately, aviation commanders are resourced with aviation noncommissioned officers (NCOs), with the technical and tactical expertise to train, evaluate, and provide management assistance to the commander. As a team, the commander, command sergeant major, and standardization NCOs must jointly coordinate the collective mission essential tasks and the individual and crew training tasks on which the unit will concentrate its efforts during a given period. NCOs have the primary role in training and developing individual soldier skills. As a primary role, standardization/quality assurance (QA) NCOs ensure established training standards are followed. Officers at every level are responsible for training to established standards during both individual and collective training.

**1-5. Principles of Training.** This MTP is based on the training principles outlined in FM 25-100. These principles are based on the premise that training is the process that melds human and material resources into the required capabilities for the Army to accomplish assigned strategic roles. Aviation units are expected to fight and train as members of combined arms and joint teams. An ATS battalion commander must prepare his staff to plan for operations across the BOSs with a focus on operations of the division or corps commander.

**a. Train as a Combined Arms and Services Team.** Army doctrine places a premium on teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute combined arms, joint, and coalition operations without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Combined arms proficiency develops when battalions train together. Leaders must regularly practice METL tasks across the full wartime spectrum of combat, CS, and CSS units. Commanders must actively seek opportunities to train across the BOSs. Such training is critical for the preparation of aviation leaders and staffs to fight aviation task forces as members of a larger combined or joint operation task force. Participation in, and coordination of, training strategies with other commanders, formally and informally, are critical to the process. Quarterly training briefs (QTBs), and preparation of long-range training calendars, all offer opportunities to plan combined training exercises.

**b. Train as You Fight.** The goal of combat-level training is to achieve METL task proficiency. Units fight as they have been trained. To ensure success in combat, soldiers and units must perform to established standards that are rigidly enforced by leaders. Because it is impossible to predict which type of weather and terrain a unit will face in the future when actually executing a combat mission, training should be conducted under varying conditions that are both realistic and progressively more challenging. Night operations, using night vision devices, are especially critical to the success of aviation forces. Aviation units must learn to live in and operate (to include doing maintenance) out of the field. They must do realistic gunnery, operate against credible opposing forces (OPFOR), and learn to provide limited self-protection. It is not unrealistic to expect aviation companies to go to the field monthly and battalions, quarterly.

**c. Use Appropriate Doctrine.** Training must conform to Army doctrine. Operational and supporting doctrinal manuals describe common procedures and uniform methods that permit commanders and organizations to adjust rapidly to changing situations.

**d. Use Performance-Oriented Training.** ATS battalion commanders are especially cognizant of the need to build experience and expertise by frequently performing critical tasks and missions. The underlying premise of the task-based aviation CATS is that, in order to sustain a proficient level of expertise at critical individual, crew, and collective tasks, training resources to practice accepted tasks, conditions, and standards must be optimized on a continuing basis. Commanders must use structured training to include the use of available training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations (TADSS). In addition, leaders are encouraged to become familiar with the insertion of high-technology training techniques and other Army Training XXI initiatives such as distance learning and the RDL.

**e. Train to Challenge.** Tough, realistic, and intellectually and physically challenging training excites and motivates soldiers and leaders. It builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills. All ATS soldiers must be proficient in the operation of their assigned equipment. Individual, crew, and collective training must be conducted to standard on a continuing basis. Leaders, staffs, commissioned officers, warrant officers, and enlisted personnel must all be challenged to optimize the capabilities of their unique weapon systems.

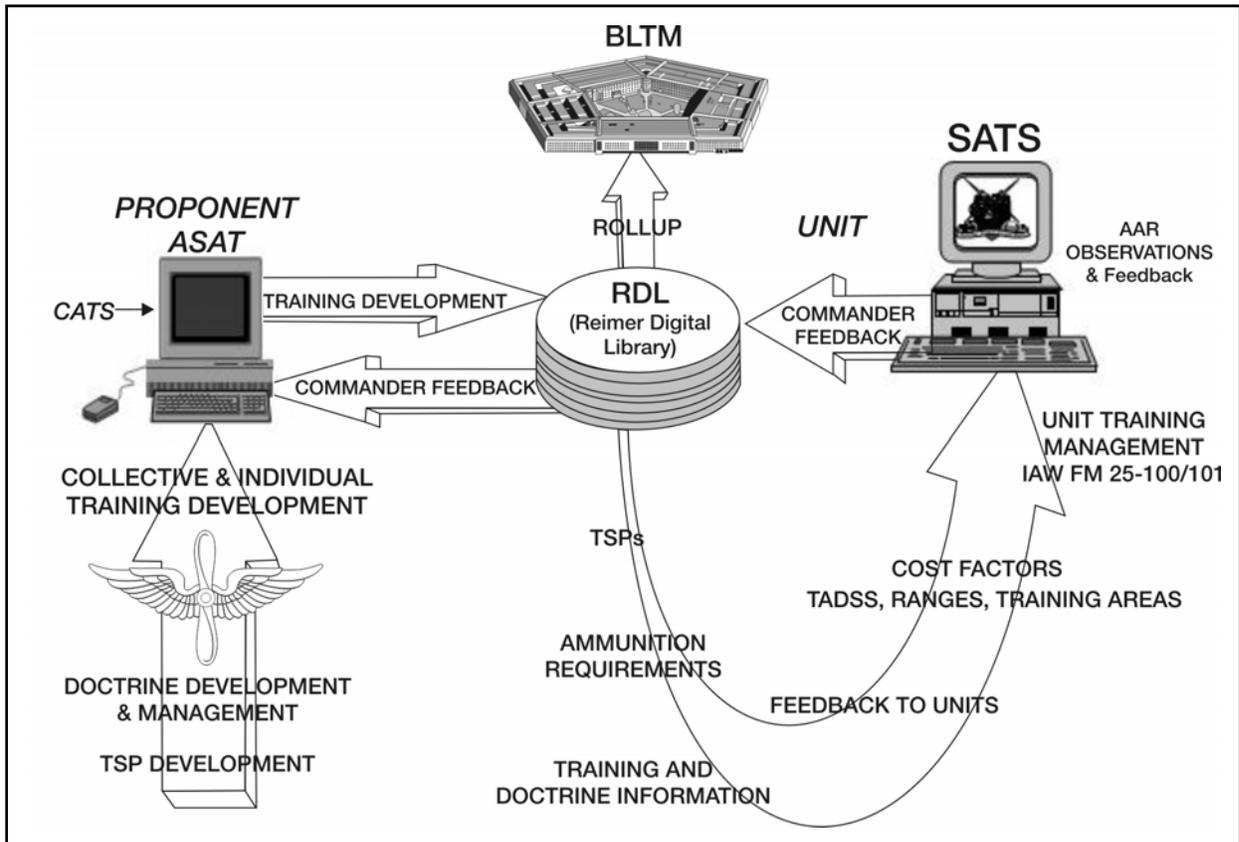
**f. Train Using Multiechelon Techniques.** ATS is a complicated, sophisticated business requiring technically and tactically proficient soldiers. Aviation CATS reflects multiechelon training to optimize training opportunities at all levels. As such, individual and crew sustainment training must be an integral part of a unit's ongoing collective training. However, it is important to note that not all individual and crew training can be done while units are engaged in training a collective task. Some training resources must be allocated to individual and controller training as outlined in appropriate manuals.

**g. Train to Maintain.** Maintenance training is a vital part of every training program. Readiness, as a function of training, personnel and equipment availability, directly reflects the number of missions a unit can accomplish. Balancing the often-competing demands of a high-mission operational tempo (OPTEMPO) with maintenance training proficiency is the challenge of leaders at all levels. Commanders are challenged to balance maintenance and training to remain in the training band of excellence.

**h. Make Commanders the Primary Trainers.** One of the keys to success is proficient leadership at each level of command. Leaders must understand the training process and their unique responsibilities. Leaders must be given the resources and guidance to train to war fighting standards. Commanders set the standards personally and professionally. They plan, integrate, and provide guidance and resources for battalion training. The toughest training challenge for most commanders is to train a competent war fighting staff that has mastered the myriad tasks included in this MTP. Commanders are responsible for safety and standardization programs.

**1-6. Training Strategy.** The role of this MTP is to facilitate planning, preparation, and execution of unit training in a logical and efficient manner. Although a commander is responsible for planning, preparing, and conducting unit training, he requires significant help from numerous agencies within the chain of command to ensure the battalion's training is maximized within available resourcing. Commanders not only must understand Army training doctrine (FM 25-100/FM 25-101) as it relates to their specific war fighting requirements, they also must understand the resourcing and training development processes designed to facilitate their success.

**a. Training Development Process.** Figure 1-2 depicts the Army's process to develop training for soldiers. The process for an ATS battalion is initiated at the United States Army Aviation Center. Aviation doctrine (FMs; tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTPs); etc.) and training publications (CATS, MTPs, STPs, Training Support Packages (TSPs), etc.) are developed and continually updated with feedback from commanders. Subject matter experts are placing these manuals into a digital database for access by commanders and staffs as well as resourcing personnel. As such, commanders and staffs must become familiar with the RDL process to enable them to access these digital publications.



**Figure 1-2. Training Development Process.**

**b. Standard Army Training System (SATS).** Central to training planning is SATS, the commander's interface with the Army's information database. This database is the source of training and doctrinal publications such as this MTP, resourcing information, and tools to support his training development. The SATS database provides computer-based access to CATS and the T&EOs in this MTP as well as to the supporting collective and individual tasks. SATS users obtain the CATS and T&EOs from the World Wide Web through the TRADOC RDL data repository. They can then tailor task content to specific unit training needs and print the revised T&EOs for use in training exercises. The SATS database also provides users with other management tools, such as a training schedule generator, and resourcing information to determine required OPTEMPO. Information reference SATS is in paragraph 1-2 above.

**c. Aviation Training Vision.** The Aviation Branch's training vision is to develop a realistic and executable Army aviation training strategy. The strategy will continue to provide the force highly motivated aviation soldiers and leaders equipped with modern systems. These leaders are trained to world class proficiency. They operate in organizations inherently versatile with maneuver advantage and warfighting effectiveness that will influence all dimensions of the current and future battlespace. Aviation commanders are expected to be proficient task force commanders, capable of planning and leading forces from across the BOS. Aviation commanders are expected to develop training strategies that will:

- (1) Develop battle-focused training based on current training doctrine.
- (2) Conduct task-based training based on unit CATS and METL.

- (3) Train leaders at every level.
- (4) Train combined arms staffs.
- (5) Focus on proficiency rather than currency.
- (6) Focus on warfighting needs and readiness.
- (7) Maximize individual and collective simulation to allow units to enter live training at a higher level.

**d. Battalion Commander's Training Strategy.** A battalion commander's training strategy reflects his intent on how to provide structured training to prepare his soldiers to deploy, fight, and win in combat at any intensity level, anywhere in the world. His strategy allows for task-based, structured training, and it incorporates the three training environments (constructive, virtual, and live). His strategy focuses on his target audience (soldiers, leaders, staffs, and subordinate units) and allows training progress in a crawl, walk, run fashion through the training environments—ensuring proficiency is gained at the lower level before moving to the next level. The strategy reflects a thorough analysis and understanding of his unit's METL, CATS, and this MTP. This strategy is synchronized with the commander's specific set of resource constraints and training emphasis.

(1) The battalion's METL forms the basis for the organization's training plans. It is stabilized, when approved, and is normally modified only if changes occur in wartime missions. No attempt should be made to prioritize tasks within the METL. By definition, all tasks that have been placed on the METL are equally essential to ensure mission accomplishment. METL and available resources will form the framework of the battalion training strategy. The METL will establish the width and the available resources will set the depth.

(2) The training planning process as outlined in FM 25-101 links unit METL and individual soldier and aircrew training with the execution of battle-focused training. Commanders initiate the process using subordinates, key staff members, and NCO leaders to assess the training level on mission essential tasks. The process is two-phased, including long- and short-range planning. Controller training is an integral part of these plans; it must be reflected on long- and short-range calendars. Most importantly, it must be specifically addressed in the commander's QTG. It must be an integral part of quarterly training briefings (QTBs) at all levels of command. Commanders must become intimately familiar with FM 25-100 and FM 25-101. These documents are the training bibles for the Army and are used to format training plans, QTBs, and resourcing documents within divisions and corps.

(3) Because FM 25-100 and FM 25-101 do not consider some unique aspects of ATS training, additional guidance for aviation commanders is included in FM 1-303. It is a guide for ATS Leaders to use as they develop and execute that is focused on individual, crew, and collective proficiency.

(4) Maintenance capabilities and training plans must be synchronized. Army training doctrine challenges commanders to "Train to sustain proficiency," or in other words, sustain proficiency within the "Band of Excellence."

(5) A key element in any unit training strategy is identification of critical training gates. These are defined as training events that must be executed to standard before the soldier or unit moves on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task.

(a) Training gates follow the crawl-walk-run methodology. For instance, if the training strategy requires the unit to conduct an FTX and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the unit must execute the training tasks contained in the STX to standard before conducting the FTX.

(b) Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess whether his soldiers or units are ready to move to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates recognizes that the task force METL and the task force commander's assessment of

his unit's training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in the company team's training strategy.

**e. Standardization Program.** The commander is responsible for his unit's standardization program. In accordance with AR 34-4, the objectives of standardization are the improvement and sustainment of proficiency and readiness among soldiers and units throughout the Army. Universal application of approved practices and procedures, and a reduction of the adverse effects of personnel turbulence (such as retraining) following reassignment, will accomplish this goal. The commander's primary standardization staff members include subordinate commanders, the unit standardization officers, and NCOs.

**f. Resourcing.** Resourcing is a major challenge for all commanders. Appendix A of this MTP discusses CATS and helps commanders identify, quantify, and acquire training resources. Aviation commanders must understand and work the resourcing processes. Often it is a matter of educating higher level commanders and staffs, which can be done very effectively during a division/corps commander's QTB.

**g. Readiness.** An ATS battalion commander submits a recurring unit status report (USR) in accordance with guidance contained in AR 220-1 and FM 1-303. From these reports, a unit's status can be determined by comparing selected personnel, equipment, and training factors to wartime requirements, and by obtaining the commander's overall assessment of the unit. The unit training level indicates the current ability of the unit to perform assigned wartime missions. These missions are based on the demonstrated proficiency of subordinate units, leaders, soldiers, and the availability of critical resources required to support METL training. Proficiency is measured in terms of the unit's demonstrated ability to perform the tasks as stated in the approved unit METL. Commanders use results from the following exercises, evaluations, and training events described in the unit's CATS to determine the unit's readiness status: recent external evaluations of MTP standards; training densities at the combat training centers (CTCs); and emergency deployment readiness, field training, command, combined arms live-fire, and operational readiness exercises.

**h. Sustainment Training.** Individuals and units trained to a required level of proficiency. Once they have done this, leaders must structure collective and individual training plans to repeat critical task training at the minimum frequency necessary for sustained proficiency. Army units prepare to accomplish wartime missions by frequent sustainment training on critical tasks rather than by infrequent "peaking" to the appropriate level of wartime proficiency. Sustainment training enables crews and individuals to operate in the "Band of Excellence" described in FM 25-100 by appropriate repetitions of critical task training. MTPs, facility training manuals (FTMs), and the Individual Training Evaluation Program (ITEP) are tools to help achieve and sustain collective, crew, and individual proficiency. The aviation task-based CATS crosswalk these tools to support the development of unit training plans.

**i. Training Management.** The facility training manual and FM 1-303 have historically reflected the requirements necessary to train individual controllers to some level of proficiency as outlined in AR 95-2. The commander's collective challenges include developing a battle-focused training program in concert with the battle-focused plans of the other combined arms team members; to synchronize individual and collective training; and to manage scarce resources to ensure proficiency at all levels. Training and resourcing an ATS battalion is no different than training and resourcing other battalions but for one exception. The division three-cycle time management system for planning and conducting training does not usually apply. The resulting challenge is to ensure that ATS battalions have the same opportunities and time as other battalions to adequately prepare for their METL.

**j. Training Aids, Devices, Simulators, and Simulations (TADSS).** It is difficult to train and maintain an ATS battalion at a T level of proficiency without the use of TADSS. Resources, environmental restrictions, personnel tempo (PERSTEMPO), and safety put serious limitations on the dictum to "train as we fight." Training programs must use TADSS for individual and collective training. Structured training programs with supervision and after action reviews are necessary for individual and collective simulation training periods. Commanders must ensure that TADSS are included in

long-range planning. Commanders are encouraged to become familiar with the Army's training modernization process, Army Training XXI, to ensure that they can capitalize on high-technology training concepts such as distance learning via Classroom XXI.

**k. Protecting the Force (Safety).** The protection of soldiers and their weapon systems is a way of life. An effective training program that is well thought out and planned in conjunction with appropriate regulations and guidance is arguably the most important factor in any unit's safety program when it is embraced by every soldier in the unit. Appendix C of this MTP specifically addresses risk management.

**1-7. Conducting Training.** The role of this MTP is to facilitate planning, preparation, coordination, and execution of unit training in a logical and efficient manner. Although coordination is not discussed as a separate step, it must take place throughout the entire eight-step process. Continuous coordination reduces the likelihood of unforeseen training distracters, helps ensure that sufficient resources will be on hand for training, and provides the commander with a proactive means to identify and address issues before they become serious challenges. Coordination is the thread that binds the eight steps of the training process together. It should be encouraged at each level of command. Coordination between ATS and aviation company commanders, as an example, often can lead to valuable, mutually supporting training opportunities for both units. As in tactical operations, planning lays the foundation for successful execution of the battalion's training plan. It is an expression of the commander's vision based on an understanding of the unit's mission, doctrine, capabilities, supporting and supported units' doctrine and capabilities, enemy capabilities, training philosophy, and the training environment. The following discussion covers several aspects of the planning process:

**a.** Planning for the training program involves leaders at all levels of the unit organization. Each subordinate must understand the higher command's intent. In turn, he must develop his own intent and synchronize his training into his commander's plan.

**(1)** The aviation brigade commander is the primary trainer of all the battalions within the brigade. He is responsible for developing a comprehensive, long-term training strategy encompassing a variety of training events, such as FTXs and STXs. The commander makes an initial assessment of the entire brigade, based on the unit's METL, to identify systemic weaknesses. He can develop a training focus and specify the individual, crew, and collective tasks he wants to train and evaluate. Critical to the planning process of an aviation brigade and all of its battalions is the synchronization of its training plan with the division/corps commanders and supported units to maximize aviation training while flying in support of supported commanders.

**(2)** The battalion commander will use the brigade commander's plan to define his responsibilities and to develop and execute his own training strategy. He assists the company commanders in the planning and execution of training for his unit. He usually will focus on individual leader training, collective tasks, and battle drills, primarily through the use of STXs. Again, it is important for the battalion commander to coordinate and synchronize his training program with supported units to maximize training opportunities.

**(3)** Company leaders then focus on individual and collective training. Companies should be able to perform all collective tasks and battle drills according to standards and guidelines provided by the appropriate field manuals, MTPs, FTMs, and unit SOPs. To accomplish this, companies should plan and execute limited STXs before taking part in battalion-level training. These exercises can increase the confidence level of individuals and provide valuable operational experience.

**b.** In developing the battalion-training plan, leaders at all levels should adhere to the principles outlined in FM 25-100 and FM 25-101. In addition, they should use this MTP, the FTM, and FM 1-303 as guides, employing the following development "tools" from this MTP:

**(1)** The matrixes in chapter 2 and the ATS battalion CATS identify the battalion collective tasks and leader tasks used during training exercises.

(2) The mission outlines in chapter 3 show the hierarchical diagram of related missions that also must also be trained to meet the commander's goals. The outlines are adjustable, allowing leaders to tailor STXs to their needs.

(3) Chapter 4 provides guidance for planning and conducting exercises used to train designated missions (FTXs) or single tasks or groups of related tasks (STXs).

(4) Chapter 5 contains training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) for the battalion collective tasks that support the critical wartime operations.

(5) Chapter 6 provides guidance for planning, conducting, and evaluating company exercises.

c. There is never enough time to train everything. In developing their training plans, therefore, leaders must prioritize the tasks that require training, focusing on their units' biggest operational challenges and on their most difficult sustainment skills. Before training begins, commanders must conduct a training meeting with all leaders in their units in accordance with TC 25-30, to analyze training requirements and prioritize tasks. This kind of session also can help to identify weak areas that require the attention of trainers and leaders.

d. Once the unit leaders have identified the tasks to be trained, they must integrate them into a training schedule. The company commander may submit a list of the tasks and related training events he has selected to the battalion commander. The commander in turn develops his own list, but he must review the company commander's recommendations. Once the commander has approved the list of tasks and related training events, he includes them on the battalion-training schedule. The battalion commander can use the following procedure:

(1) List the tasks according to their priority and the frequency with which they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and decide multiechelon training will be used.

(3) Determine the site for the training.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize training needs into blocks of time and required training resources, such as ammunition, multiple integrated laser engagement system (MILES) equipment, and suitable training areas.

e. The importance of a QTB, (annual training brief (ATB) for Reserve component (RC) units) to the battalion commander cannot be overemphasized. It is the forum at which commanders identify their training resource needs and get resource commitments from the higher commander. It provides an opportunity for the battalion's leadership to spend some focused time discussing warfighting and training challenges with their senior commander. The focus should be on the unit's proficiency level at the individual, and collective levels. QTBs are considered to be short-range briefings conducted by senior commanders to review and approve the training plans of subordinate units. It is an opportunity for a senior commander to coach and teach subordinates on the fine points of his philosophy and strategies in all aspects of warfighting. It is also an excellent opportunity for a subordinate commander and his key leaders to gain a better understanding of how their METL relates to the battle-focused training programs of their senior commanders and peers.

f. Army National Guard units continue to face multiple challenges, which include equipment modernization, declining resources, and ever-increasing operational requirements. Tactically, the most challenging issue for the commander of an Army National Guard unit is accomplishing collective training. Managing and allocating resources, based on a tier concept to meet readiness requirements, requires commanders to become more innovative in their approach to training opportunities. Inactive duty training (IDT) is used predominately for individual training. Annual training periods, to include rotational deployments in support of Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS) exercises, national training centers (NTCs) and joint readiness training centers (JRTC) support, and worldwide partial selective

reserve callups (PSRCs) are focused towards collective training. In addition, Army National Guard units remain a valuable asset in State and local emergencies. This dual mission capability, unique to the National Guard, meets this need while at the same time strengthening ties to the local community.

#### **1-8. Force Protection (Safety).**

**a.** Military history clearly reveals risk as a principle of operations and the severe consequences of not effectively managing it. Military operations are inherently risky and dangerous whether in training or in actual operations. The element of risk, along with the combined effects of terrain, time, and the environment—and the designed efforts of the enemy to induce failure—can combine to produce disastrous results. Their outcome of military operations cannot be left to play out according to chance or in the hope that things will work out well. As an institution, the Army demands responsible action, which includes protecting soldiers as they accomplish their mission. As such complacency or a cavalier acceptance of risk is not acceptable. Articulating risk, collecting data, quantifying risk, and making a decision are command responsibilities.

**b.** The purpose of risk management is to identify operational risks and to take reasonable measures to reduce or eliminate hazards. Risk management allows units to operate successfully in high-risk environments. Leaders at every level have the responsibility to identify hazards, to take measures to reduce or eliminate hazards, and then to accept risk only to the point that the benefits outweigh the potential losses. The Army's doctrinal manuals articulate the risk management process as the principal risk-reduction tool. Risk management is not an add-on feature to the decisionmaking process but rather a fully integrated element of planning and executing operations. The goal is to make risk management a routine part of planning and executing operational missions. As such it is fully integrated into this MTP. In addition, Appendix C provides commanders with specific risk management principles.

**1-9. Environmental Protection.** Protection of natural resources is an ever-increasing concern to the Army. All unit leaders are responsible for decreasing and, if possible, eliminating damage to the environment when conducting training. The commander's challenge is to conduct tough, realistic training within the environmental restrictions he faces.

**a. Environmental Awareness.** The three general areas most commonly applied to environmental awareness are maneuver, logistics and maintenance, and gunnery.

**(1) Maneuver.** All defensive and offensive operations of a tactical nature require an element to maneuver. Most training areas have environmental restrictions a unit must follow when conducting tactical operations. Some examples of these are, where to cross a stream, what area to drive over, where to place Class III, or where to dig a battle position. Unique to aviation/ATS units are the flight route parameters resulting from environmental and noise complaint restrictions. These restrictions must be considered while planning aviation missions and during mission briefs. Training must be conducted to accommodate the environmental restrictions.

**(2) Maintenance and Logistical Support.** Commanders will be held responsible for the proper disposal of oils, lubricants, rags, etc. Most training areas have specific environmental standing operating procedures (SOPs) for operations in that area. The SOPs will specify the proper disposal of oils and lubricants, using drip pans, and washing grease and oil off vehicles.

**(3) Gunnery.** All gunnery ranges will have environmental SOPs. These restrictions will include normal environmental guidance as well as specific instructions for the disposal of casings, ammunition boxes, and maneuvering of weapon systems.

---

**NOTE:** Each U.S. installation is subject to local and state environmental regulations in addition to federal legislation. For information specific to a specific location, contact the installation environmental office. Overseas or on deployment, contact a higher S3/G3.

---

**b. Environmental Risk Management.** Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy and principles. It consists of the following steps:

**(1) Identify Hazards.** Identify potential sources of environmental degradation during analysis of the factors of METT-TC. Environmental hazards are conditions with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural or historical artifacts

**(2) Assess Hazards.** Using the environmental risk assessment matrix (figure 1-3), analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation for each training activity. The matrix allows trainers to quantify the risk to the environment. The risk impact value is an indicator of the level of severity.

**(3) Make Environmental Risk Decisions.** Leaders make risk management decisions based on the results of the assessment. Other than the overall risk rating, the risk assessment matrix also can be used to aid in making environmental risk decisions. For example, the unit operations that are most likely to cause damage (see step 2) can be the focus of risk controls, and the environmental areas that are most at risk can be also be determined (see step 3).

**(4) Brief the Chain of Command.** Brief all responsible individuals and agencies (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental factors. Risk decisions are made at the level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

**(5) Implement Controls.** Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training standards, and rehearsals.

**(6) Supervise.** Enforce environmental protection standards during supervision of all training activities.

**1-10. Evaluation.** The T&EOs in chapter 5 describe standards that must be met for each task.

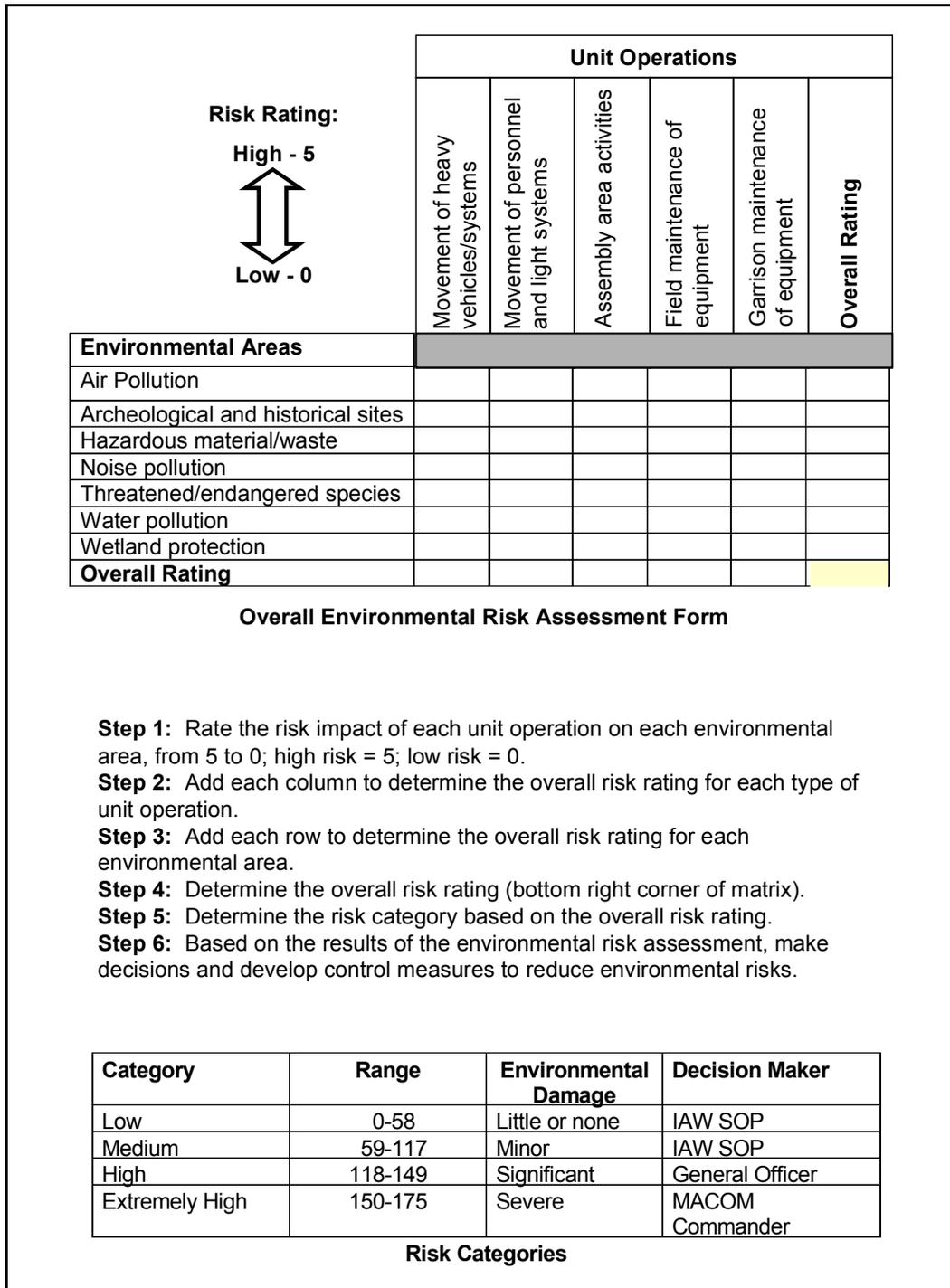
**a.** All training must be evaluated. Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a headquarters two levels above the unit being evaluated (See Chapter 6, External Evaluations).

**b.** The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Often soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard; then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

**c.** Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy to do. In higher level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but on the spot evaluations should not be totally eliminated. Plan after action reviews (AARs) at frequent logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that allows leaders to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind and prevents reinforcement of bad habits.

**d.** FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

**1-11. Feedback.** Recommendations for improving this MTP are requested. Feedback will help ensure that appropriate changes are included in future training publications in addition to this MTP. A questionnaire is included at the end of this MTP to facilitate the submission of recommendations and comments. The mailing address is Commander, U.S. Army Aviation Center, Directorate of Training Doctrine and Simulation (DOTDS), Doctrine Branch, ATTN: ATZQ-TDS-D, Fort Rucker, AL 36352. Points of contact may be reached by telephone at (DSN) 558-2329/3559 or (Comm) 334-255-2329/3559.



**Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk Management Matrix.**

## Chapter 2

# TRAINING MATRIXES

**2-1. General.** The mission, collective tasks, and individual task matrixes in this chapter are provided to assist the commander in planning training. Figure 2-1 lists the missions that may be performed by the air traffic services battalion.

<b>Mission Title</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CONDUCT AIRSPACE MANAGEMENT</li> <li>• CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS</li> <li>• CONDUCT MISSION SUPPORT</li> <li>• PROVIDE AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICES</li> </ul>

**Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table.**

**2-2. Mission to Collective Tasks Listing.** This paragraph matrix lists the missions outlined in figure 2-1 that may be performed by the air traffic services battalion. It also lists the number and name of the collective tasks associated with each of these missions.

---

**NOTE:** Chapter 5 of this manual contains the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) for each of the collective tasks listed below.

---

**MISSION: CONDUCT AIRSPACE MANAGEMENT**

**Collective Task(s)**

(01-1-0050.01-00CS)	PERFORM ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) DUTIES IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND
(01-1-0112.01-00CS)	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM— ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS- A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )
(01-1-0113.01-00CS)	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS
(01-1-0125.01-00CS)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND
(01-4-0022.01-00CS)	INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)2
(01-4-0025.01-00CS)	INSTALL THE AN/TSC-61B
(01-4-0117.01-00CS)	INSTALL THE TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM (TAIS) AN/TSQ-221
(01-4-0118.01-00CS)	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM— AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (TAIS-AIC) OPERATIONS
(01-4-0119.01-00CS)	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS

**MISSION: CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS**

**Collective Task(s)**

(01-1-1017.01-00CS) PLAN STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO)

**MISSION: CONDUCT MISSION SUPPORT**

**Collective Task(s)**

(01-1-0034.01-00CS) COORDINATE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE

(01-1-0052.01-00CS) PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)

(01-1-0062.01-0NRC) COORDINATE PRE-DEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES

(01-1-0111.01-00CS) PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT

(01-1-1001.01-0NRC) COMMAND AND CONTROL (C<sup>2</sup>) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS

(01-1-1002.01-0NRC) DIRECT THE STAFF

(01-1-1016.01-0NRC) EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES

(01-1-1023.01-00CS) ESTABLISH AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)

(01-1-1024.01-0NRC) COORDINATE THE SAFETY PROGRAM

(01-1-1060.01-0NRC) PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL

(01-1-1101.01-0NRC) PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)

(01-1-1102.01-0NRC) PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT

(01-1-1103.01-0NRC) CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS

(01-1-1104.01-00CS) CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING

(01-1-1105.01-0NRC) PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES

(01-1-1120.01-0NRC) PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)

(01-1-1201.01-0NRC) PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)

(01-1-1202.01-0NRC) ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES

(01-1-1203.01-0NRC) PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE

(01-1-1206.01-0NRC) PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR

(01-1-1301.01-0NRC) PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)

(01-1-1302.01-00CS) ESTABLISH A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC)

(01-1-1303.01-00CS) CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS

(01-1-1306.01-00CS) ESTABLISH A TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP)

(01-1-1311.01-00CS) PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS

(01-1-1401.01-00CS) PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)

(01-1-1402.01-0NRC) COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION, AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT

(01-1-1403.01-0NRC) INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS

(01-1-1405.01-00CS) COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT

(01-1-1406.01-00CS) PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES

(01-2-0001.01-00CS)	PREPARE FOR UNIT MOVE
(01-2-0018.01-00CS)	COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS
(01-2-0101.01-00CS)	OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA
(01-2-0102.01-00CS)	DEFEND UNIT POSITION
(01-2-0114.01-00CS)	PERFORM CONSOLIDATION AND REORGANIZATION
(01-2-0115.01-00CS)	CROSS A NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC) CONTAMINATED AREA
(01-2-0120.01-00CS)	EMPLOY AIR DEFENSE MEASURES
(01-2-0121.01-00CS)	RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC) ATTACK
(01-2-0122.01-00CS)	PERFORM NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC) DECONTAMINATION
(01-2-0201.01-00CS)	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS
(01-2-0203.01-0NRC)	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT
(01-2-0702.01-00CS)	PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT
(01-2-0715.01-0NRC)	PERFORM FIELD SANITATION
(01-2-2035.01-0NRC)	IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES
(01-2-2047.01-00CS)	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
(01-2-2048.01-00CS)	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT
(01-2-2054.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE UNIT-LEVEL SUPPLY OPERATIONS
(01-2-2064.01-00CS)	PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
(01-2-7039.01-00CS)	CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT
(01-2-7102.01-0NRC)	SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS
(01-2-7707.01-00CS)	EVACUATE CASUALTIES
(01-4-0124.01-00CS)	OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147
(01-4-0320.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT
(01-4-1029.01-00CS)	PERFORM VEHICLE RECOVERY OPERATIONS
(01-4-1352.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS
(01-4-3001.01-00CS)	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS-ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE
(01-4-7723.01-0NRC)	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE
(01-5-1110.01-00CS)	IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM

**MISSION: PROVIDE AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICES**

**Collective Task(s)**

(01-1-0110.01-00CS)	COORDINATE FLIGHT CHECKS OF AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES (ATS) FACILITIES AND NAVAIDS
(01-4-0029.01-00CS)	INSTALL THE LANDING CONTROL CENTRAL AN/TSQ-71 SERIES

(01-4-0032.01-00CS)	CONDUCT GROUND-CONTROLLED APPROACH RADAR OPERATIONS
(01-4-0033.01-00CS)	INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-70A OR AN/TSW-7A
(01-4-0034.01-00CS)	CONDUCT TOWER OPERATIONS
(01-5-0021.01-00CS)	INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)1
(01-5-0033.01-00CS)	PROVIDE AIR TRAFFIC SERVICE (ATS) AT A TEMPORARY LANDING SITE
(01-5-0116.01-00CS)	INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-198
(01-5-0123.01-00CS)	CONDUCT LANDING ZONE/PICKUP ZONE (LZ/PZ) OPERATIONS
(01-5-1353.01-00CS)	PROVIDE PATHFINDER SUPPORT

**2-3. Supporting References to Collective Tasks List.** This paragraph matrix lists collective tasks by their associated Battle Operating System (BOS). References to supporting documents that provide additional information on each of the collective tasks also are included.

**BOS: Develop Intelligence**

<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-1-1060.01-0NRC	<b>PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 100-14	Risk Management
FM 3-19.40 (FM 19.40)	Military Policy Internment/Resettlement Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-1-1203.01-0NRC	<b>PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
FM 34-1	Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations
FM 34-25-3	All-Source Analysis System and the Analysis and Control Element
FM 34-3	Intelligence Analysis
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-1-1206.01-0NRC	<b>PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 3-19.40 (FM 19-40)	Military Policy Internment/Resettlement Operations
JOINT PUB 3-50.21	Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Combat Search and Rescue

**BOS: Deploy/Conduct Maneuver**

<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-2-0001.01-00CS	<b>PREPARE FOR UNIT MOVE</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 100-14	Risk Management
FM 17-95	Cavalry Operations
FM 55-30 (FM 55-312)	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations
FM 55-9	Unit Air Movement Planning (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1)
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-2-0101.01-00CS	<b>OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades

FM 1-112	Attack Helicopter Operations
FM 1-113	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
FM 1-114	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
FM 17-95	Cavalry Operations
FM 5-103	Survivability
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC)
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**Collective Task:** 01-2-2048.01-00CS

**CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT**

**Reference(s)**

FM 1-112	Attack Helicopter Operations
FM 1-113	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
FM 1-114	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
FM 55-30 (FM 55-312)	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations
FM 55-9	Unit Air Movement Planning (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1)
FM 71-2	The Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
FM 7-20	The Infantry Battalion

**BOS: Protect the Force**

**Collective Task:** 01-1-0034.01-00CS

**COORDINATE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE**

**Reference(s)**

FM 100-14	Risk Management
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
FM 3-100	Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
FM 3-4	NBC Protection (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1)
FM 3-50	Smoke Operations
FM 3-7 (FM 3-8)	NBC Field Handbook

**Collective Task:** 01-1-1016.01-0NRC

**EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES**

**Reference(s)**

AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program
FM 3-19.30 (FM 19-30)	Physical Security
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the AirLand Battle

**Collective Task:** 01-1-1202.01-0NRC

**ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES**

**Reference(s)**

AR 381-10	U.S. Army Intelligence Activities
AR 381-12	Subversion and Espionage Directed Against the U.S. Army (SAEDA)
FM 100-14	Risk Management
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
FM 3-19.30 (FM 19-30)	Physical Security

**Collective Task: 01-2-0102.01-00CS**

**Reference(s)**

FM 6-20  
 FM 7-10  
 FM 7-7

**DEFEND UNIT POSITION**

Fire Support in the AirLand Battle  
 The Infantry Rifle Company  
 The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC)

**Collective Task: 01-2-0115.01-00CS**

**Reference(s)**

FM 3-3  
 FM 3-4  
 FM 3-5  
 FM 3-7 (FM 3-8)

**CROSS A NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC)  
 CONTAMINATED AREA**

Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance  
 NBC Protection (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1)  
 NBC Decontamination  
 NBC Field Handbook

**Collective Task: 01-2-0120.01-00CS**

**Reference(s)**

FM 44-8

**EMPLOY AIR DEFENSE MEASURES**

Combined Arms for the Air Defense

**Collective Task: 01-2-0121.01-00CS**

**Reference(s)**

FM 3-100  
 FM 3-3  
 FM 3-4  
 FM 3-5

**RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC)  
 ATTACK**

Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals  
 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance  
 NBC Protection (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1)  
 NBC Decontamination

**Collective Task: 01-2-0122.01-00CS**

**Reference(s)**

FM 3-5  
 FM 3-7 (FM 3-8)

**PERFORM NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC)  
 DECONTAMINATION**

NBC Decontamination  
 NBC Field Handbook

**Collective Task: 01-2-0201.01-00CS**

**Reference(s)**

FM 3-4  
 FM 3-7 (FM 3-8)

**PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR,  
 BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS**

NBC Protection (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1)  
 NBC Field Handbook

**Collective Task: 01-2-0203.01-0NRC**

**Reference(s)**

FM 20-3 (FM 5-20)  
 FM 21-75

**CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT**

Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys  
 Combat Skills of the Soldier

**Collective Task: 01-2-2035.01-0NRC**

**Reference(s)**

FM 100-14  
 FM 3-0 (FM 100-5)  
 FM 1-111  
 FM 34-130

**IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES**

Risk Management  
 Operations  
 Aviation Brigades  
 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield

**BOS: Perform CSS and Sustainment**

**Collective Task:** 01-1-0062.01-0NRC

**Reference(s)**

AR 220-10  
AR 25-400-2  
FM 100-17  
FM 101-5  
FM 12-6 (TC 12-6)

**Collective Task:** 01-1-0111.01-00CS

**Reference(s)**

FM 11-43  
FM 4-30.3 (FM 9-43-1)  
(FM 43-5) (FM 29-2)

**Collective Task:** 01-1-1023.01-00CS

**Reference(s)**

FM 100-10  
FM 100-14  
FM 3-0 (FM 100-5)  
FM 101-5  
FM 1-111

**Collective Task:** 01-1-1102.01-0NRC

**Reference(s)**

FM 100-14  
FM 101-5  
FM 1-111

**Collective Task:** 01-1-1103.01-0NRC

**Reference(s)**

FM 100-14  
FM 12-6 (TC 12-6)

**Collective Task:** 01-1-1104.01-00CS

**Reference(s)**

FM 100-10  
FM 101-5  
FM 3-04.513 (FM 1-513)  
JOINT PUB 3-50.21

**Collective Task:** 01-1-1105.01-0NRC

**Reference(s)**

AR 27-10  
DA PAM 600-8

**COORDINATE PRE-DEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES**

Preparation of Overseas Movement of Units (POM)  
The Modern Army Recordkeeping System (MARKS)  
Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization  
Staff Organization and Operations  
Personnel Doctrine

**PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT**

The Signal Leader's Guide  
  
Maintenance Operations and Procedures

**ESTABLISH AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)**

Combat Service Support  
Risk Management  
Operations  
Staff Organization and Operations  
Aviation Brigades

**PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT**

Risk Management  
Staff Organization and Operations  
Aviation Brigades

**CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS**

Risk Management  
Personnel Doctrine

**CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING**

Combat Service Support  
Staff Organization and Operations  
Battlefield Recovery and Evacuation of Aircraft  
Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Combat Search and Rescue

**PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES**

Legal Services: Military Justice  
Management and Administrative Procedures (Reprinted w/Basic incl C1)

FM 100-10	Combat Service Support
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
FM 12-6 (TC 12-6)	Personnel Doctrine
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-1-1402.01-0NRC	<b>COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION, AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 100-10	Combat Service Support
FM 100-14	Risk Management
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-1-1403.01-0NRC	<b>INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS)
FM 100-14	Risk Management
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-1-1405.01-00CS	<b>COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 100-10	Combat Service Support
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-1-1406.01-00CS	<b>PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 100-10	Combat Service Support
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-2-0702.01-00CS	<b>PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
AR 220-10	Preparation of Overseas Movement of Units (POM)
FM 100-14	Risk Management
FM 100-17	Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization Operations
FM 3-0 (FM 100-5)	Operations
FM 1-100	Army Aviation Operations
DOD 4500.9 (Part III)	Defense Transportation Regulation (Mobility)
FM 55-20	Rail Transport in a Theater of Operations (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1)
FM 55-9	Unit Air Movement Planning (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1)
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-2-0715.01-0NRC	<b>PERFORM FIELD SANITATION</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
AR 40-5	Preventive Medicine
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation
FM 21-10-1	Unit Field Sanitation Team

<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-2-2054.01-0NRC	<b>COORDINATE UNIT-LEVEL SUPPLY OPERATIONS</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	Risk Management
FM 100-14	Organizational Supply and Services for Unit Leaders
FM 10-27-4	
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-2-2064.01-00CS	<b>PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	Personnel Doctrine
FM 12-6 (TC 12-6)	
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-2-7102.01-0NRC	<b>SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 101-5	Operational Terms and Graphics
FM 101-5-1	Aviation Brigades
FM 1-111	Guard Duty
FM 22-6	
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-2-7707.01-00CS	<b>EVACUATE CASUALTIES</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
FM 8-10-6 (FM 8-35)	
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-4-0022.01-00CS	<b>INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)2</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
FM 1-120	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Beacon Sets, Radio AN/TRN-30(V)1 and AN/TRN-30(V)2 (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1)
TM 11-5825-255-12	
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-4-0025.01-00CS	<b>INSTALL THE AN/TSC-61B</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
FM 1-120	Air Traffic Control Facility Operations and Training
FM 1-303	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Flight Coordination Central, AN/TSC-61B
TM 11-5895-469-12	United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS)
TM 95-226	United States Interagency Ground Inspection Manual: Air Traffic Control and Navigational Aids Facilities
TM 95-228	
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-4-0029.01-00CS	<b>INSTALL THE LANDING CONTROL CENTRAL AN/TSQ-71 SERIES</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
FM 1-120	Air Traffic Control Facility Operations and Training
FM 1-303	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Landing Control Central, AN/TSQ-71B and AN/TSQ-71B (Modified)
TM 11-5895-474-12	United States Standard: Flight Inspection
TM 95-225	

TM 95-226	United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS)
<b>Collective Task: 01-4-0033.01-00CS</b>	<b>INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-70A OR AN/TSW-7A</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 1-120	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
FM 1-303	Air Traffic Control Facility Operations and Training
TM 11-5895-579-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual: Air Traffic Control Central, AN/TSQ-70A
TM 11-5895-801-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual: Air Traffic Control Center, AN/TSW-7A
TM 95-225	United States Standard: Flight Inspection
TM 95-226	United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS)
<b>Collective Task: 01-4-0117.01-00CS</b>	<b>INSTALL THE TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM (TAIS) AN/TSQ-221</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 3-52 (FM 100-103)	Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone (ICAC <sup>2</sup> ) Multi-Service Procedures for Integrated Combat Airspace Command and Control
FM 3-100.2 (FM 100-103-1)	
FM 100-103-2	TAGS Multi-Service Procedures for the Theater Air-Ground System
TM 95-225	United States Standard: Flight Inspection
TM 95-226	United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS)
<b>Collective Task: 01-4-0124.01-00CS</b>	<b>OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
TM 11-4940-238-14-1	Operator's, Organizational, Direct Support, and General Support Maintenance Manual for Electronic Shops, Shelter Mounted, Avionics AN/ASM-146B and AN/ASM-146C, AN/ASM-147B and AN/ASM-147C
<b>Collective Task: 01-4-0320.01-0NRC</b>	<b>PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
AR 710-2	Inventory Management Supply Policy below the Wholesale Level
DA PAM 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures)
FM 100-10	Combat Service Support
<b>Collective Task: 01-4-1029.01-00CS</b>	<b>PERFORM VEHICLE RECOVERY OPERATIONS</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 3-20.15 (FM 17-15)	Tank Platoon
<b>Collective Task: 01-4-3001.01-00CS</b>	<b>CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS-ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
DA PAM 738-750	Functional User's Manual for The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS)
TB 750-25	Maintenance of Supplies and Equipment: Army Test, Measurement, and Diagnostic Equipment (TMDE) Calibration and Repair and Support Program

TM 95-225	United States Standard: Flight Inspection
TM 95-228	United States Interagency Ground Inspection Manual: Air Traffic Control and Navigational Aids Facilities
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-4-7723.01-0NRC	<b>PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
DA PAM 738-750	Functional User's Manual for The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS)
FM 4-30-3 (FM 9-43-1) (FM 43-5)	Maintenance Operations and Procedures
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-5-0021.01-00CS	<b>INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)1</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 1-120	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
TM 11-5825-255-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Beacon Sets Radio AN/TRN-30(V)1 and AN/TRN-30(V)2 (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1)
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-5-0116.01-00CS	<b>INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-198</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 1-120	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
TM 11-5895-1568-14	Operator, Unit, Direct Support, and General Support Maintenance Manual for Tactical Terminal Control System, AN/TSQ-198
TM 95-225	United States Standard: Flight Inspection
TM 95-226	United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS)
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-5-1110.01-00CS	<b>IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
FM 16-1	Religious Support
<b>BOS: Exercise Command and Control</b>	
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-1-0050.01-00CS	<b>PERFORM ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>) DUTIES IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 3-52 (FM 100-103)	Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone (ICAC <sup>2</sup> ) Multi-Service Procedures for Integrated Combat Airspace Command and Control
FM 3-100.2 (FM 100-103-1)	
FM 100-103-2	TAGS Multi-Service Procedures for the Theater Air-Ground System
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics
FM 1-100	Army Aviation Operations
FM 1-120	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
Joint Pub 3-52	Doctrine for Joint Airspace Control in the Combat Zone

**Collective Task:** 01-1-0052.01-00CS

**Reference(s)**

FM 101-5  
FM 1-111

**PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)**

Staff Organization and Operations  
Aviation Brigades

**Collective Task:** 01-1-0110.01-00CS

**Reference(s)**

FM 1-303

**COORDINATE FLIGHT CHECKS OF AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES (ATS) FACILITIES AND NAVAIDS**

Air Traffic Control Facility Operations and Training

**Collective Task:** 01-1-0112.01-00CS

**Reference(s)**

FM 3-52 (FM 100-103)  
FM 3-100.2 (FM 100-103-1)  
  
FM 100-103-2  
FM 1-120

**CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM— ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>)**

Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone (ICAC<sup>2</sup>) Multi-Service Procedures for Integrated Combat Airspace Command and Control  
TAGS Multi-Service Procedures for the Theater Air-Ground System  
Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations

**Collective Task:** 01-1-0113.01-00CS

**Reference(s)**

FM 3-52 (FM 100-103)  
FM 3-100.2 (FM 100-103-1)  
  
FM 100-103-2  
FM 1-120

**CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS**

Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone (ICAC<sup>2</sup>) Multi-Service Procedures for Integrated Combat Airspace Command and Control  
TAGS Multi-Service Procedures for the Theater Air-Ground System  
Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations

**Collective Task:** 01-1-0125.01-00CS

**Reference(s)**

FM 3-52 (FM 100-103)  
FM 3-100.2 (FM 100-103-1)  
  
FM 100-103-2  
FM 101-5-1  
FM 1-100  
FM 1-120  
  
Joint Pub 3-52

**PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND**

Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone (ICAC<sup>2</sup>) Multi-Service Procedures for Integrated Combat Airspace Command and Control  
TAGS Multi-Service Procedures for the Theater Air-Ground System  
Operational Terms and Graphics  
Army Aviation Operations  
Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations  
Doctrine for Joint Airspace Control in the Combat Zone

**Collective Task:** 01-1-1001.01-0NRC

**Reference(s)**

DA PAM 385-1  
DA PAM 600-41  
DA PAM 600-8  
  
FM 100-14

**COMMAND AND CONTROL (C<sup>2</sup>) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS**

Small Unit Safety Officer/NCO Guide  
Military Personnel Managers Mobilization Handbook  
Management and Administrative Procedures (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1)  
Risk Management

FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
FM 22-100	Army Leadership
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-1-1002.01-0NRC	<b>DIRECT THE STAFF</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 100-14	Risk Management
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 1-100	Army Aviation Operations
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-1-1017.01-00CS	<b>PLAN STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO)</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 100-14	Risk Management
FM 100-20	Military Operations in Low Intensity Conflict Operations
FM 3-0 (FM 100-5)	
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
FM 1-112	Attack Helicopter Operations
FM 1-113	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
FM 1-114	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
FM 41-10	Civil Affairs Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-1-1024.01-0NRC	<b>COORDINATE THE SAFETY PROGRAM</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program
AR 385-95	Army Aviation Accident Prevention
FM 100-14	Risk Management
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-1-1101.01-0NRC	<b>PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
DA PAM 600-67	Effective Writing for Army Leaders
DA PAM 600-8-20	SIDPERS Handbook for Commanders
FM 100-14	Risk Management
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-1-1120.01-0NRC	<b>PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-1-1201.01-0NRC	<b>PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 100-14	Risk Management
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics

FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
FM 34-1	Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations
FM 34-130	Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield
FM 34-2-1	Tactical, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance

**Collective Task:** 01-1-1301.01-0NRC

**Reference(s)**

DA PAM 385-1  
 FM 100-14  
 FM 3-0 (FM 100-5)  
 FM 101-5  
 FM 101-5-1  
 FM 1-111

**PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)**

Small Unit Safety Officer/NCO Guide  
 Risk Management  
 Operations  
 Staff Organization and Operations  
 Operational Terms and Graphics  
 Aviation Brigades

**Collective Task:** 01-1-1302.01-00CS

**Reference(s)**

FM 100-14  
 FM 101-5  
 FM 1-111

**ESTABLISH A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC)**

Risk Management  
 Staff Organization and Operations  
 Aviation Brigades

**Collective Task:** 01-1-1303.01-00CS

**Reference(s)**

FM 100-14  
 FM 101-5  
 FM 1-111  
 FM 1-112  
 FM 1-113  
 FM 1-114  
 FM 1-120

**CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS**

Risk Management  
 Staff Organization and Operations  
 Aviation Brigades  
 Attack Helicopter Operations  
 Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations  
 Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations  
 Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations

**Collective Task:** 01-1-1306.01-00CS

**Reference(s)**

FM 100-14  
 FM 1-111

**ESTABLISH A TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP)**

Risk Management  
 Aviation Brigades

**Collective Task:** 01-1-1311.01-00CS

**Reference(s)**

FM 101-5  
 FM 1-100  
 FM 1-111  
 FM 1-112  
 FM 1-113  
 FM 1-114

**PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS**

Staff Organization and Operations  
 Army Aviation Operations  
 Aviation Brigades  
 Attack Helicopter Operations  
 Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations  
 Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations

**Collective Task:** 01-1-1401.01-00CS

**Reference(s)**

FM 100-14  
 FM 101-5

**PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)**

Risk Management  
 Staff Organization and Operations

FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics
FM 1-100	Army Aviation Operations
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-2-0018.01-00CS	<b>COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 6-22.5 (FM 22-9)	Combat Stress
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-2-0114.01-00CS	<b>PERFORM CONSOLIDATION AND REORGANIZATION</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company
FM 7-91	Tactical Employment of Antiarmor Platoons, Companies, and Battalions
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-2-2047.01-00CS	<b>CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 100-14	Risk Management
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 1-100	Army Aviation Operations
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-2-7039.01-00CS	<b>CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades
FM 7-20	The Infantry Battalion
FM 8-10-6 (FM 8-35)	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-4-0032.01-00CS	<b>CONDUCT GROUND-CONTROLLED APPROACH RADAR OPERATIONS</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
AR 95-2	Air Traffic Control, Airspace, Airfields, Flight Activities, and Navigation Aids
FAA ORDER 7110.65	Air Traffic Control
FAA ORDER 7210.3	Facility Operations and Administration
FM 1-120	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
FM 1-303	Air Traffic Control Facility Operations and Training
TM 11-5840-281-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Radar Set, AN/TPN-18 (reprinted w/Basic Incl C1-2)
TM 11-5840-281-12-1	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Radar Set, AN/TPN-18A
TM 11-5895-474-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Landing Control Central, AN/TSQ-71B and AN/TSQ-71B (Modified)
TM 95-225	United States Standard: Flight Inspection
TM 95-226	United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS)
<b>Collective Task:</b> 01-4-0034.01-00CS	<b>CONDUCT TOWER OPERATIONS</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FAA ORDER 7110.65	Air Traffic Control

FM 1-120	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
FM 1-303	Air Traffic Control Facility Operations and Training
TM 95-225	United States Standard: Flight Inspection
TM 95-226	United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS)

**Collective Task:** 01-4-0118.01-00CS

**CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—  
AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (TAIS-AIC) OPERATIONS**

**Reference(s)**

FM 3-52 (FM 100-103)	Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone (ICAC <sup>2</sup> ) Multi-Service Procedures for Integrated Combat Airspace Command and Control
FM 3-100.2 (FM 100-103-1)	
FM 100-103-2	TAGS Multi-Service Procedures for the Theater Air-Ground System
FM 1-303	Air Traffic Control Facility Operations and Training

**Collective Task:** 01-4-0119.01-00CS

**CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS**

**Reference(s)**

FM 1-120	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
FM 1-303	Air Traffic Control Facility Operations and Training
TM 95-225	United States Standard: Flight Inspection
TM 95-226	United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS)

**Collective Task:** 01-4-1352.01-0NRC

**ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS**

**Reference(s)**

FM 24-1	Signal Support Operations in the AirLand Battle
FM 24-11	Tactical Satellite Communications
FM 24-16	Communications-Electronics: Operations, Orders, Records, and Reports
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook
TC 24-20 (FM 24-20)	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques
FM 24-22	Communications-Electronics Management System
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures
FM 24-35	(O) Signal Operation Instructions, "The SOI (U)"

**Collective Task:** 01-5-0033.01-00CS

**PROVIDE AIR TRAFFIC SERVICE (ATS) AT A TEMPORARY LANDING SITE**

**Reference(s)**

FM 3-52 (FM 100-103)	Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone (ICAC <sup>2</sup> ) Multi-Service Procedures for Integrated Combat Airspace Command and Control
FM 3-100.2 (FM 100-103-1)	
FM 100-103-2	TAGS Multi-Service Procedures for the Theater Air-Ground System
FM 1-120	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
FM 1-300	Flight Operations Procedures
FM 1-303	Air Traffic Control Facility Operations and Training

TM 95-226	United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS)
<b>Collective Task: 01-5-0123.01-00CS</b>	<b>CONDUCT LANDING ZONE/PICKUP ZONE (LZ/PZ) OPERATIONS</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 1-113	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
FM 57-38	Pathfinder Operations
<b>Collective Task: 01-5-1353.01-00CS</b>	<b>PROVIDE PATHFINDER SUPPORT</b>
<b>Reference(s)</b>	
FM 10-450-3	Multi-Service Helicopter Sling Load: Basic Operations and Equipment
FM 10-450-4	Multi-Service Helicopter Sling Load: Single-Point Load Rigging Procedures
FM 21-60	Visual Signals
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the AirLand Battle
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques
FM 57-38	Pathfinder Operations

**2-4. Individual Task to Collective Task Listing.** This paragraph matrix shows the relationship that exists between the collective tasks outlined in paragraph 2-3 above and the individual tasks that support them. In the listing below, the individual tasks are grouped according to their associated collective task and military occupational specialty (MOS).

**01-1-0034.01-00CS COORDINATE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE**

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-1101	Employ NBC Protection for Aviation Operations
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC Warning and Reporting System
011-510-1103	Conduct Aviation Operations in an NBC Environment
011-420-1101	Supervise a Unit NBC Defense Program
031-503-3005	Submit NBC 1 Report
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
031-503-3014	Supervise Decontamination Procedures
031-503-4002	Prepare a Unit for NBC Attack
031-503-7000	Integrate NBC Concepts into Mission Planning
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning

**01-1-0050.01-00CS PERFORM ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>) DUTIES IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0001	Locate a Geographic Coordinate on a Sectional, JOG-A, or TPC
011-143-0021	Identify Data in DOD Flight Information Publications (FLIPs)
011-143-7000	Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-5059 Identify Airspace Control Measures

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 3**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-7005 Integrate Airspace Control Measures

**Officer MOS: 15B and Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301 Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process  
011-143-4003 Implement Airspace Management Procedures (NAS)  
011-143-5062 Determine Army Airspace Command and Control Procedures  
011-420-0018 Implement Army Airspace Command and Control Procedures (A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>)

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0001 Locate a Geographic Coordinate on a Sectional, JOG-A, or TPC

**01-1-0052.01-00CS PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)**

**Enlisted MOS: 31U Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0004 Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center

**Officer MOS: 25A Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301 Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process  
011-510-0306 Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities  
011-510-0311 Conduct Military Briefings  
154-385-6263 Conduct a Risk Assessment

**01-1-0062.01-0NRC COORDINATE PRE-DEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES**

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 5 and 93C Skill Level 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0300 Coordinate Staff Duties/Responsibilities in Tactical Units  
011-510-0301 Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process  
011-510-0306 Perform Personnel /Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities  
011-510-0311 Conduct Military Briefings  
011-510-0901 Integrate Unit Medical Support

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0300 Coordinate Staff Duties/ Responsibilities in Tactical Units  
011-510-0301 Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process  
011-510-0306 Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities  
011-510-0311 Conduct Military Briefings  
011-510-0901 Integrate Unit Medical Support

011-530-0009	Direct Aviation Staff Functions
091-090-0005	Unit Combat Readiness Status Report
121-008-1496	Supervise the Implementation of Financial Readiness Actions
121-010-3095	Coordinate Unit Deployment Readiness Activities
121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting
121-010-8015	Recommended Administrative and Personnel Actions
121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administrative Functions
152-100-0002	Perform Tasks in a Civilian/Military Workshop
224-300-2000	Implement a Public Affairs Plan
301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures

**01-1-0110.01-00CS COORDINATE FLIGHT CHECKS OF AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES (ATS) FACILITIES AND NAVAIDS**

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings

**01-1-0111.01-00CS PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT**

**Officer MOS: 25A Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0014	Employ Aviation Command, Control, Communications (C <sup>3</sup> ) Operations
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-510-1301	Supervise Ground Maintenance Operations

**Enlisted MOS: 31U Skill Level: 1-4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0014	Employ Aviation Command, Control, Communications (C <sup>3</sup> ) Operations
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-510-1301	Supervise Ground Maintenance Operations

**01-1-0112.01-00CS CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>)**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-143-4003	Implement Airspace Management Procedures (NAS)
011-143-5062	Determine Army Airspace Command and Control Procedures
011-143-1021	Communicate Using Interphone Procedures

011-143-5057 Communicate Using Radio Communication Procedures  
011-143-7000 Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-3002 Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301 Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process  
011-510-0311 Conduct Military Briefings  
011-420-0018 Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>)

**01-1-0113.01-00CS CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS**

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301 Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process  
011-510-0306 Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities  
011-510-0311 Conduct Military Briefings

**01-1-0125.01-00CS PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND**

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301 Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process  
011-510-0306 Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities  
011-510-0311 Conduct Military Briefings

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301 Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process  
011-510-0306 Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities  
011-510-0311 Conduct Military Briefings

**01-1-1001.01-0NRC COMMAND AND CONTROL (C<sup>2</sup>) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS**

**Officer MOS: 15B Skill Level: LTC**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301 Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process  
011-510-0308 Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)  
154-385-6465 Employ the Risk Management  
155-197-0010 Apply the Principles of War during Mission Planning  
158-100-1240 Communicate Effectively as a Leader  
301-371-1100 Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning

**01-1-1002.01-0NRC DIRECT THE STAFF**

**Officer MOS: 15B Skill Level: MAJ**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
158-100-1240	Communicate Effectively as a Leader
171-630-0015	Supervise the Flow of Information in a Battalion Tactical Operations Center

**01-1-1016.01-0NRC EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES**

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-1051	Implement Electronic Protections (EPs)
--------------	--

**Enlisted MOS: COM Skill Level: 3**

**Individual Task(s)**

805C-PAD-3591	Protect Classified Information and Materials
805C-PAD-3594	Store Classified Information and Materials

**Officer MOS: 15A Skill Level: Any Skill Level**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-500-2300	Operate Communications Security Equipment
071-990-0005	Enforce Detection Prevention Measures
191-000-0002	Employ Physical Security Measures
301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures
301-371-1051	Enforce Personnel Security Policies
301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material

**01-1-1017.01-00CS PLAN STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO)**

**Enlisted MOS: COM Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

154-385-6465	Employ the Risk Management Process during Mission Planning
--------------	--

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: MAJ and/or Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0021	Employ Fundamentals of Army Operations
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
154-385-6465	Employment Classified Information and Material
011-420-0004	Plan For Aviation and Ground Combat Support
011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War during Mission Planning
224-300-2000	Implement a Public Affairs Plan
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning

**01-1-1023.01-00CS ESTABLISH AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)**

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support
011-540-0008	Supervise the Unit Level Logistics System—Aviation (ULLS-A)
011-540-0010	Coordinate Supply Functions with Supply Support Activities (SSA)
011-540-0016	Monitor the Standard Army Retail Supply System (SARSS1-0)
011-540-0022	Supervise Aircraft Readiness Reporting
011-540-0029	Supervise the Preparation of Maintenance Forms and Records
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
121-010-8020	Supervision Unit Personnel and Administration Functions

**01-1-1024.01-0NRC COORDINATE THE SAFETY PROGRAM**

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: MAJ and/or Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-510-1700	Implement the Army Safety Program
158-100-1140	Communicate Effectively in a Given Situation

**Enlisted MOS: 93P and 93C Skill Level: 5 and 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-510-1700	Implement the Army Safety Program
158-100-1140	Communicate Effectively in a Given Situation

**01-1-1060.01-0NRC PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL**

**Enlisted MOS: 96B Skill Level: 1 and 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
191-000-0001	Process Captives
301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning
301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel

**01-1-1101.01-0NRC PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)**

**Enlisted MOS: 71D and 71L and 75H Skill Level: 1 and 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center
--------------	--

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War during Mission Planning
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War during Mission Planning
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning

**01-1-1102.01-0NRC PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT**

**Enlisted MOS: 71L and 75H Skill Level: 1 and 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting

**01-1-1103.01-0NRC CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS**

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
121-010-8001	Report Casualties
121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting
121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administrative Functions

**Enlisted MOS: 71L and 75H Skill Level: 1 and 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
121-010-8001	Report Casualties
121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting
121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administration Functions

**01-1-1104.01-00CS CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING**

**Enlisted MOS: 71L and 75H Skill Level: 1 and 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support
011-510-1500	Prepare Military Correspondence
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
121-010-8001	Report Casualties
121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting
121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administration Functions

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support
011-510-1500	Prepare Military Correspondence
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
121-010-8001	Report Casualties
121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting
121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administration Functions

**01-1-1105.01-0NRC PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES**

**Enlisted MOS: 71L and 71D and 75H Skill Level: 1 and 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/ Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support
011-510-1500	Prepare Military Correspondence
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
121-010-8015	Recommend Administrative and Personnel Actions
121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administration Functions

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings

011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support
011-510-1500	Prepare Military Correspondence
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
121-010-8015	Recommend Administrative and Personnel Actions
121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administrative Functions

**01-1-1201.01-0NRC PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)**

**Enlisted MOS: 96B Skill Level: 1 and 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center
--------------	--

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: MAJ**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0307	Perform IEW Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-510-0704	Plan Intelligence Reconnaissance/Surveillance Missions
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War during Mission Planning
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning

**01-1-1203.01-0NRC PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE**

**Enlisted MOS: 96B Skill Level: 1 and 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning
301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: MAJ**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning
301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel

**01-1-1206.01-0NRC PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR**

**Enlisted MOS: 96B Skill Level: 1 and 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation
081-831-1000	Evaluate a Casualty
191-000-0001	Process Captives
301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material
301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: MAJ**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation
081-831-1000	Evaluate a Casualty
191-000-0001	Process Captives
301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material
301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel

**01-1-1301.01-0NRC PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center
011-143-5062	Determine Army Airspace Command and Control Procedures

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center
--------------	--

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: MAJ and/or Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War during Mission Planning
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 5**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain

154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War during Mission Planning
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning

**01-1-1302.01-00CS ESTABLISH A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC)**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center
--------------	--

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-1047	Process Information during Tactical Operations
011-141-1050	Transmit Flight Movement Messages
011-141-1052	Operate SINCGARS Equipment
011-141-1059	Operate the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)
011-141-1060	Extract Data from Signal Operation Instructions (SOI) Extract
011-141-1061	Prepare a Situation Map

**Enlisted MOS: 93P and 96B Skill Level: 5/3/1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center
011-141-3052	Manage TOC Operations Using the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)
011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center
071-990-0003	Control Entry Into a Restricted Area
113-305-1001	Communicate by a Tactical Radio
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information
301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures

**Officer MOS: 15A Skill Level: Any Skill Level**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-500-2300	Operate Communications Security Equipment.
011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center

**01-1-1303.01-00CS CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center
--------------	--

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-1047	Process Information during Tactical Operations
--------------	--

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 5**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center
011-141-3052	Manage TOC Operations Using the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)
171-630-0015	Supervise the Flow of Information in a Battalion Tactical Operations Center
301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: MAJ and/or Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0011	Implement Fundamentals of Air-Ground Operations
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing

**01-1-1306.01-00CS ESTABLISH A TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP)**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-1052	Operate SINCGARS Equipment
--------------	----------------------------

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center
--------------	--

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-1050	Transmit Flight Movement Messages
011-141-1052	Operate SINCGARS Equipment
011-141-1060	Extract Data from Signal Operation Instructions (SOI) Extract
011-141-1061	Prepare a Situation Map

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 5**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center
--------------	--

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: MAJ and/or Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
011-510-0503	Perform Company-Level Command Post Operations
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
113-305-1001	Communicate by a Tactical Radio
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning

**01-1-1311.01-00CS PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS**

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0305	Conduct Battalion/Brigade After Action Review
011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
113-305-1001	Communicate by a Tactical Radio
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-3012	Extract Critical Information from Joint Airspace Documents
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0305	Conduct Battalion/Brigade After Action Review
011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
113-305-1001	Communicate by a Tactical Radio
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information

**01-1-1401.01-00CS PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)**

**Enlisted MOS: 35D and 92Y15B Skill Level: 5/4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War during Mission Planning
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War during Mission Planning
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning

**01-1-1402.01-0NRC COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION, AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT**

**Enlisted MOS: 35D and 918B and 920A and 92Y Skill Level: 5/4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-510-1300	Supervise Aviation Maintenance Operations
011-510-1301	Supervise Ground Maintenance Operations
101-92Y-0001	Supervise Supply Activities
011-540-0005	Supervise Aviation Property Accountability
011-540-0007	Supervise Unit Class IX Repair Parts Procedures
011-540-0008	Supervise the Unit Level Logistics System—Aviation (ULLS-A)
011-540-0016	Monitor the Standard Army Retail Supply System (SARSS1-0)
011-540-0026	Coordinate with Corpus Christi Army Depot (CCAD)
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-510-1300	Supervise Aviation Maintenance Operations
011-510-1301	Supervise Ground Maintenance Operations
101-92Y-0001	Supervise Supply Activities
011-540-0005	Supervise Aviation Property Accountability
011-540-0007	Supervise Unit Class IX Repair Parts Procedures
011-540-0008	Supervise the Unit Level Logistics System—Aviation (ULLS-A)
011-540-0016	Monitor the Standard Army Retail Supply System (SARSS1-0)
011-540-0026	Coordinate with Corpus Christi Army Depot (CCAD)
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status

**Warrant Officer MOS: 151A Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support
--------------	---

**01-1-1403.01-0NRC INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS**

**Enlisted MOS: 35D and 918B and 920A and 92Y and 63Z Skill Level: 5/4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-540-0005	Supervise Aviation Property Accountability
011-540-0022	Supervise Aviation Readiness Reporting
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-540-0005	Supervise Aviation Property Accountability
011-540-0022	Supervise Aviation Readiness Reporting
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status

**01-1-1405.01-00CS COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT**

**Enlisted MOS: 92Y Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-540-0033	Supervise Shipment of Army Aircraft
551-88N-0003	Plan Unit Move
551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-540-0033	Supervise Shipment of Army Aircraft
551-88N-0003	Plan Unit Move
551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement

**01-1-1406.01-00CS PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES**

**Enlisted MOS: 92Y and 918B and 920A Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support
101-515-0002	Plan Mortuary Affairs Support Functions

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings

011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support
101-515-0002	Plan Mortuary Affairs Support Functions

**01-2-0001.01-00CS PREPARE FOR UNIT MOVE**

**Enlisted MOS: 63B/77F/93C/93P Skill Level: 1-5**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations
011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
031-503-1037	Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper
031-503-2001	Identify Chemical Agents Using M256 Series Chemical Detector Kits
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
031-503-3010	Supervise Employment of Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Markers
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Move

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations
011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
031-503-1037	Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper
031-503-2001	Identify Chemical Agents Using M256 Series Chemical Detector Kits
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
031-503-3010	Supervise Employment of Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Markers
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Move

**01-2-0018.01-00CS COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS**

**Enlisted MOS: 56A Skill Level: 3**

**Individual Task(s)**

01-9001.17-0003	Build a Cohesive Unit or Organization
-----------------	---------------------------------------

**Officer MOS: COM Skill Level: Pre-Commissioned**

**Individual Task(s)**

01-9001.17-0003	Build a Cohesive Unit or Organization
-----------------	---------------------------------------

**01-2-0101.01-00CS OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA**

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 5**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center
011-420-2300	Perform Tactical Communications, Using SINCGARS Radios, in a Field Environment
011-420-0006	Conduct Fire Support Planning and Coordination
071-990-0005	Enforce Detection Prevention Measures
091-900-0006	Direct Unit Maintenance Operations
551-88N-0002	Prepare for Unit Move
551-88N-0003	Plan Unit Movement
551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement

**Enlisted MOS: COM 93C/31U Skill Level: 1-4**

**Individual task(s)**

011-510-0023	Conduct Assembly Area Operations
--------------	----------------------------------

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0023	Conduct Assembly Area Operations
011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
011-420-2300	Perform Tactical Communications, Using SINCGARS Radios, in a Field Environment
011-420-0006	Conduct Fire Support Planning and Coordination
071-990-0005	Enforce Detection Prevention Measures
091-900-0006	Direct Unit Maintenance Operations
551-88N-0002	Prepare for Unit Move
551-88N-0003	Plan Unit Movement
551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement

**01-2-0114.01-00CS PERFORM CONSOLIDATION AND REORGANIZATION**

**Enlisted MOS: 71L/75H/15B/D/92Y Skill Level: 1-4**

**Individual Task(s)**

081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
--------------	----------------------------

**01-2-0115.01-00CS CROSS A NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC) CONTAMINATED AREA**

**Enlisted MOS: COM 74B/54B Skill Level: 2-3**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-1047	Process Information during Tactical Operations
031-503-1013	Decontaminate Yourself and Individual Equipment Using Chemical Decontamination Kits
031-503-1015	Protect Yourself from NBC Injury/Decontamination with the Appropriate Mission-Oriented Protection Posture (MOPP) Gear
031-503-1037	Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper
031-503-2023	Measure Radiation Dose Rate and Total Dose Rate
031-503-3002	Conduct Unmasking Procedures

031-503-3004	Supervise Crossing of a Contaminated Area
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)
031-503-7000	Integrate NBC Concepts into Mission Planning
121-010-8001	Report Casualties
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-1101	Employ NBC Protection for Aviation Operations
011-510-1103	Conduct Aviation Operations in an NBC Environment
031-503-1013	Decontaminate Yourself and Individual Equipment Using Chemical Decontamination Kits
031-503-1015	Protect Yourself from NBC Injury/Decontamination with the Appropriate Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear
031-503-1037	Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper
031-503-2023	Measure Radiation Dose Rate and Total Dose Rate
031-503-3002	Conduct Unmasking Procedures
031-503-3004	Supervise Crossing of a Contaminated Area
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)
031-503-7000	Integrate NBC Concepts into Mission Planning
121-010-8001	Report Casualties
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information

**01-2-0121.01-00CS RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC) ATTACK**

**Enlisted MOS: COM 74B/54B Skill Level: 2/3**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-1047	Process Information during Tactical Operations
031-503-1013	Decontaminate Yourself and Individual Equipment Using Chemical Decontamination Kits
031-503-1015	Protect Yourself from NBC Injury/Decontamination with the Appropriate Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear
031-503-1018	React to a Nuclear Hazard or Attack
031-503-1019	React to a Chemical or Biological Hazard or Attack
031-503-3005	Submit NBC 1 Report
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation
011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support
011-510-1101	Employ NBC Protection for Aviation Operations
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC Warning and Reporting System
011-420-1101	Supervise a Unit NBC Defense Program

031-503-1013	Decontaminate Yourself and Individual Equipment Using Chemical Decontamination Kits
031-503-1015	Protect Yourself from NBC Injury/Decontamination with the Appropriate Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear
031-503-1018	React to a Nuclear Hazard or Attack
031-503-1019	React to a Chemical or Biological Hazard or Attack
031-503-3005	Submit NBC 1 Report
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)

**01-2-0122.01-00CS PERFORM NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC) DECONTAMINATION**

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-1047	Process Information during Tactical Operations
031-503-2023	Measure Radiation Dose Rate and Total Dose Rate
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)
031-503-3014	Supervise Decontamination Procedure

**Enlisted MOS: COM 74B/54B Skill Level: 2/3**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-1100	Determine Aircraft Decontamination Levels and Procedures
031-503-2023	Measure Radiation Dose Rate and Total Dose Rate
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)
031-503-3014	Supervise Decontamination Procedures

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-1100	Determine Aircraft Decontamination Levels and Procedures
031-503-2023	Measure Radiation Dose Rate and Total Dose Rate
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)
031-503-3014	Supervise Decontamination Procedure

**01-2-0702.01-00CS PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT**

**Enlisted MOS: COM Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

154-385-6465	Employ the Risk Management Process during Mission Planning
--------------	--

**Enlisted 93P/93C/92Y MOS: 15B Skill Level: 4/5**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-420-0028	Plan Aviation Deployment
011-540-0033	Supervise Shipment of Army Aircraft
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
121-010-3095	Coordinate Unit Deployment Readiness Activities
551-88N-0002	Prepare for Unit Movement

551-88N-0004 Coordinate Unit Movement

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: MAJ and/or Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-420-0028	Plan Aviation Deployment
011-540-0033	Supervise Shipment of Army Aircraft
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
121-010-3095	Coordinate Unit Deployment Readiness Activities
551-88N-0002	Prepare for Unit Movement
551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement

**01-2-0715.01-0NRC PERFORM FIELD SANITATION**

**Enlisted MOS: 92Y Skill Level: 1-4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
081-831-1047	Supervise the Implementation of Preventive Medicine Policies
081-831-9000	Implement Preventive Medicine Measures
081-831-9023	Enforce Preventive Medicine Measures for Protection against Disease and Non-battle Injuries

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
081-831-1047	Supervise the Implementation of Preventive Medicine Policies
081-831-9000	Implement Preventive Medicine Measures
081-831-9023	Enforce Preventive Medicine Measures for Protection against Disease and Non-battle Injuries

**01-2-2035.01-0NRC IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C and 93P Skill Level: 4/5**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0505	Conduct Company-Level Rehearsals/AARs
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: MAJ and/or Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0505	Conduct Company-Level Rehearsals/AARs
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment

**01-2-2047.01-00CS CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES**

**Enlisted MOS: 93P/93C/35D/63B Skill Level: 2-5**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-510-0504	Prepare a Company-Level Operation Order (OPORD)

011-510-0505	Conduct Company-Level Rehearsals /AARs
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
011-510-0504	Prepare a Company-Level Operation Order (OPORD)
011-510-0505	Conduct Company-Level Rehearsals/AARs
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning

**01-2-2048.01-00CS CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-7000	Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures
011-420-0005	Apply the Fundamentals of Air Defense

**Enlisted MOS: 63B/93P/93C Skill Level: 1-5**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations
011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
011-420-0005	Apply the Fundamentals of Air Defense
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information
551-88N-0002	Prepare for Unit Movement
551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations
011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
011-420-0005	Apply the Fundamentals of Air Defense
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information
551-88N-0002	Prepare for Unit Movement
551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement

**01-2-2064.01-00CS PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT**

**Enlisted MOS: 93P and 93C Skill Level: 4/5**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
101-92Y-0003	Supervise Supply Operations at the Company Level
121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
101-92Y-0003	Supervise Supply Operations at the Company Level
121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting

**01-2-7039.01-00CS CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0001	Locate a Geographic Coordinate on a Sectional, JOG-A, or TPC
--------------	--

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0001	Locate a Geographic Coordinate on a Sectional, JOG-A, or TPC
--------------	--

**Enlisted MOS: 93P/93C Skill Level: 3-5**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order
301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures

**Officer MOS: 15B and 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0006	Employ Fire Support
011-510-0023	Conduct Assembly Area Operations
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order
301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures

**01-2-7102.01-0NRC SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS**

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 3**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
--------------	--

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0502	Supervise Company-Level Maintenance
011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support
081-831-9000	Implement Preventive Medicine Measures
091-357-0001	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Measures
091-900-0006	Direct Unit Maintenance Operations

**01-4-0022.01-00CS INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)2**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-5050	Install Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or AN/TRN-30(V)2
011-143-5051	Operate Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or (V)2

011-143-5054 Prepare the Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or (V)2 for Movement

**01-4-0025.01-00CS INSTALL THE AN/TSC-61B**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-0009 Prepare the Flight Coordination Central, AN/TSC-61B, for Movement

011-143-0016 Install the Flight Coordination Central, AN/TSC-61B

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-3001 Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment

**01-4-0029.01-00CS INSTALL THE LANDING CONTROL CENTRAL AN/TSQ-71 SERIES**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-1009 Install the Landing Control Central, AN/TSQ-71B

011-143-5006 Operate the Landing Control Central, AN/TSQ-71B

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-3001 Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment

011-143-3002 Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment

**01-4-0032.01-00CS CONDUCT GROUND-CONTROLLED APPROACH RADAR OPERATIONS**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-0012 Process Pilot Reports (PIREPs)

011-143-0018 Provide Traffic Information/Advisories

011-143-0020 Provide Flight Following Service

011-143-0022 Provide Emergency Assistance

011-143-0023 Issue Airport Condition Information

011-143-0024 Perform Assumption of Duty Requirements

011-143-0026 Control the Flight of VFR/SVFR Aircraft

011-143-0100 Transfer Radar Identification

011-143-1021 Communicate Using Interphone Procedures

011-143-1038 Provide Radar Approach Information

011-143-1039 Provide Airport Surveillance Radar Approach

011-143-1040 Provide Precision Approach Radar Approach

011-143-1044 Identify Aircraft Using Radar Procedures

011-143-1045 Provide Radar Separation

011-143-2001 Perform the Initial Orientation of Radar Set, AN/TPN-18A

011-143-5006 Operate the Landing Control Central, AN/TSQ-71B

011-143-5055 Record ATC Facility Daily Activities

011-143-5057 Communicate Using Radio Communication Procedures

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-2003	Assign Controllers to Operating Positions
011-143-2004	Perform the Responsibilities of a Shift Supervisor during or after an Aircraft Accident or Incident
011-143-3001	Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment
011-143-3002	Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment
011-143-5059	Identify Airspace Control Measures

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 3**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-3004	Perform the Responsibilities of an ATC Chief during or after an Aircraft Accident or Incident
011-143-3015	Develop Instrument Approach Procedures (ASR, PAR, NDB)
011-143-3003	Develop a Tactical Instrument Departure/Approach/En Route Structure

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-5058	Supervise the Establishment of Terminal Instrument Approach
011-143-5062	Determine Army Airspace Command and Control Procedures
011-143-3003	Develop a Tactical Instrument Departure/Approach/En Route Structure

**01-4-0033.01-00CS INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-70A OR AN/TSW-7A**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-0003	Prepare the Aircraft Control Central, AN/TSQ-70A, for Movement
011-143-1007	Install the Air Traffic Control Central, AN/TSQ-70A
011-143-5002	Operate the Air Traffic Control Central, AN/TSQ-70A
011-143-5004	Operate the Air Traffic Control Central, AN/TSW-7A

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-3001	Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment
011-143-3002	Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment

**01-4-0034.01-00CS CONDUCT TOWER OPERATIONS**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-0012	Process Pilot Reports (PIREPs)
011-143-0014	Process Flight Progress Strips
011-143-0015	Control Aircraft, Vehicles, and Personnel by ATC Light Gun Signals
011-143-0018	Provide Traffic Information/Advisories
011-143-0019	Select Runway for Use
011-143-0020	Provide Flight Following Service
011-143-0022	Provide Emergency Assistance
011-143-0023	Issue Airport Condition Information

011-143-0024	Perform Assumption of Duty Requirements
011-143-0026	Control the Flight of VFR/SVFR Aircraft
011-143-5002	Operate the Air Traffic Control Central, AN/TSQ-70A
011-143-5004	Operate the Air Traffic Control Central, AN/TSW-7A
011-143-5055	Record ATC Facility Daily Activities
011-143-5057	Communicate Using Radio Communication Procedures
011-143-5060	Control Aircraft Taxi
011-143-5063	Decode METAR Weather Reports

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-2003	Assign Controllers to Operating Positions
011-143-2004	Perform the Responsibilities of a Shift Supervisor during or after an Aircraft Accident or Incident
011-143-3001	Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment
011-143-3002	Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment
011-143-5059	Identify Airspace Control Measures

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 3**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-3004	Perform the Responsibilities of an ATC Chief during or after an Aircraft Accident or Incident
011-143-3015	Develop Instrument Approach Procedures (ASR, PAR, NDB)

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-5062	Determine Army Airspace Command and Control Procedures
--------------	--

**01-4-0117.01-00CS INSTALL THE TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM (TAIS) AN/TSQ-221**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-3001	Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment
--------------	---

**01-4-0118.01-00CS CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (TAIS-AIC) OPERATIONS**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-0014	Process Flight Progress Strips
011-143-0018	Provide Traffic Information/Advisories
011-143-0020	Provide Flight Following Service
011-143-1021	Communicate Using Interphone Procedures
011-143-5057	Communicate Using Radio Communication Procedures
011-143-5063	Decode METAR Weather Reports
011-143-7000	Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-3002	Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment
--------------	---

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-5063 Decode METAR Weather Reports

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301 Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process

011-510-0311 Conduct Military Briefings

011-420-0018 Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>)

**01-4-0119.01-00CS CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-0014 Process Flight Progress Strips

011-143-0018 Provide Traffic Information/Advisories

011-143-0020 Provide Flight Following Service

011-143-1021 Communicate Using Interphone Procedures

011-143-5008 Operate the Flight Coordination Central, AN/TSC-61B

011-143-5057 Communicate Using Radio Communication Procedures

011-143-5063 Decode METAR Weather Reports

011-143-7000 Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-3002 Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment

**01-4-0124.01-00CS OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147**

**Enlisted MOS: 35D and 93C Skill Level: 1-4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-3001 Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment

**01-4-1029.01-00CS PERFORM VEHICLE RECOVERY OPERATIONS**

**Enlisted MOS: 63B Skill Level: 1-4**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0311 Conduct Military Briefings

011-510-0502 Supervise Company-Level Maintenance

011-510-1301 Supervise Ground Maintenance Operations

091-900-0006 Perform Unit Maintenance Operations

**Officer MOS: 15B and/or 15D Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0311 Conduct Military Briefings

011-510-0502 Supervise Company-Level Maintenance

011-510-1301 Supervise Ground Maintenance Operations

091-900-0006 Perform Unit Maintenance Operations

**01-4-1352.01-0NRC ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS**

**Enlisted MOS: 31U Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

113-596-1068 Install Antenna Group OE-254/GRC (Team Method)

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-1052 Operate SINCGARS Equipment  
 113-587-1064 Prepare SINCGARS (Manpack) for Operation  
 113-587-2071 Operate SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) (Net Members)  
 113-305-1001 Communicate by a Tactical Radio

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-1051 Implement Electronic Protections (EPs)  
 011-141-1052 Operate SINCGARS Equipment  
 011-141-1054 Operate SINCGARS Data Device  
 011-141-1056 Operate the VRC-97 (MSRT)  
 113-587-1064 Prepare SINCGARS (Manpack) for Operation  
 113-587-2001 Operate Radio Set AN/PRC-77 or AN/PRC-25  
 113-587-2071 Operate SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) (Net Members)  
 113-596-1068 Install Antenna Group OE-254/GRC (Team Method)  
 113-305-1001 Communicate by a Tactical Radio

**Officer MOS: 15A Skill Level: Any Skill Level**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-500-2300 Operate Communications Security Equipment.  
 113-305-1001 Communicate by a Tactical Radio

**01-4-3001.01-00CS CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS-ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE**

**Enlisted MOS: 31U and 35D Skill Level: 1-4**

**Individual Task(s)**

081-831-1005 Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock  
 081-831-1007 Perform First Aid for Burns  
 081-831-1042 Perform Mouth-to-Mouth Resuscitation

**01-5-0021.01-00CS INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)1**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-5050 Install Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or AN/TRN-30(V)2  
 011-143-5051 Operate Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or (V)2  
 011-143-5054 Prepare the Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or (V)2, for Movement

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-3001 Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment

**Enlisted MOS: 93P Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-141-1060 Extract Data from Signal Operation Instructions (SOI) Extract

**01-5-0033.01-00CS PROVIDE AIR TRAFFIC SERVICE (ATS) AT A TEMPORARY LANDING SITE**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-0018 Provide Traffic Information/Advisories  
011-143-0022 Provide Emergency Assistance  
011-143-0026 Control the Flight of VFR/SVFR Aircraft  
011-143-5050 Install Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or AN/TRN-30(V)2  
011-143-5051 Operate Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or (V)2  
011-143-5060 Control Aircraft Taxi  
011-143-7003 Install the AN/TSQ-198 (Tactical Terminal Control System)  
011-143-7004 Operate the AN/TSQ-198 (Tactical Terminal Control System)

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-3001 Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment  
011-143-3002 Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment

**Enlisted MOS: COM Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

071-329-1006 Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point while Dismounted

**01-5-0116.01-00CS INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-198**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-7001 Introduction to the AN/TSQ-198 (Tactical Terminal Control System)  
011-143-7003 Install the AN/TSQ-198 (Tactical Terminal Control System)  
011-143-7004 Operate the AN/TSQ-198 (Tactical Terminal Control System)

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-3001 Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment  
011-143-7002 Prepare the AN/TSQ-198 (Tactical Terminal Control System) for Movement

**01-5-0123.01-00CS CONDUCT LANDING ZONE/PICKUP ZONE (LZ/PZ) OPERATIONS**

**Enlisted MOS: COM Skill Level: 2**

**Individual Task(s)**

071-329-1006 Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point while Dismounted

**01-5-1110.01-00CS IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM**

**Enlisted MOS: 71M Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings

**Officer MOS: 56A Skill Level: Captain**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
158-100-1134	Resolve an Ethical Dilemma
158-100-1240	Communicate Effectively as a Leader
158-100-1260	Counsel Subordinates
158-100-1331	Apply Ethical Decisionmaking Process as a Commander, Leader, or Staff Member
158-100-1385	Implement Measures to Reduce Operational Stress

**01-5-1353.01-00CS PROVIDE PATHFINDER SUPPORT**

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 1**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-0008	Conduct Landing Zone/Pickup Zone (LZ/PZ) Operations
--------------	---

**Enlisted MOS: 93C Skill Level: 2-3**

**Individual Task(s)**

011-143-0008	Conduct Landing Zone/Pickup Zone (LZ/PZ) Operations
011-420-0018	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )

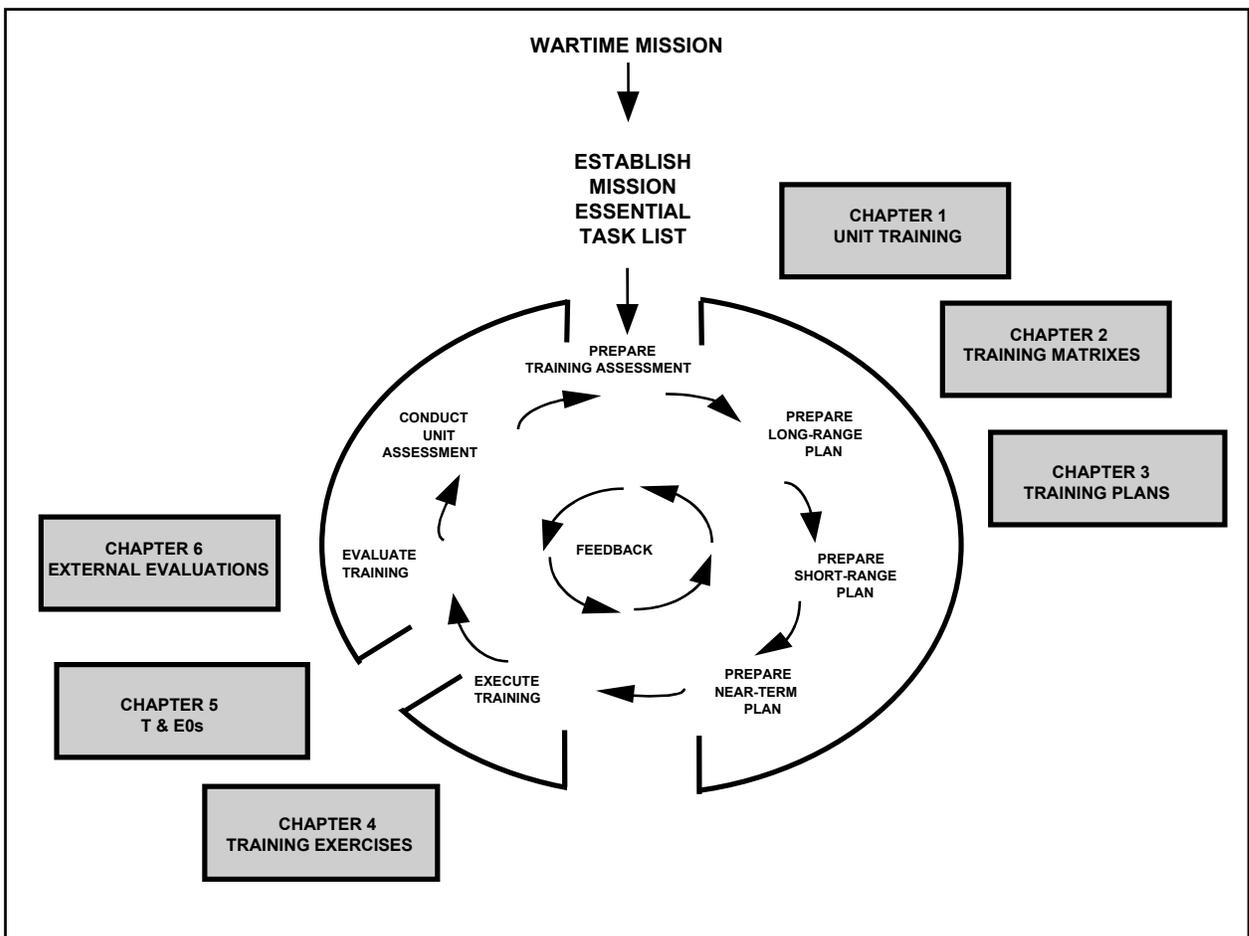


## Chapter 3

# TRAINING PLANS

**3-1. General.** This chapter describes the use of the MTP for developing battalion-level training plans and also provides mission outlines. It is designed to assist commanders in preparing training plans for critical wartime missions. FM 25-100 and FM 25-101 provide detailed information on training management and should be used along with this MTP.

**a. Training Management Cycle.** Figure 3-1 depicts the stages of the training management cycle. The training management cycle is mission essential task list (METL)-based and depends on continuous feedback. This cycle is a common thread throughout chapter 3.



**Figure 3-1. Training Management Cycle.**

**b. Training Management Automation.** The Army is fielding a fully integrated training system through the use of CD-ROM and the Internet. Successful accomplishment of these Army Training (AT) XXI training management automation objectives will support unit training at the battalion level. These improvements are described below and in each section of this MTP.

**(1) Standard Army Training System (SATS).** The SATS program is a unit-level training development tool that ties into the TRADOC training database program called Automated Systems Approach to Training (ASAT). SATS combines training doctrine with automated information management technologies to help commander's plan, manage, develop, execute, record, and report training programs. It supports Active component (AC) and Reserve component (RC) units from squad to Army level. It automates training management doctrine found in FM 25-100, FM 25-101, and FM 3-0. Through the use of SATS, units are able to download current doctrine for use in training and training development. Information on how to obtain SATS software and a user's guide for the database is available through the SATS project manager at the Army Training Support Center, Fort Eustis, VA 23604. The Internet address for SATS is <http://www.sats.army.mil>.

**(2) Training Support Packages (TSPs).** Warfighter TSPs provide unit-tailored training scenarios for live, virtual, and constructive simulation training. Warrior TSPs and WarMod TSPs provide scenarios, courses, and materials for individual and systems training, respectively. TSPs minimize unit preparation time and increase actual training time.

**(3) Training Aids, Devices, Simulators, and Simulations (TADSS).** TADSS is a set of training tools to offset the financial, safety, environmental, and technological constraints associated with training as well as provide enhanced realism through the synthetic application of all battlefield operating systems, related units, and diverse training environments. It includes physical devices for institutional and collective training and synthetic environment (SE) tools.

**(4) Standard Army After Action Review System (STAARS).** STAARS is a system of after action systems designed to provide standardized and automated data/information storage, distribution, and retrieval in support of trainers, doctrine writers, testers, analysts, materiel developers, combat developers, and training developers to provide doctrine, training, leader development, organization, materiel, and soldiers (DTLOMS)-based data.

**(5) General Dennis J. Reimer Training and Doctrine Digital Library.** The RDL is an information repository that allows trainers, trainees, training developers, and doctrine writers to store and retrieve training and doctrine products and materials via the Internet and personal computers. The Internet address of the RDL is <http://www.adtdl.army.mil/atdls.htm>.

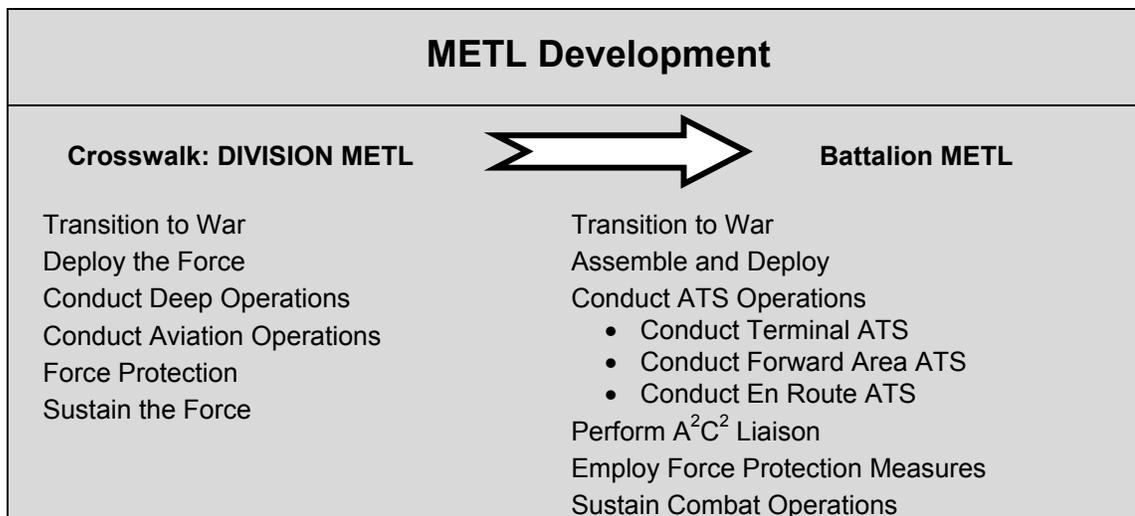
**c. Battle-Focus Planning.** As in tactical operations, planning lays the foundation for successful execution of any training plan. Planning involves leaders at all levels of the organization. It is an extension of the battle-focus concept that links organizational METL with the execution and evaluation of training. Battle focus allows the commander to narrow his scope of planning to wartime mission-essential tasks. All training that is planned and conducted must be linked to the METL and support collective battle tasks. It includes improving proficiency on some tasks and sustaining performance on others. When planning training, aviation commanders should include the senior warrant officer and the senior NCO at each level of command, as the senior trainers in their unit. The battalion commander is responsible for three types of training plans: long-range, short-range, and near-term plans.

### **3-2. Long-Range Planning.**

**a. Reading and Understanding the Command Training Guidance (CTG).** The CTG is published at division and brigade to document the organization's long-range (sometimes called annual) training plan. The CTG is the training analogue of the organization's operational war plan. It must be read and understood by every commander because it is used as a ready reference for planning, execution, and assessment of training throughout the long-range planning period.

**b. Developing the Unit METL.** This is the initial process in developing a battle-focused long-range training plan. The METL is an unconstrained statement of tasks required to accomplish wartime missions. It must be continuously reviewed, crosswalked with the unit modified table of organization and equipment (MTOE), CATS, and this MTP. It must support and compliment the METL of the next higher headquarters and be based on the wartime mission. All members of the organization must understand their unit METL. A checklist for METL development is shown below.

- (1) The brigade commander provides a restated wartime mission and approved METL to the battalion commander.
- (2) The battalion commander identifies specified and implied tasks.
- (3) Collective tasks that support critical wartime missions, and other tasks required to execute war plans, are identified using the mission-to-collective-task matrix found in chapter 2 of this MTP.
- (4) All collective tasks are compiled in a list sequenced as they are expected to occur during the execution of the wartime mission.
- (5) The restated mission is analyzed and only those tasks essential to accomplish the wartime mission are selected from the task list. Subordinate commanders, key warrant officers, and key NCOs take part in selecting the tasks. When the tasks are approved, these mission-essential tasks compose the specific battalion's METL and battle tasks, not to be confused with the all-inclusive collective task list found in this document.
- (6) The brigade commander then approves the battalion's METL. A unit's METL is stabilized when approved, and is normally modified only if changes occur in wartime missions. METL development is covered in detail in FM 25-101, chapter 2.
- (7) The battalion's restated mission and approved METL are provided to the subordinate chain of command. Figure 3-2 depicts a sample METL for an ATS battalion.
- (8) Army National Guard commanders face additional challenges in the training assessment process. Sources that may offer training insight include: the brigade final exercise report (FER), if the unit has recently completed a brigade command and battle staff training (BCBST) rotation; the training assessment module (TAM) after an annual training exercise; or information gained from consulting with the unit's training support battalion (TSBN).



**Figure 3-2. Sample Air Traffic Services Battalion METL.**

- c. **Establishing Training Objectives.** After the METL is approved, the commander establishes training objectives. The training objectives are conditions and standards that describe the situation or environment and ultimate outcome criteria the unit must meet to successfully perform the tasks. Training objectives and standards for METL can be obtained from the MTP, STP, higher headquarters command guidance, and local SOP. It is important that every task have a condition and a standard so that all training can be evaluated and critiqued to the standard.
- d. **Conducting Commander's Training Assessment.** Every commander has specific goals and training objectives based on his own vision and guidance from higher commanders and in ap-

propriate doctrinal manuals. An initial METL assessment is required to set the starting point to develop the battalion's training strategy. An ongoing evaluation process is required to ensure the battalion continues to be focused on preparation for its wartime missions. ATS commanders must always include the proficiency of individual controllers in their assessment. The training assessment is the commander's continuous comparison of the unit's current proficiency with the proficiency required to fight and win on the battlefield. The commander, his staff, and subordinate commanders assess the organization's current proficiency on mission essential tasks against the required standard. The commander then indicates the current proficiency by rating each task as "T" (Trained), "P" (Needs Practice), or "U" (Untrained). The outcome of the training assessment identifies the unit's training requirements. The METL assessment compares current levels of training with the Army standard and is used to update unit goals and objectives. Figure 3-3 summarizes the METL assessment process. Table 3-1 depicts a sample commander's training assessment for an ATS battalion. Tips for conducting the commander's training assessment are listed below.

(1) Review all formal and informal (internal/external) evaluations such as CTC after action reports, Command Inspection Program (CIP) results, and Aviation Resource Management Survey (ARMS) inspection trends. Pay particular attention to recurring deficiencies.

(2) Review past quarterly training briefings (QTBs) to determine how the previous commander assessed the unit with respect to the METL and his training strategy.

(3) Review all equipment availability and readiness reports to detect trends.

(4) Talk to the HHC commander, line company commander, 1SG, and command sergeant major (CSM).

(5) Review past unit status report (USR) data for readiness information.

(6) Review Command Information System (CIS) reports on individual training records, and check weapons qualification, common task training (CTT), and physical training (PT) scores.

(7) With company commanders, review individual controller folders for overall correctness, the commander's task list, and minimum training requirements. Discuss ATS training with the battalion standardization NCO.

(8) Assess controller proficiency as outlined in applicable training and operating manuals and ATS regulations.

<b>Training Assessment</b>
Is made by the commander.
Compares current level of training with the Army Standard.
Is the cornerstone of the long-range planning process.
Is based on firsthand observations and input from all leaders.
Is a continuous process.
Is used to set or update unit goals and objectives.
Is influenced by future events.

**Figure 3-3. Commander's Training Assessment.**

**Table 3-1. Sample Battalion Commander’s Training Assessment.**

METL TASKS	BOS						OVERALL
	INTELLIGENCE	DEPLOY/ MANAEUVER	EMPLOY FIREPOWER	PROTECT THE FORCE	CSS/ SUSTAINMENT	C MD & CONTROL	
Transition to War	T	T			T	T	T
Assemble and Deploy the Battalion	P	P	P			P	P
Conduct A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> Operations	P	P	P			P	P
Conduct Tactical Air Traffic Services Operations	T	T	T			T	T
Provide Installation ATS Operations	P	P	P			P	P
Conduct Stability and Support Operations	P	P	P			P	P
Sustain Combat Operations		T			T	T	T
Employ Force Protection Measures	T	T			T	T	T

(9) Review selected individual controller records to ensure that controllers maintain medical qualification and have current (commander-signed) "up-slips" (DA Form 4186) (Medical Recommendation for Flying Duty) on file for annual exams and all temporary groundings. Discuss training with the flight surgeon.

(10) Review ATS qualifications.

(11) Talk with key leaders within the organization (staff, company commanders, and NCOs) for their assessment of unit training.

(12) Review the personnel status report for critical personnel shortages. Note personnel turnover trends. Pay particular attention to low-density MOS turnover.

(13) Participate in several company-level training exercises.

(14) Talk to the soldiers.

(15) Determine operator proficiency on newly fielded equipment; i.e., a new series of cargo vehicle, new generators, and new or updated personal weapons.

(16) Consult with the battalion safety officer/NCO. Review the unit safety record, paying particular attention to trends in accidents and incidents.

(17) Consult with the brigade commander, S-3, and CSM. The perceptions of the battalion's training status by these three individuals will have tremendous impact on the battalion commander's training assessment.

**e. Developing Training Strategy and Commander's Guidance.** The training strategy is developed using the outcome from the training assessment. With the training strategy, the commander and his staff establish training priorities by determining the minimum frequency each mission essential task will be trained during the upcoming planning period. It includes the commander's guidance that includes the commander's training vision. To develop unit goals, the commander must:

- (1) Review higher commander's goals.
- (2) Spell out in real-world terms what his unit will do to comply with the goals of higher commanders.
- (3) List in broad terms his goals for the unit. Figure 3-4 provides a sample of the commander's guidance with training goals, objectives, and priorities.

<b>Commander's Guidance</b>
<b>Training Goals</b> —Company/Team/Platoon METL proficiencies trained to standard. Refine battle staff proficiencies and TOC/ALOC battle tracking procedures. The battalion poised to conduct a well-planned and precisely executed FTX during this quarter.
<b>Training Objectives:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Newly assigned soldiers and leaders trained and confident on battalion SOPs/TTPs.</li> <li>• Newly assigned controllers incorporated into the controller training program within 10 days of arrival in the unit.</li> <li>• Companies and staff sections trained for the battalion FTX to be conducted this quarter.</li> </ul>
<b>Training Priorities:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Individual/Crew proficiency sustainment.</li> <li>• Company/Team/Platoon mission training.</li> <li>• ATC equipment certification.</li> <li>• Staff battle tracking procedures.</li> <li>• NBC training.</li> </ul>

**Figure 3-4. Sample Commander's Guidance.**

**f. Establishing Training Priorities.** Priorities are established for training METL tasks by basing the priorities on training status, the criticality of the task, and the relative training emphasis the task should receive.

**g. Developing the Long-Range Planning Calendar.** Long-range planning is the process of integrating the battalion's training strategy into the brigade's long-range training calendar to ensure that resources—such as major training areas, ammunition, and fuel—are allocated and shortfalls are identified. Integrating the strategy into the calendar synchronizes supporting units and agencies so that training events can be properly executed. The tools used to develop a long-range training plan are the battalion training strategy, the brigade and division's CTG, and the brigade and division long-range training calendar (12 to 18 months out). Included below are some basic steps to follow in developing the long-range planning calendar.

**(1) Required Training Events on the Calendar.** The brigade or higher headquarters directs these requirements. These events provide excellent training opportunities. Evaluate the training strategy and determine what areas the battalion can train on during these events.

**(2) Other Requirements.** Identify other requirements that affect training such as announced inspections, weekly sergeants' time, new equipment fielding, and community and installation support events such as post cleanup and parades.

**(3) Time Management.** Highlight prime-time training periods available to the unit and support periods. Focus resources and training exercise planning to take advantage of prime-time training. Account for holiday periods.

**(4) Training Cycle Management.** Many headquarters use a training cycle system to insulate units from training distracters during peak training periods. Capitalize on training opportunities during these peak periods. However, the nature of support in an aviation battalion often mandates some level of continuous support to other combat units, even during peak training cycles. Alignment of aviation battalions in habitual support relationships will significantly impact training management.

**(5) Unit Exercises and Other Training.** Schedule events that will improve or sustain METL proficiency in conjunction with the higher headquarters directed training requirements.

**(6) Air Traffic Controller Training Program (ATCTP).** A major consideration in developing the long-range training plan for any ATS unit is the ATCTP and factors that impact it. Consideration must be given to—

- (a) Equipment certification.
- (b) Individual proficiency.
- (c) Collective proficiency.
- (d) Unit maintenance program.
- (e) Supporting flight-hour allocation to train for controller tests.
- (f) Individual and crew training that are usually accomplished while not in a support role; i.e., equipment training, airfield layout, and terminal instrument procedures (TERPs).
- (g) Training accomplished in the individual and collective simulators/simulations.

**h. Using SATS During Long-Range Planning.** Using SATS, the commander and S-3 can automate many of the long-range planning steps.

**(1) METL Development.** During METL development, SATS is used to download the modified table of organization and equipment (MTOE) for the battalion by selecting the RDL icon and following the instructions. A generic mission statement for the battalion is in the MTOE. Through the SATS terminal, obtain the battalion's official mission as approved by the brigade commander as well as the brigade's approved METL. With this information, and the commander's guidance, the S3 can prepare a strawman METL for discussion with the company commanders. After incorporating results from these discussions and examination of implied battle tasks, informal coordination can be made with the brigade S3. The battalion commander then approves the unit's proposed METL and sends it to the brigade commander for approval. This may be done electronically through shared databases on the battalion and brigade terminals.

**(2) Commander's Training Assessment.** The commander, or the S-3, can use SATS to access the RDL and download the battalion's MTP and other appropriate publications, such as FM 25-100. The previous commander's training assessment may be examined. In coordination with the CSM, company commanders, 1SGs, and the staff, the commander updates the commander's training assessment based on the new METL, any training evaluations available, and the personal observations of his team of leaders. From this process, the battalion commander will develop his training vision, goals, and priorities that he will distribute as the commander's guidance. Face-to-face coordination will occur throughout this process. The assessment documentation will be shared electronically through SATS.

**(3) Long-Range Planning Calendar.** For the new AT calendar, the S-3 will carefully study the brigade CTG and the key training events his unit will participate in. Through SATS and the RDL, the TSPs that relate to those events can be found. Based on the commander's training assessment, the S3 will tailor the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) or situational training exercises (STXs) for each event so they will emphasize the METL tasks that need practice. The METL tasks that must be trained will be the focus of battalion-directed training. The S3 selects appropriate training scenarios with supporting OPLANS from the TSPs on the SATS terminal. OPLAN annexes provide details

on resources, sequences, and duration of training. In coordination with the brigade, division, and the military community, the S3 chooses training event dates that do not conflict with other key calendar events. The proposed annual training calendar is now ready to be published. It is completely coordinated, approved by the battalion commander, meets the requirements of the CTG, and training resources are available. The S-3 includes the newly approved METL and establishes training objectives for each mission-essential task. The S-3 also identifies long-lead time resources and long-term coordination requirements for CTC rotations.

**3-3. Short-Range Planning.** A short-range training plan defines in greater detail the broad guidance on training events and other activities contained in the long-range training guidance and on the long-range calendar. It begins with a review of the commander's training assessment and the brigade's quarterly training guidance (QTG); it results in the quarterly (3 months') training calendar and quarterly training briefing (QTB). The short-range plan is prepared using the following steps:

**a. Review the Training Program.** The commander reviews the training program described in the long-range planning process to determine whether assessments made during long-range planning are still valid. The commander reviews—

(1) Each level of command from division through battalion and publishes short-range (quarterly) training guidance. The QTG enables commanders and staffs to prioritize and refine mission essential training guidance contained in the long-range CTG. Battalion commanders publish their QTG after receiving the brigade and division QTG, usually about 90 days before the start of each quarter. Important aspects of the QTG development process are the roles of the CSM, the 1SGs, and BN standardization NCO. They help identify the individual and crew training tasks that must be integrated into collective mission training during the short-range planning period.

(2) The training goals and priorities to determine whether goals are still valid. Established priorities must support these goals. To update priorities during the short-range planning process, the commander uses the same process used in establishing priorities during the long-range planning process.

(3) Training guidance from higher headquarters to ensure the training program described in the long-range planning calendar meets the established training guidance.

(4) Long-range planning calendars of the unit and higher headquarters for entries that affect short-range planning. Changes to the long-range planning calendar may affect the unit's ability to accomplish its training program.

(5) Previous short-range planning calendars for the AC or monthly schedules for the RC are for training accomplished, training pre-empted, and lessons learned.

**b. Review Current Unit Proficiency.** This review is performed to update priorities. The commander's training assessment is re-looked to provide a snapshot of the unit's current soldier, leader, and collective task proficiency. Individual and crew training sustainment must be included in the plan.

**c. Review Resources.** This review is performed to determine if it is still possible to execute the program described on the long-range planning calendar.

**d. Review Training Environment.** This second review of the training environment takes on added importance as training events and activities approach. Factors that affect the training environment and that collectively impact on the training program are—

- (1) Personnel assigned.
- (2) Personnel turbulence.
- (3) Morale.
- (4) Education programs.
- (5) Mandatory training.
- (6) Visits, inspections, and tests.

- (7) Supplies and equipment.
- (8) Nonmission-related activities.
- (9) Other programs.

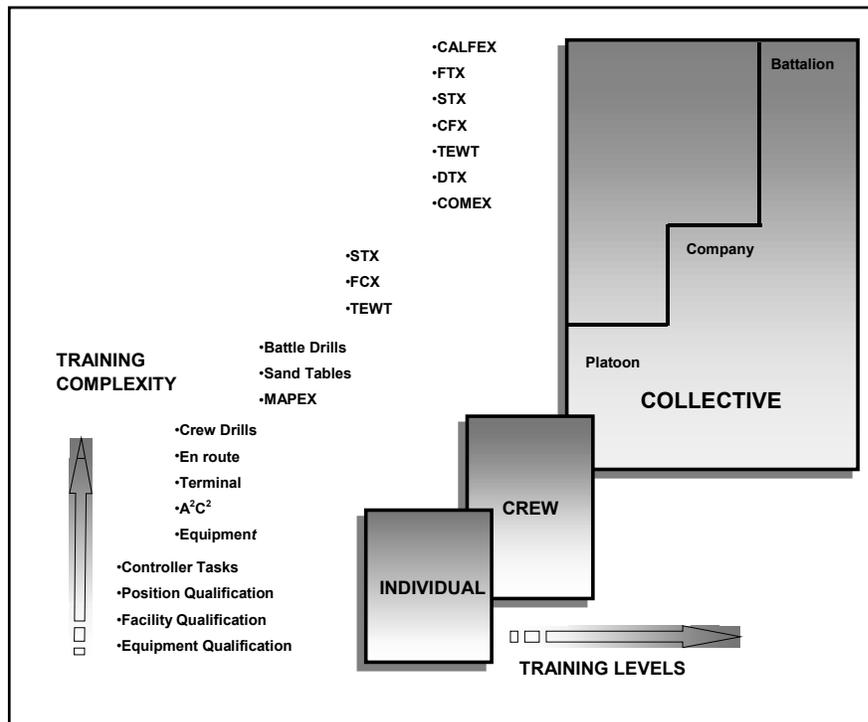
**e. Develop a Detailed Plan of Action.** Develop a detailed plan for the duration of the short-range plan. The detailed plan of action is prepared as described below.

**(1) Validate the need for scheduled events.** The events identified on the long-range training plan are examined to determine whether they are still valid.

**(2) Transfer valid events to a quarterly training calendar.**

**(3) Determine desired outcomes for scheduled events.** The commander determines what he expects to accomplish with each event and then backward plans to achieve the desired outcome.

**(4) Analyze supporting missions to determine the related individual, leader, and collective tasks.** The success of collective training is a function of the training achievement of crews and of individuals. Figure 3-5 depicts the relationships among training levels and exercises that support that training.



**Figure 3-5. Training Exercises and Training Levels.**

**(5) Select specific training objectives for missions and tasks to be trained.** The T&EOs in chapter 5 provide the commander with conditions, standards, task steps, and performance measures for the collective tasks that support the unit's missions.

**(6) Prepare a quarterly training calendar.** When preparing the quarterly training calendar, the S-3 will study the brigade CTG and the battalion annual training calendar. He will refine and expand the annual calendar, as appropriate, and identify, allocate, and coordinate short lead-time resources such as local training facilities. The S-3 will pay particular attention to CTC lessons learned, as obtained from STAARS and the RDL on the SATS terminal, as he begins to develop training objectives and tasks for inclusion in an FTX OPOD. He will allocate time on the Aviation Combined

Arms Tactical Trainer—Aviation (AVCATT-A) and other critical training resources. The S-3 will cross-reference each event with specific training objectives and coordinate with all supporting agencies, the battalion staff, and unit commanders.

**(7) Review short-range plans with higher headquarters.**

**(8) Issue guidance specifically addressing how training will be accomplished.** Commanders may pass guidance to lower echelons in many ways, including:

- (a) Letters of instruction.
- (b) Training meetings.
- (c) Command and staff calls.
- (d) Published S3 notes.

**3-4. Near-Term Planning.** Near-term planning covers a 6- to 8-week period before training. It defines specific actions required to execute the short-range plan and is the final phase of planning before training execution.

**a. Company and Platoon Planning.**

(1) The battalion staff uses the training plan to define responsibilities and assist the company commanders in planning and executing training for their units. In preparation for training, the company commander may execute his own training strategy. Company commanders focus on collective training and then individual training.

(2) Platoon sergeants focus on individual training and then on collective training. The platoon should be able to perform all of its entire individual and collective tasks according to standards and guidelines provided by the appropriate STP, MTP, FM, and unit SOP. To accomplish this, platoons can plan and execute limited STXs before taking part in company-level training. These exercises can increase the confidence level of individual and crews. They also provide valuable operational experience. In developing the platoon training plan, leaders at all levels should adhere to the principles outlined in FM 25-100 and FM 25-101 as well as using this MTP as a guide. Platoon leaders should crosswalk training references to identify the platoon collective tasks and the crew, leader, and individual tasks used during training exercises.

**b. Tips for Commanders.** In near-term planning, commanders:

- (1) Conduct battalion and company training meetings to coordinate and finalize all training events, activities, and resources.
- (2) Provide specific guidance to trainers.
- (3) Prepare training objectives.
- (4) Prepare training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs).
- (5) Ensure attached or operational control (OPCON) units have been integrated.
- (6) Determine time for pre-execution checks.
- (7) Prepare detailed training schedules.
- (8) Crosswalk equipment and resource requirements.

**c. Training Meetings.** Training meetings are nonnegotiable at the battalion and company level; they must be held. During training meetings, commanders provide guidance for forming training schedules, conducting near-term planning, and resourcing long-range planning. The primary focus of training meetings is management issues for the next 6 weeks. At the company level, training meetings focus on the specifics of training to be conducted. Training events that are exciting, demanding, and directly related to the unit's mission are the payoff for well-structured, well-organized, and recurring training meetings. Training meetings are conducted in three phases: Phase I—assessment of completed training; Phase II—coordination; and Phase III—future planning. They produce coordinated and locked-in training schedules. Battalion training meetings are:

- (1) Run and conducted by the commander.
- (2) Focused on training issues only.
- (3) Conducted weekly.
- (4) Routinely scheduled on the same day and time.
- (5) Posted on the training schedule.
- (6) Agenda oriented.
- (7) Attended by all necessary participants to include all commanders.
- (8) Focused on training that is METL oriented.
- (9) Ensure that risk management is integrated.
- (10) Forums to identify and overcome problems or distracters.

**d. Training Schedules.** The training schedule is the company's primary management tool to ensure that training is conducted on time, by qualified trainers, and with the necessary resources. Draft training schedules must be initiated at least 6 to 8 weeks out to ensure that resources are coordinated and external support is requested. Once the battalion commander approves and the company commander signs the training schedule, it constitutes an official order. Training schedules must be living documents, but the S-3 should approve all changes. He ensures they are up-to date and posted where every soldier in the unit can read them. Training schedules ensure information is disseminated and every soldier knows who is to be at the scheduled training, with what equipment, and the date/time/place where the training will take place.

**e. Preparation for Training.** As with any tactical unit, ATS units must be proficient at the myriad of tasks necessary to deploy, establish assembly areas and conduct operations, perform maintenance, and defend organizational assets from a field site. In addition, ATS units must maintain extremely high standards of controller proficiency. The following discussion covers preparation for training for both support tasks as well as controller tasks.

**(1) Train and certify leaders.** This is an important step and covers all trainers, evaluators, and unit leaders involved in unit training. The proficiency and preparedness of the evaluation team will directly affect the quality of training and the proficiency that units gain at the training site. Before execution of training, senior leaders must certify all trainers and leaders to ensure their technical and tactical proficiency in relation to the unit they will be training and evaluating. This can be done using a series of officer and NCO professional development (OPD/NCOPD) sessions, followed by certification exercises or examinations. These can take many forms, e.g. written exams and sand table evaluations. The trainers should have held the position of the individuals they are selected to evaluate. Leaders must also undergo training before the unit takes part in a collective training exercise. Commanders at each level must ensure that subordinate leaders are able to perform the required leader tasks in support of the collective tasks to be trained. In turn, senior leaders are responsible for training subordinate leaders on the individual and crew tasks supporting the collective tasks.

**(2) Reconnoiter the site.** After trainers, evaluators, and leaders are certified, the commander and evaluation team must make a site reconnaissance of the area where the training will be conducted. At this point, they can begin to develop graphic control measures for the exercise. They also conduct a terrain analysis to identify all key terrain as well as the following locations:

- (a) STX lanes.
- (b) Opposing Forces (OPFOR) positions.
- (c) Assembly areas.
- (d) Leader training sites.
- (e) AAR sites.
- (f) Logistical support locations.
- (g) Command post locations.

(h) Retraining areas.

**(3) Conduct Risk Management.** Risk management can be a great asset to training realistically and safely. Risk management must be conducted correctly and used to improve training. Identifying hazards, assessing hazards, making decisions, implementing controls, and supervising execution—whether formal or informal—is commander business. Training realistically for war requires commanders to properly manage the risks that are inherent in the business. This means eliminating all unacceptable risks and properly dealing with the acceptable calculated risks that remain. Appendix C of this MTP covers risk management in detail.

**(4) Issue the plan.** After planning and coordination are completed and the training event begins, the platoon leader receives the OPORD and begins his troop-leading procedures. While he formulates his plan, the rest of the platoon conducts the various activities of troop-leading procedures, including crew training, in preparation for the exercise. The trainer and/or commander evaluate the platoon leader on his understanding of the OPORD, requiring him to back-brief the order. This ensures the platoon leader is ready to issue the OPORD to his platoon. It also tests the platoon leader's ability to understand oral orders and build his confidence before stepping in front of his team leaders, and vehicle commanders to issue the order.

**(5) Rehearse.** The key to successful execution is practice. No matter what its level of proficiency, the unit will benefit from conducting rehearsals. Rehearsals ensure understanding of the mission; concept of the operation and commander's intent; specific responsibilities and timing of actions; and backup procedures. Though time may be critical, some form of rehearsal must be done before mission execution. Try not to be redundant unless necessary. Know the desired outcome of the rehearsal, and establish standards. Some rehearsal techniques used at battalion and company level are map rehearsals, sand-table/terrain model, and rock drills. A well thought-out and executed rehearsal results in synchronized, successful execution of combat actions. The rehearsal should cover the mission from start to finish, concentrating on actions in the objective area. If time is limited, the commander must decide which are the critical events of the mission and rehearse them first.

**(a)** Minimize changes at the rehearsal. Rehearsals generally occur at the 11th hour and major changes at this point can be disastrous. Instill in the members of the unit that, if they see a potential conflict, they should not wait until the rehearsal to voice it—the more time to implement a change, the better.

**(b)** Insist that members of each participating section/team attend the rehearsal. There is no more important duty than this critical preparation task. Think risk management!

**(c)** Build and use an easily transportable rehearsal box/kit. Contents may include engineer tape, paint, chalk, string, rope, tent stakes, 3x5 cards, and model threat and friendly vehicles and aircraft.

**(d)** Reinforce earlier training and increase proficiency in the critical tasks to be evaluated.

**(e)** Synchronize the actions of team leaders, vehicle commanders, and other subordinate elements.

**(f)** Confirm coordination requirements between the platoon and adjacent units.

**(g)** Improve each soldier's understanding of the concept of the operation, the fire support plan, anticipated contingencies, and possible actions and reactions for various situations that may arise during the operation.

**f. Execute Training Exercise.** Execution of a training exercise should be attempted only when the unit/crew/individual has a clear understanding of how to execute the mission. The trainer makes this determination at the conclusion of the rehearsals. At that point, he either allows the unit to execute the task or continues with additional rehearsals, focusing on leader training. During the execution phase, the trainer conducts a detailed evaluation for use during the AAR, which is conducted immediately following the exercise.

**g. Conduct After Action Review.** A properly conducted AAR is the key to assessing your training program. The two types of AARs are formal and informal. Formal AARs normally are scheduled and conducted as part of an external or internal evaluation. Informal AARs require less planning and the focus is on-the-spot reviews of soldier and collective training performance. AARs should take the format of issues, discussion, and recommendations. They analyze the training event through the planning, preparation, and execution phases of the operation. The AAR is a professional discussion that requires the active participation of those being trained. This structured review process allows training participants to discover for themselves what happened, why it happened, and how the unit can improve its performance. Section/teams should conduct informal AARs after every training event. These lessons learned should be captured and shared at the next company training meeting. AARs should always—

- (1) Be standards-based and capture the good and bad aspects of the training.
- (2) Provide the participants with a rating for each task trained during the exercise.
- (3) Tell a story about what was planned, what happened, why it happened, and what could be done differently to improve performance.
- (4) Tell what is good and needs to stay the same.
- (5) Reinforce and increase the learning that took place.
- (6) Increase soldier and leader interest and motivation.
- (7) Identify and analyze both strengths and weaknesses.
- (8) Involve all participants.
- (9) Guide the training unit toward achieving learning objectives.
- (10) Link lessons learned to subsequent training.

**h. Retrain.** Based on the evaluation results, the unit should undergo retraining on each task for which it receives a NO-GO rating. Trainers and leaders must develop a training program to meet these specific requirements. The unit can then be reevaluated at a later date.

**i. Plan for Near-Term Using Automated Tools.** For the monthly training schedule, using AT XXI automated tools, the S3 calls up TADSS on the SAT terminal and allocates training resources to specific trainers. He uses the STAARS to ensure appropriate AARs are included in training; lessons learned from other units are studied before training begins; and new lessons learned are captured when the event ends. The S-3 supervises all training events to ensure they are presented as scheduled and they are accurate, well structured, efficient, realistic, safe, and effective. The S-3 must ensure informal evaluation and feedback by trainers and senior leaders are continuous and formal evaluations are included in training plans. Evaluation documentation can range from annotated T&EOs to CTC take-home packages. The STAARS can be accessed to provide simple, codified methods for capturing and disseminating the results of formal evaluations as well as lessons learned. Standard Center for Army Lessons Learned (CALL) formats are used. The S-3 uses the command assessment program established earlier by the battalion commander; the S-3 gathers all the related reports, results, feedback, scores, evaluations, and related data that were used to assist in the commander's organizational assessment. This assessment covers the battalion's overall go-to-war readiness in every area, not just in training. The assessment results are used to update the unit files in STAARS. The information is then available for input to the Unit Level Logistics System (ULLS); and to the Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) to update the resource database, the RDL; and to link to the Status of Resource and Training System (SORTS).

### 3-5. Training the Headquarters.

**a. Training at Battalion Level.** Planning training for the battalion staff presents the commander with unique challenges. The staff and headquarters are involved in day-to-day priority operations and support of subordinate unit training. It is difficult to find the time to address the training needs of these elements; however, the staff and headquarters must be capable of fulfilling their roles

for the unit to perform its wartime missions. The battalion XO is the key and must coordinate with the commander to ensure staff tasks are mastered while still accomplishing day-to-day priorities.

**b. Training the Coordinating Staff.** Chapter 5 of this MTP identifies the training tasks for the battalion staff. The strategy used to train the staff varies based on the considerations used in planning training (such as level of proficiency and training support available). FM 25-101 contains detailed information on the conduct of exercises. Methods of training the staff are discussed below:

**(1) Tactical Exercise Without Troops (TEWT).**

**(a) General.** The TEWT is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. The exercise is used to train subordinate leaders and battle staffs on terrain analysis and unit and weapons emplacement. The TEWT also provides training on planning the execution of a unit mission, which may include the employment of CS and CSS assets. A TEWT can be used to train personnel to—

- 1** Analyze terrain.
- 2** Employ units according to terrain analysis.
- 3** Emplace weapon systems to best support the unit's mission.
- 4** Plan conduct of the unit's mission.
- 5** Plan and place CS and CSS assets.
- 6** Coach subordinates on the best use of terrain.

**(b) Planning phase.** TEWTs require limited resources (maps, graphic materials, and organic vehicles for transportation during the exercise). Commanders begin planning, using the following steps: operations, tasks, objectives, personnel trained, and resources.

**1** When conducting reconnaissance of the terrain, inspect the area for all military aspects. Take detailed notes about the area, and select rendezvous points, briefing or AAR sites, parking areas, and routes.

**2** In developing the scenario, include the general situation, initial situation, requirements, and time schedule. Check the scenario to ensure it fits the terrain. During this check, wargame likely responses by the staff to various situations and requirements.

**3** Ensure narratives for the scenario (situations) are short and create a realistic battlefield picture.

**4** Finalize plans and the scenario. The starting point for a TEWT can be either the issuance of an OPORD or the commander's concept of the operation and intent. Then reconnaissance, planning, coordination, and preparation can begin. The higher headquarters staff should assist in preparing the OPORDs.

**(c) Preparation phase.** Conduct a rehearsal by wargaming with the staff.

**(d) Execution phase.** Ensure all participants are present, to include staff, company commanders, attached or OPCON commanders, platoon leaders, and CS and CSS personnel. If the staff and commander are initially preparing an OPORD, only the planning staff need be present. The execution phase should include—

**1** Explain the purpose and objectives of the exercise.

**2** Present the general situation. (This information may be given earlier.)

**3** Orient personnel on the terrain and identify prominent features.

**4** Present the initial situation and requirements. Include the location and time of rendezvous for briefing the plan. Solutions or plans can be briefed at the same point, depending on the similarity of the company missions.

**5** Form personnel into groups and release groups to conduct reconnaissance. Maintain combat organization (company commanders with platoon leaders; staff with special elements).

**6** Move through the area to observe personnel conducting reconnaissance and formulating plans.

**7** Ensure all personnel meet at designated time and place.

**8** Select the order and personnel to brief.

**9** Ensure briefers use sand tables or map boards with graphics and walk the terrain.

**10** Personnel may listen to each briefing or may brief the commander on their plan separately and then move to the next position.

**11** Ask specific questions or provide a format for the briefer. For example, the commander may want leaders to brief on organization and employment of CS and CSS elements.

**12** At the end of subordinate back-briefs, the commander may conduct a sand table or terrain board rehearsal of the operation.

**13** Conduct TEWTs using the same procedures and techniques as for planning and preparing an actual operation.

**(e) After action review.** At the conclusion of each plan or after all solutions have been presented, conduct an AAR, covering solutions, employment of forces, and the battlefield operating systems (BOSs). Conduct the final AAR using the same steps and procedures as an FTX.

**(2) Map Exercise (MAPEX).**

**(a) General.** The MAPEX is a low-cost, low-overhead training exercise that requires a minimum number of support personnel; it portrays military situations on maps and overlays. It may be supplemented with training aids such as terrain models and sand tables. A MAPEX enables a commander to train the staff and leaders in planning, coordinating, and executing operations under simulated wartime conditions. The commander uses a MAPEX to train his staff and leaders to—

- Function as an effective team.
- Exchange information.
- Prepare estimates.
- Give appraisals.
- Make recommendations and decisions.
- Prepare plans.
- Issue orders.
- Coordinate execution of orders.

**1** MAPEXs can be conducted internally or with higher headquarters MAPEXs. They should include all leadership of attached and supporting elements.

**2** MAPEXs can be conducted several ways. One method involves only the staff and commander. The commander issues a higher headquarters order to his staff and then wargames, plans, and develops an OPORD. Another method involves staff and subordinate commanders. The commander and staff plan as in the first method and present the OPORD to the battalion orders group. The subordinate commanders and leaders then prepare orders and position forces on sand tables, map boards, or overlays. The orders group wargames through the operation. The commander presents different "what-if" situations to test the participants. In these MAPEXs, the commander acts as the primary trainer, but participation from higher headquarters and supporting CS and CSS elements increases the value of the exercise.

**(b) Planning phase.** The commander uses the following sequence to plan and conduct a MAPEX for his unit.

**1** As part of short-range planning, determine the tasks, operations, and objectives to be evaluated. Normally, tasks on which staff performance is weak, as identified during FTXs, have priority.

**2** Determine who will be trained. The first MAPEX may involve commander and staff; follow-on exercises can include leaders down to platoon level. Staff planning should involve all CS and CSS leaders: air defense artillery (ADA), forward support battalion (FSB), engineers, forward air controller (FAC), NBC, military intelligence (MI), organic elements. The higher headquarters staff should provide the OPORD and representatives during the exercise.

**3** Develop an outline plan (scenario).

**4** Determine the location of the exercise and resources required (classroom, tents, map boards, sand tables, butcher paper).

**(c) Preparation phase.** The commander performs the following actions to prepare for a MAPEX:

**1** Conducts training on staff coordination, estimates, recommendations, or preparation of orders.

**2** Sets up the exercise at the MAPEX site.

**3** Writes orders. The higher headquarters staff normally does this to promote coordination and teamwork between the headquarters and the battalion.

**(d) Execution phase.** The commander explains to his staff and leaders the objectives, sequence of events, and procedures. He—

**1** Begins the exercise when the higher headquarters OPORD is given to the staff by the commander or a headquarters' representative.

**2** Gives initial guidance and start the military decisionmaking process (MDMP).

**3** Using FM 101-5, develops the plan or order.

**4** Stops the sequence of events at any time to conduct an AAR or provide guidance to the staff.

**5** After the staff completes the plan, issues the OPORD to the staff, company commanders, and other attached or operational control (OPCON) unit commanders. Commanders plan and position their forces on a map board or sand table.

**6** May use an OPFOR to drive a MAPEX depicting various enemy actions and allowing the commander and staff to practice their own reactions and execution procedures. Simulations (discussed below) can also be used to make MAPEXs more execution-oriented and allow for planning of better evaluations.

**(e) After-action review.** AARs are conducted throughout the exercise, with a final AAR at the end of the MAPEX. Since there are no assessed results of the battle, the need for an in-depth discussion of what happened, why, and how to improve is even more critical.

### **(3) Command Post Exercise (CPX).**

**(a) General.** The CPX is a medium-cost, medium-overhead exercise that may be conducted from garrison locations or between participating headquarters, and in which the forces are simulated. At a minimum, it requires the establishment of unit command posts (CPs) with their necessary communications equipment, demanding a greater commitment of personnel, time, and resources. However, normal battlefield distances between CPs may be reduced. The CPX trains commanders and staff to prepare and transmit estimates, plans, and orders, as well as the establishment and use of communications equipment. CPX trains commanders and staff to—

- Execute the MDMP.
- Refine SOPs.
- Build teamwork and cohesion.
- Exchange information correctly using tactical SOPs.
- Prepare estimates, plans, and orders.
- Establish and use tactical communications.
- Displace headquarters and command posts (CPs).

- Integrate synchronized BOSs.

**1** Battalions often conduct either a staff exercise (STAFFEX) or a tactical operations center exercise (TOCEX), or they may conduct both before conducting a CPX. In a STAFFEX, principal and special staff's practice organizing for war (such as establishing CPs and conducting staff calls) and conduct training of wartime missions. In a TOCEX, the command group and staff practice setting up their command posts.

**2** Battalions normally take part in a CPX as part of a larger force, but they may conduct internal CPXs. Simulation systems (as discussed below) assist in conducting realistic CPXs.

**(b) Planning phase.** The CPX requires most of the senior leadership and staff elements to conduct extensive battlefield planning, preparation, and command and control while using their tactical communications equipment and tactical command posts (TAC CP). In addition to the following considerations, see the sections on MAPEXs and TEWTs above for more planning considerations.

**1** Normal battlefield distances between CPs may be reduced.

**2** CPXs should be conducted under battlefield conditions to validate staff and unit procedures. Tactical exercises integrate nuclear and chemical weapons employment; NBC warning and reporting; reconnaissance; mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP), logistical, and decontamination operations; and perimeter defense.

**3** Electronic warfare (EW) should be portrayed to show its importance to all elements and to illustrate how it hinders commanders and staff who are not prepared.

**4** CPXs require controllers and evaluators. The controllers, directed by the chief controller, manage the exercise and cause play to flow to a logical conclusion. The evaluators observe player activities to determine if tasks are performed to established standards at each echelon.

**5** Battalion produces a letter of instruction (LOI) that provides the basis for sub-unit planning as well as for briefing controllers and evaluators.

**(c) Preparation phase.** Controllers and players require training in certain basic subjects before starting the exercise. Subjects that planners should consider include:

- Purpose and scope of the exercise.
- Training objectives.
- Controller duties.
- Casualty and damage assessment.
- Controller records and reports.
- Intelligence play.
- Wargame procedures.
- After action reviews.
- Rules of engagement (ROE).

**(d) Execution phase.** This phase begins with the chief controller and staff giving the player commander and staff a commander's update briefing. The briefing covers any changes to the LOI or other items that must be addressed.

**1** Immediately following the commander's update briefing, the chief controller assumes the role of the players' higher commander and is briefed by controllers representing the higher staff.

**2** The chief controller converts the operation plan (OPLAN) to an OPORD and announces the staff is available for coordination with player counterparts. This marks the start of exercise (STARTEX).

**(4) Field Training Exercises (FTX).** The FTX is a high-cost, high-overhead exercise conducted under simulated combat conditions in the field. It exercises command and control of all echelons in battle functions against actual or simulated opposing forces. It provides a method for training

a battalion in its entire mission, and a means to perform the tasks practiced in a situational training exercise (STX). An FTX should be oriented toward the unit's mission essential task list (METL). The FTX outlined in this chapter is developed only to the extent necessary to link it to the example supporting STXs. The commander can combine a number of STXs to create an FTX that meets his unit's specific training needs.

**(5) Progressive exercises.** For battalion-level units, a method to optimize staff and unit training is to integrate TEWTs, MAPEXs, and CPXs, to prepare the orders and plans for upcoming battalion FTXs. This technique exercises the entire spectrum of the staff effectively and also makes optimum use of unit field training time. The bottom line is that each unit is different and only the commander can determine the best method of training his staff.

**(6) Staff Training Using Simulations.** Constructive and virtual simulation systems are making staff and unit training easier as these TADSS become accessible to units. The following simulations may contribute to training the battalion staff and subordinate companies:

**(a) Brigade and Battalion Simulation (BBS).** This microcomputer-based simulation system trains officers and NCO leaders at battalion and brigade levels in all facets of combat, CS, and CSS operations in a CPX or STAFFEX mode. BBS is a training tool that exercises the full spectrum of battle command and staff execution orders. The virtual combat environment remains transparent to the training audiences, who conduct operations from their normal TOC/TAC configurations. Work cells within the simulation center replicate platoons and companies/troops fighting on the battlefield and provide realistic battle events derived from the BBS through SOP-based reports to their higher headquarters. BBS aids in building effective teams by causing participants to coordinate tasks, refine and standardize processes, and exchange information. BBS can be exercised from within a local simulation center, or deployed to remote locations. Exercises may run from 2 to 36 hours, depending on training objectives. AARs may be formal or informal and generally last 2 hours.

**(b) Janus Army (A).** This microcomputer-based, two-sided, interactive combat simulation model employs a dynamic graphical representation to simulate force-on-force engagements. Janus A focuses on individual fighting system engagements and assessments, with aggregation capability up to company-size elements. Command and control of the individual systems can be exercised; however, simulation of CS and CSS is limited. Janus trains NCOs and officer leaders at the platoon and company level in an educational setting. Simulation supports training of tactical leadership skills and is excellent for evaluating OPORDs and battle synchronization. Leaders can experiment and receive immediate individual feedback. It is relatively easy to set up an exercise, but setup requires approximately 8 hours. A typical exercise takes approximately 4 hours, followed by an AAR lasting about an hour and a half.

**3-6. Developing Training Exercises.** Chapter 4 provides sample exercises for the unit to use or modify to meet specific training needs. Units may also use TSPs in developing their training exercises. TSPs are task-based and provide structured situational training scenarios for live, virtual, or constructive training. TSPs include all needed training products and subsequently simplify the commander's tasks of planning, executing, and assessing training. This section provides general procedures for the staff to use for FTX preparation and for the unit supporting STXs. Exercise plans normally are prepared as part of the short-range plan. The following topics should help in preparing your unit exercise:

- a. Selection of Missions and Tasks for Training.** This was accomplished during the development of the long-range plan and refined during the development of the short-range plan.
- b. Training Site Selection.** Confirm selection of a training maneuver area.
- c. Scenario Development.** After missions and tasks are selected, prepare a detailed scenario for the exercise as follows:

- (1)** List the missions, tasks, and events in the preferred sequence of occurrence.

(2) Identify events necessary for the control of the exercise. These activities normally would include the issuance of orders, AARs, and any other administrative or logistical actions necessary to conduct the exercise.

(3) Prepare the exercise overlays that show the sequence of actions and the terrain to be used for each event.

(4) Determine the estimated time for each event using the overlay and scenario. The total time is determined to ensure the scenario can be completed in the time allocated for the exercise.

**d. Selection of Observer/Controllers (O/Cs) and OPFOR.** O/Cs and OPFOR normally are desired for every FTX and STX. For a battalion-size unit to provide these from its own resources is difficult. When O/Cs and OPFOR must be provided from within the battalion, unit leaders may have to serve as the O/Cs for their units. The OPFOR may be selected from personnel or units not essential for attainment of the exercise objectives. Ideally, higher headquarters or sister units should provide O/Cs and OPFOR.

**e. Preparation of the Control Plan.** Control plans are developed to coordinate the actions of the training units, OPFOR, and O/Cs. The scenario is used and a detailed control plan is prepared. The control plan includes:

- (1) Detailed schedules of OPFOR actions.
- (2) Detailed instructions for the OPFOR, to include ROE.
- (3) Detailed schedule of activities for units.
- (4) OPORDs and FRAGOs for friendly units. Normally, friendly unit actions are controlled through the issuance of OPORDs and FRAGOs.
- (5) Administrative preparation instructions.
- (6) AAR schedule and instructions.

**f. Preparation of the Evaluation Plan.** Someone evaluates all training either internally or externally. The evaluation plan identifies the tasks to be evaluated, by whom, and at what time. The evaluation plan includes:

- (1) Specific instructions for the O/Cs.
- (2) A sequential list of T&EOs to be evaluated by each O/C.
- (3) Detailed time schedules for evaluation of tasks and AARs.

**3-7. Mission Outline.** The mission outline is designed to provide a graphic portrayal of the relationship of the critical wartime missions to FTXs and STXs and illustrate the relationship between the missions and their collective supporting tasks. An outline provides the trainer a diagram of the unit missions and the supporting collective tasks. Since unit training is mission oriented, mission outlines show how task training contributes to the ability of the unit to perform its missions. The outline assists the commander and staff in the preparation of training. Figure 3-6 shows an example outline for one mission.

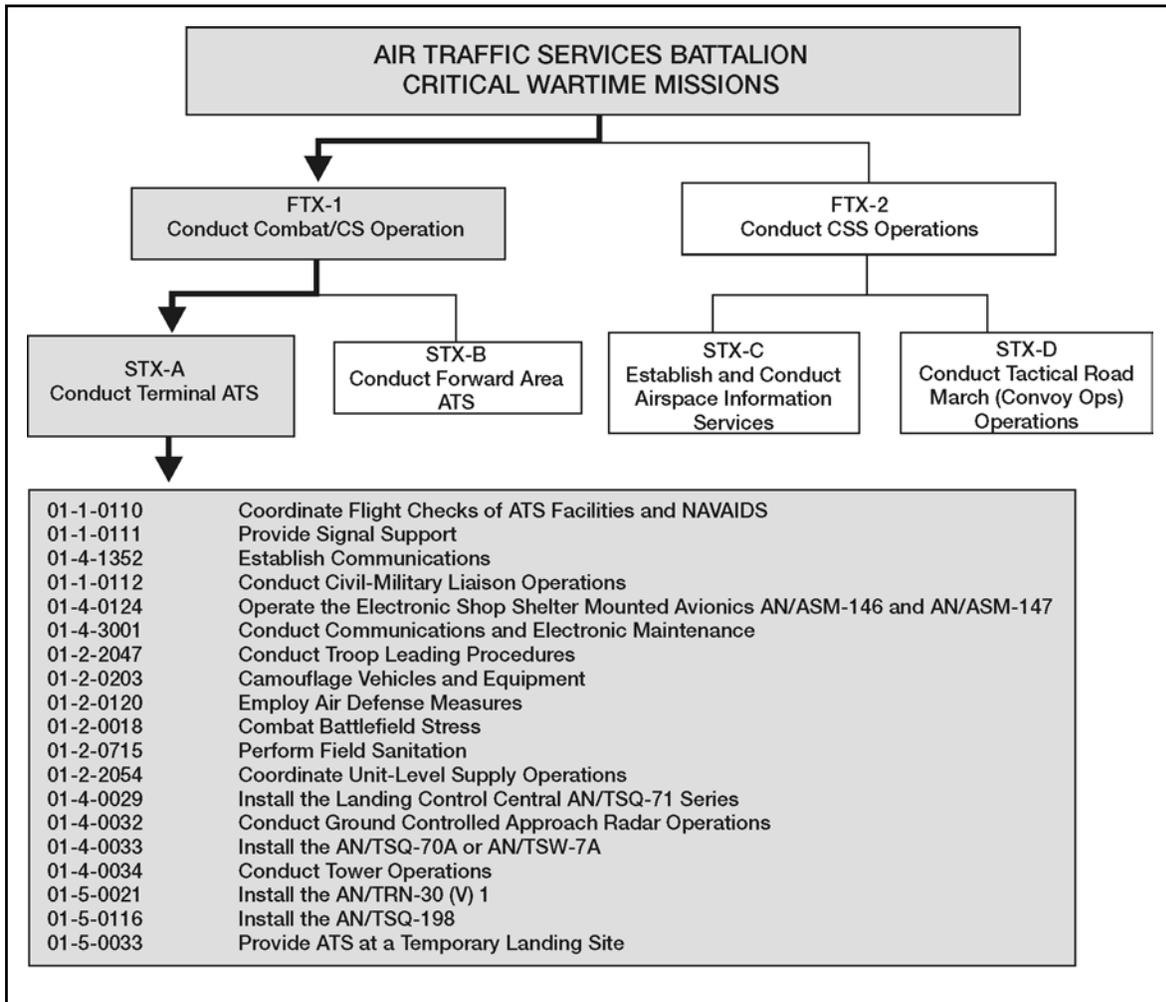


Figure 3-6. Example Mission to FTX/STX Outline.

## Chapter 4

# TRAINING EXERCISES

**4-1. General.** Collective training exercises help trainers at all levels to develop, sustain, and evaluate unit proficiency at collective tasks that constitute critical wartime tasks and special mission requirements. Their ultimate purpose is to prepare units to execute combat, combat support (CS), or combat service support (CSS) missions. A range of training exercise types are available to a commander for use in conducting collective training. They vary from simple to complex, from inexpensive to resource-intensive, and from simulations to hands-on. Examples of two of these, FTXs and STXs, are developed later in this chapter.

---

**NOTE:** The ATS company normally operates separately from its parent battalion to support a habitually associated or task-organized higher headquarters (division through echelon above division (EAC)). Because of this type of relationship, training exercises (FTXs and STXs) should normally focus at the company and platoon level. However, training focus should not be exclusive of the parent battalion. Battalion exercises are still viable because most tasks performed by the battalion are identical/similar to the tasks performed by the ATS companies' supported higher headquarters (i.e. command and control (C<sup>2</sup>) operations, staff planning process), and, therefore, supports and advocates the companies' training.

---

**Table 4-1. Training Exercises.**

Exercise Number	Title	Page
FTX	Conduct Combat/Combat Support Operations	4-4
STX-A	Conduct Terminal ATS	4-11
STX-B	Conduct Forward Area ATS	4-16

**4-2. Field Training Exercise (FTX).** The FTX is a high-cost, high-overhead exercise conducted under simulated combat conditions in the field. It exercises C<sup>2</sup> of all echelons in battle functions against actual or simulated opposing forces. It provides a method for training a battalion in its entire mission and a means to perform the tasks practiced in an STX. An FTX should be oriented toward the unit's mission essential task list (METL). The FTX outlined in this chapter is developed only to the extent necessary to link it to the example supporting STXs. The commander can combine a number of STXs to create an FTX that meets his unit's specific training needs.

**4-3. Situational Training Exercise (STX).** The STX is a mission-related, limited exercise designed to train one collective task, or a group of related tasks or drills, through practice. Distinct start and stop points, representing a segment of battle., characterize the STX The Sixes in this chapter are mission-oriented exercises covering a group of closely related tasks that collectively compose a tactical operation. The STXs can be used to train a separate unit or as part of the parent unit's training. These STXs support the referenced FTX, and should involve the unit's full complement of external combat, CS, and CSS assets.

**4-4. Other Training Exercises.** Listed below are brief descriptions of other recognized exercises. Chapter 3 discusses (in greater detail) exercises that are conducive to staff training.

- a. **BSX (Battle Simulation Exercise).** The BSX is a military wargame that recreates combat situations on a map or terrain model. Pieces or markers represent units, and specific rules govern movement, fire, losses, and other aspects of actual combat. The BSX is best suited for leader training, especially in terms of fire and maneuver.
- b. **CALFEX (Combined Arms Live Fire Exercise).** The CALFEX is a high-cost, resource-intensive exercise in which player units' maneuver, employing organic and supporting weapons systems with full-service ammunition. This exercise integrates all combat, CS, and CSS functions.
- c. **CAX (Computer-Assisted Exercise).** The CAX is a command post (CP) exercise in which a computer driver provides force simulation.
- d. **CFX (Command Field Exercise).** The CFX is a field training exercise with reduced company and vehicle density, but with full C<sup>2</sup>, CS, and CSS elements; for example, an ATC section leader representing the entire section. The CFX lies between the CPX and FTX in terms of resources. It may serve as a backup for an FTX if maneuver damage, weather, or other factors prohibit FTX execution. The CFX is less expensive and exercises intersystem linkages and actual distances.
- e. **COMEX (Communications Exercise).** The COMEX is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise whose primary purpose is to ensure the operational abilities of communications systems as well as the training status of operators, staffs, and leaders. The COMEX should include proper use of the SOI; the establishment of, entry into, and exit from the radio net, and communications discipline, at a minimum.
- f. **CPX (Command Post Exercise).** The CPX is a medium-cost, medium-overhead exercise that may be conducted from garrison locations or between participating headquarters, and in which the forces are simulated. At a minimum, it requires the establishment of unit CPs with their necessary communications equipment, demanding a greater commitment of personnel, time, and resources. However, normal battlefield distances between CPs may be reduced. The CPX trains commanders and staff to prepare and transmit estimates, plans, and orders, as well as the establishment and use of communications equipment.
- g. **CTX (Combined Training Exercise).** The CTX is a training exercise jointly conducted by military forces of more than one nation. Also referred to as "multinational training."
- h. **DEPEX (Deployment Exercise).** The DEPEX is an exercise that provides training for soldiers, units, and support agencies in the tasks and procedures used to deploy from home stations or installations to areas of potential employment. The DEPEX is especially valuable for the ATS commander because of the unique transportation requirements (rail, internal air load, external sling-load, ship or barge, surface convoy) of ATS tactical equipment.
- i. **DMX (Decisionmaking Exercise).** The DMX is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise that assesses how a unit's key leadership reviews and performs case study analysis of wargaming decisions previously made. A DMX usually incorporates a MAPEX.
- j. **DTX (Digital Training Exercise).** The DTX is an exercise conducted on a simulated battlefield, and used to train battalion/squadron and brigade staffs, and subordinate elements. It can involve a constructive simulation-based MAPEX linked to collective virtual simulators and/or legacy simulators, both ground and air, from remote locations.
- k. **EDRE (Emergency Deployment Readiness Exercise).** A minimum-notice exercise to test unit deployment capabilities for contingency operations.
- l. **FCX (Fire Coordination Exercise).** The FCX is a medium-cost, reduced-scale exercise that can be conducted at the platoon, company team, or battalion task force level. It exercises C<sup>2</sup> skills through the integration and synchronization of organic weapon systems, indirect fires, supporting fires, and maneuver. Targets, ranges, and weapon densities may be reduced for participating units, and subcaliber devices substituted for service ammunition.

**m. JTX (Joint Training Exercise).** An exercise that involves forces of more than one Service.

**n. LCX (Logistical Coordination Exercise).** The LCX is a medium-cost, medium-overhead exercise in which leaders train to conduct unit sustainment operations such as supply, transportation, medical, personnel replacement, maintenance, and graves registration. The LCX clarifies the key elements of the unit's logistics apparatus, as well as their relationships, and incorporates a tactical war game that produces a wide variety of logistical requirements, while exercising the flow of logistical information.

**o. LFX (Live Fire Exercise).** The LFX is a resource-intensive exercise wherein player units maneuver and employ organic and supporting weapons systems using full service ammunition. Extensive range and resource requirements limit unit sizes to platoon and company team level, resulting in a focus on small units and their integration of weapon systems.

**p. LOGEX (Logistics Exercise).** The LOGEX is a training exercise that concentrates on tasks associated with the CSS BOS.

**q. LTX (Lane Training Exercise).** The LTX is a technique for training company (troop)/team-level and smaller units on a series of selected soldier, leader, and collective tasks (STX) using specific terrain.

**r. MAPEX (Map Exercise).** The MAPEX is a low-cost, low-overhead training exercise that requires a minimum number of support personnel and portrays military situations on maps and overlays. It may be supplemented with training aids such as terrain models and sand tables. A MAPEX enables a commander to train the staff and leaders in planning, coordinating, and executing operations under simulated wartime conditions.

**s. MOBEX (Mobilization Exercise).** The MOBEX is a major scale exercise conducted by U.S. Army Forces Command (FORSCOM). The exercise is usually as part of an Armywide involvement in a Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff (CJCS) or Headquarters, Department of the Army (HQDA) exercise. It involves actions necessary to deploy Active and Reserve components on short notice up to the point of actually moving to the proposed deployment location. The MOBEX is used to test plans, procedures, and systems for mobilization, deployment, sustainment, redeployment, and demobilization. All or part of this exercise can be executed, depending on the commander's assessment.

**t. PFPX (Partnership for Peace Exercise).** The PFPX is a North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) exercise conducted as one of a series of training events to enhance the coordination of military forces for peacekeeping, humanitarian assistance, and search and rescue operations. Based on nonlethal scenarios, the PFPX program seeks to expand and intensify military and political cooperation throughout Europe.

**u. STAFFEX (Staff Exercise).** The STAFFEX is a training exercise in which the principal and special staffs organize for war (CPs and cells) and train MTP wartime missions.

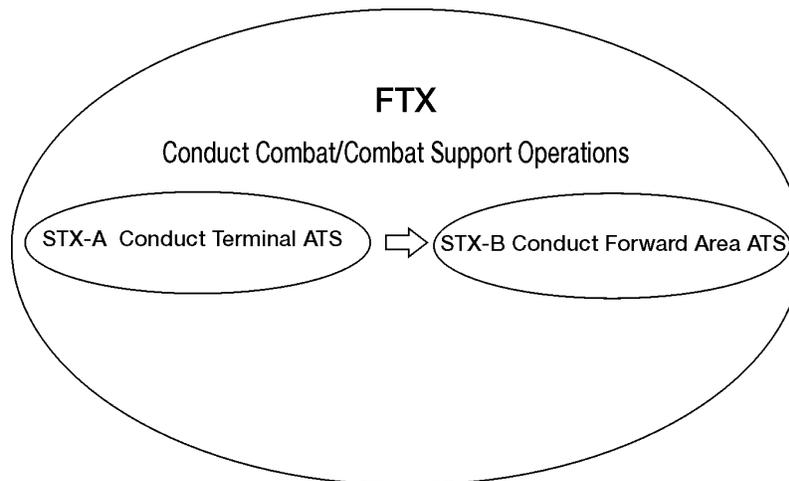
**v. SEDRE (Sealift Emergency Deployment Readiness Exercise).** The SEDRE is a minimum-notice exercise to test surface deployment capabilities of the unit, installation, and transportation-operating agency for contingency operations.

**w. TEWT (Tactical Exercise Without Troops).** The TEWT is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. It is used to train subordinate leaders and battle staffs on terrain analysis and unit and weapons emplacement. The TEWT also provides training on planning the execution of a unit mission, which may include the employment of CS and CSS assets.

## FTX: CONDUCT COMBAT/COMBAT SUPPORT OPERATIONS

**1. Objective.** This sample FTX provides training for the air traffic services battalion conducting continuous tactical operations while deployed to a field site. It is designed to train the unit to move from one location to another and conduct combat and combat support operations. During the exercise, the unit will react to threat situations, reorganize, conduct sustainment operations and continue their mission. Within the FTX, the unit should incorporate STXs to train unit deficiencies or to take advantage of training resources not usually available. The battalion may train as a unit, as separate companies, or as a combination of both. All exercises may be conducted with battalion staff support. The success of the exercise will depend on the unit's ability to secure and defend an assembly area, and to sustain operations in a tactical environment.

**2. Interface.** STX A—Conduct Terminal ATS, and STX B—Conduct Forward Area ATS, support this FTX. These STXs may be battalion- or company- or lower level exercises depending on the level of involvement during the exercise. Figure 4-1 depicts the general relationship between this FTX and the supporting STXs.



**Figure 4-1. FTX: Conduct Combat/Combat Support Operations.**

**3. Training Enhancers.** Chapter 2 shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform this critical wartime mission. Training events that will enhance the unit's ability to perform the missions are:

- a. Staff training. See chapter 3, paragraph 3-5, Training the Headquarters at the Battalion Level and Coordinating Staff Level.
- b. Map and sand table exercises (key leaders—officers and NCOs).
- c. Communication exercise.
- d. Classes on threat force capabilities, tactics, and doctrine and how to counter them (all soldiers to a varying degree).
- e. Adventure training to increase morale and confidence, such as escape and evasion exercises, land navigation, and orienteering.
- f. Reverse-cycle training.

- g. Review of T&EOs (all key leaders).
- h. Review of FTX training objectives (all key leaders).
- i. Review of STX training objectives (all key leaders).
- j. Review of field tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) (all key leaders).
- k. Exercises with artillery simulation, fire support, and close air support.
- l. After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this FTX and the leaders are trained in the leader tasks, this FTX may be conducted under several condition options:
  - (1) With Opposing Forces (OPFOR) (Level I threat)
  - (2) Night tactical movement and assembly area establishment.
  - (3) Within an NBC environment.
  - (4) Adverse weather.
  - (5) Civil-Military/Host Nation–International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO).
- m. The exercise should be tailored to the appropriate level of unit proficiency. As the unit becomes increasingly proficient, trainers may add more complex situations such as:
  - (1) Ground attack (Level I, II, and III threat).
  - (2) Ambush.
  - (3) Decontamination operations.
  - (4) Electronic attack.
  - (5) Cross-flot (tactical).
- n. During training, leaders must enforce the task standards in the T&EOs. As training progresses and more realistic conditions are added, the unit must be able to maintain those standards or retrain on the particular task steps and procedures or entire tasks that were performed below standard.

---

**NOTE:** The critical training gates depicted in the CATS strategy discussed in appendix A should be conducted before executing the FTX.

---

#### 4. Conduct of the FTX.

- a. This exercise must be tailored to the specific requirements of the battalion with defined training goals. It should be based on mission priorities, table(s) of organization and equipment (TO&E) structure, and tactical proficiency. This sample FTX may begin with an alert or recall exercise or the receipt of an operation order (OPORD). The FTX ends after all stated training objectives are satisfactorily demonstrated.
- b. An after action review (AAR) should be conducted after major events during the FTX, after completing each STX, and following the end of the FTX. If an STX is a battalion exercise, a company AAR should be conducted before the one at battalion. If necessary, portions of the exercise should be repeated until the unit's performance is satisfactory.
- c. Figure 4-2 graphically portrays the general scenario of tasks performed in this FTX.
- d. Table 4–2 shows a suggested time allocation for the FTX. Many training tasks listed may be a part of an STX. It has approximate times required to perform tasks. Many factors, such as the location of and distance to training areas, may cause actual times to vary. The table also provides a sample of the thought process trainers must use when planning an FTX. It is imperative that leaders and trainers identify all relevant training objectives and that they collectively establish an FTX schedule that accomplishes all training goals. The schedule should include flexible events and timetables to allow for weather variables. It may also provide time for a second iteration of a particular task to ensure proper training.

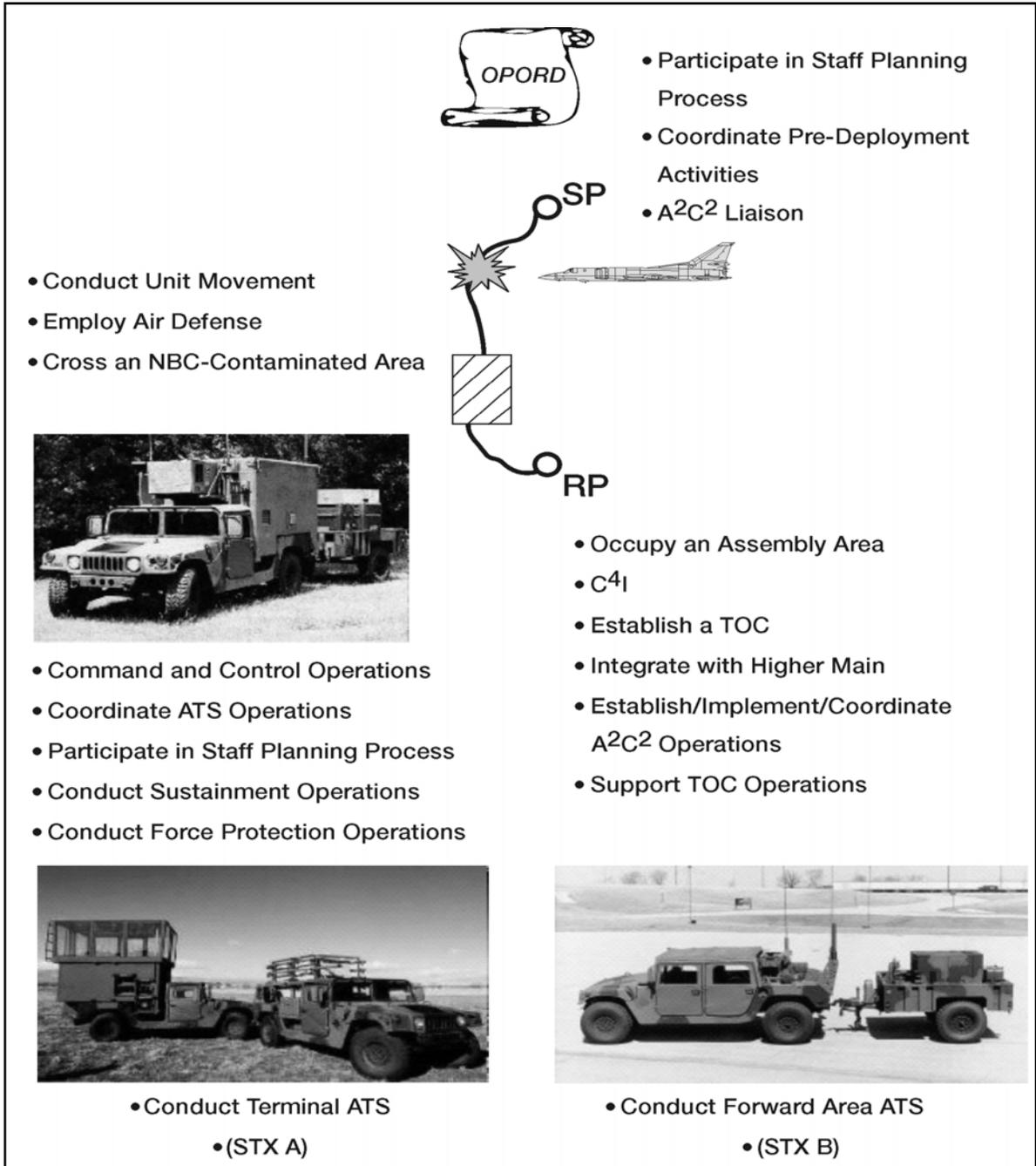


Figure 4-2. General Scenario Illustration of the FTX.

<b>Table 4-2. Time Allocation for FTX.</b>		
<b>FTX—CONDUCT COMBAT/COMBAT SUPPORT OPERATIONS</b>		
<b>Number</b>	<b>Task or Event</b>	<b>Time Required</b>
1	Administrative preparations.	Pre-FTX
2	Battalion receives OPORD.	1 hour
3	Battalion initiates personnel recall.	2 hours
*4	Battalion prepares for tactical movement.	4 hours
5	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and prepares OPORD.	(2 to) 4 hours (Depending on the complexity of the mission)
*6	Coordinate required assistance during movement.	6 hours
7	Battalion issues OPORD to subordinate elements.	1 hour
*8	Monitor movement of subordinate elements.	6 hours
*9	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours
10	Main body conducts tactical move.	1.5 hours (Total en route time without training events, based on distance traveled)
*11	Advance party secures assembly area (AA) and establishes hasty defense.	1 hour
12	Main body crosses a contaminated area (decontamination is not performed; crossing is to train or evaluate crossing procedures only).	0.5 hour (AAR if required)
13	Main body continues tactical move to AA.	N/A
14	Main body reacts to hostile aircraft.	0.5 hour (AAR if required)
15	Main body continues tactical move to AA.	N/A
16	Main body closes on and occupies AA.	1 hour (Unit SOP will vary on when AA occupation is complete)
*17	Battalion establishes perimeter defense.	1 hour
18	Battalion headquarters establishes tactical operations center (TOC).	1 hour
*19	Companies establish command posts.	1 hour
*20	Battalion establishes communications with higher HQ (may be simulated).	0.5 hour
*21	Battalion establishes internal communications.	0.5 hour
22	Conduct AAR: Company and battalion.	1.5
23	Battalion conducts tactical sustainment.	72.0 hours

<b>Table 4-2. Time Allocation for FTX.</b>		
<b>FTX—CONDUCT COMBAT/COMBAT SUPPORT OPERATIONS</b>		
<b>Number</b>	<b>Task or Event</b>	<b>Time Required</b>
*24	Battalion executes STX-A: Establish and operate a tactical terminal airfield.	13 hours
*25	Battalion executes STX-B: Establish and conduct forward area ATS.	9 hours
26	Battalion receives FRAGO to redeploy to home station.	1 hour
*27	Battalion prepares for redeployment.	3 hours
28	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and issues a FRAGO to the companies.	2 (to 4) hours (Depending on the complexity of the mission)
29	Redeployment OPORD issued by battalion.	1 hour
*30	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours
31	Main body conducts tactical move.	1.5 hours
32	Main body closes on and occupies AA home station.	3.0 hours. (May be extended for equipment servicing and storage)
33	Conduct final AAR: Company and battalion.	1.5 hours
		Total time 95.3 hours
<p>*Indicates time not added to total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.</p> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <p>Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.</p> <p>Additional time is required if the movement mode is other than by organic ground vehicles.</p> <p>Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the staff.</p> <p>AARs are not time-constrained.</p>		

**5. T&EO Sequence.** Table 4-3 lists the T&EOs in chapter 5 to be used for this FTX.

<b>Table 4-3. T&amp;EOs Supporting the FTX.</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
01-1-1001	Command and Control (C <sup>2</sup> ) Battalion/Squadron Operations
01-1-1002	Direct the Staff
01-1-1120	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (CSM)
01-1-0062	Coordinate Pre-Deployment Activities

<b>Table 4-3. T&amp;EOs Supporting the FTX.</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
01-1-1101	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S1)
01-1-1102	Perform Strength Management
01-1-1103	Conduct Replacement Operations
01-1-1104	Conduct Casualty Reporting
01-1-1105	Provide Other Personnel and Administrative Services
01-1-0034	Coordinate Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Defense
01-1-1016	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
01-1-1017	Plan Stability and Support Operations (SASO)
01-1-1024	Coordinate the Safety Program
01-1-1060	Process Captured Documents and Materiel
01-1-1201	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S2)
01-1-1202	Establish Security Measures
01-1-1203	Process Information into Intelligence
01-1-1301	Participate In the Staff Planning Process (S3)
01-1-1302	Establish a Tactical Operations Center (TOC)
01-1-1303	Control Tactical Operations
01-1-1306	Establish a Tactical Command Post (TAC CP)
01-1-1311	Perform Liaison Operations
01-1-0110	Coordinate Flight Checks of ATS Facilities And NAVAIDS
01-1-1023	Establish an Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC)
01-1-1401	Participate In the Staff Planning Process (S4)
01-1-1402	Coordinate the Requisition, Acquisition, and Distribution of Supplies and Equipment
01-1-1403	Inform the Commander of Equipment Readiness Status
01-1-1405	Coordinate External Transportation Assets for Movement of Personnel, Supplies, and Equipment
01-1-1406	Provide Other Logistical Services
01-1-0052	Participate In the Staff Planning Process (S6)
01-1-0111	Provide Signal Support
01-4-1352	Establish Communications
01-5-1110	Implement the Command Religious Support Program
01-1-0050	Perform A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> Duties in Support of Division or Higher Level of Command
01-1-0112	Conduct Tactical Airspace Integration System–Army Airspace Command and Control (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )
01-1-0113	Conduct Civil-Military Liaison Operations
01-4-0320	Provide Unit Supply Support
01-4-1029	Perform Vehicle Recovery Operations
01-4-7723	Perform Unit-Level Maintenance

<b>Table 4-3. T&amp;EOs Supporting the FTX.</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
01-4-0124	Operate the Electronic Shop Shelter-Mounted Avionics AN/ASM-146 and AN/ASM-147
01-4-3001	Conduct Communications and Electronic Maintenance
01-2-2047	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
01-2-2035	Implement Fratricide Prevention Measures
01-2-0102	Defend Unit Position
01-2-0203	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
01-2-0120	Employ Air Defense Measures
01-2-0101	Occupy An Assembly Area
01-2-0001	Plan Unit Move
01-2-0702	Prepare Unit for Deployment
01-2-2048	Conduct Unit Movement
01-2-7039	Conduct Hasty Assembly Area Displacement
01-2-0104	Perform Consolidation and Reorganization
01-2-2064	Perform Company/Troop Strength Management
01-2-7707	Evacuate Casualties
01-2-0018	Combat Battlefield Stress
01-2-0715	Perform Field Sanitation
01-2-2054	Coordinate Unit-Level Supply Operations
01-2-0121	Respond to a Nuclear/Biological/Chemical (NBC) Attack
01-2-0201	Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions
01-2-0115	Cross a Nuclear/Biological/Chemical (NBC) Contaminated Area
01-2-0122	Perform Nuclear/Biological/Chemical (NBC) Decontamination
01-2-7102	Support Tactical Operations Center (TOC) Operations
01-4-0029	Install the Landing Control Central AN/TSQ-71 Series
01-4-0032	Conduct Ground-Controlled Approach Radar Operations
01-4-0033	Install the AN/TSQ-70A or AN/TSW-7A
01-4-0034	Conduct Tower Operations
01-5-0021	Install the AN/TRN-30(V)1
01-5-0116	Install the AN/TSQ-198
01-5-1353	Provide Pathfinder Support
01-5-0033	Provide ATS at a Temporary Landing Site
01-5-0123	Conduct Landing Zone/Pickup Zone (LZ/PZ) Operations
01-4-0117	Install the Tactical Airspace Integration System (TAIS) AN/TSQ-221
01-4-0025	Install the AN/TSC-61B
01-4-0022	Install the AN/TRN-30(V)2

Table 4-3. T&EOs Supporting the FTX.	
Task Number	Task Title
01-4-0118	Conduct Tactical Airspace Integration System–Airspace Information Center (TAIS-AIC) Operations
01-4-0119	Conduct Airspace Information Center (AIC) Operations

### STX-A: CONDUCT TERMINAL ATS

1. **Objective.** This sample STX trains the organization to establish and operate a tactical terminal airfield. During the exercise, the unit will react to threat situations, reorganize, and continue the mission. This STX will help the unit develop, test, and improve SOPs; prevent wasted time and effort; and maintain operational efficiency. It can be used at battalion or at company level.
2. **Interface.** This STX supports the FTX Conduct Combat/Combat Support Operations. It is not supported by drills.
3. **Preliminary Leader Training.** Before the unit conducts this STX, unit leaders must be proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes the following:
  - a. Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise, how to implement the unit SOP, and how to coordinate supporting fires.
  - b. MAPEX using the exact area where the STX is to be conducted.
  - c. Terrain boards or sand table exercises that permit the use of simulations or miniatures to gain a three-dimensional perspective while rehearsing the exercise.
  - d. TEWT in which emphasis is given to threat capabilities, active and passive defensive techniques, movement techniques, visual signals, reorganization following enemy contact, risk management, and safety.
4. **Leader Training Tips.**
  - a. Know the requirements of a terminal ATS as discussed in FM 1-120.
  - b. Review the T&EO requirements for conducting terminal ATS.
  - c. Become familiar with the other T&EOs listed in table 4-5 that support this exercise.
  - d. If possible, personally conduct a reconnaissance of the training area before the MAPEX or TEWT.
  - e. Develop a plan based on METT–TC. Consider such questions as:
    - (1) What information is available to the battalion/company/platoon that will conduct the terminal ATS exercise?
    - (2) What is the likelihood of a ground, air, or nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attack?
    - (3) What effect will adverse weather have on the mission?
    - (4) What is the condition of unit personnel and equipment?
    - (5) How many personnel are required?
    - (6) How many personnel are available?
    - (7) How are they to be organized?
    - (8) What mission support equipment configurations are required?
    - (9) What is required of the supported/supporting unit(s)?
    - (10) What intelligence is available for mission planning?
    - (11) What supporting fires are required?

- (12) How much time is needed to prepare?
- (13) How long will it take to complete the operation?
- (14) How much planning time is available?
- (15) Were there previous ATC activities; i.e., a closed airfield, at the chosen site?
- (16) Are there specific host nation ATS and non-ATS coordination requirements?
- (17) Will the tactical terminal airfield be required to possess IFR certification?

#### **5. Training Enhancers.**

a. After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this STX and the leaders are trained in the leader tasks, this STX may be conducted under several condition options:

- (1) With Opposing Forces (OPFOR).
- (2) At night, using night vision devices.
- (3) Within an NBC environment.

b. The exercise should be tailored to the appropriate level of unit proficiency. As the unit becomes increasingly proficient, trainers may add more complex situations:

- (1) Jump sites/multiple missions.
- (2) Threat air defense artillery (ADA).
- (3) Escape and evasion.
- (4) Simulated loss of a leader (pre- or mid-mission).
- (5) Incidents of meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion (MIJI).
- (6) Change/modification of mission.
- (7) Equipment malfunctions.
- (8) Emergency conditions/crash rescue plan.

c. During training, leaders must enforce the task standards in the T&EOs. As training progresses and more realistic conditions are added, the unit must be able to maintain those standards or retrain on the particular task steps and procedures or entire tasks that were performed below standard.

d. The OPFOR is a vital element in the training process. In the early stages of training, the leadership should discuss OPFOR tactics and ways to defeat them. As training progresses, walk-through training can be conducted to show the unit how to defeat the threat. When the unit can perform all tasks at an acceptable level, the OPFOR should be employed to enhance and reinforce training. An OPFOR evaluator or observer must monitor OPFOR actions.

e. During the exercise, leaders should take advantage of any information regarding suspected OPFOR activity or adverse conditions. Alternate courses of actions (COAs), should be planned, and briefed.

f. When the unit has demonstrated proficiency in this STX as a stand-alone event, the unit sustains proficiency by executing the STX as part of the FTX. Personnel turnover will require leaders to assess the need for additional training to maintain proficiency.

#### **6. STX-A—General Situation.**

a. The company is in an assembly area. It is ordered to establish and operate a tactical terminal airfield.

b. The unit will conduct the exercise under various environmental conditions, day or night.

c. The STX is over when the unit has demonstrated collective proficiency at executing terminal ATS operations.

d. Table 4-4 shows the estimated time needed for each part of this exercise as a training event during this STX.

Table 4-4. Suggested Time Allocation for STX-A.		
STX-A: CONDUCT TERMINAL ATS		
Event	Action	Time Required
1	Company receives FRAGO to conduct terminal ATS mission.	1 hour
2	Company conducts troop-leading procedures.	2 (to 4) hours (Depending on the complexity of the mission)
3	Company/platoons execute movement to objective.	1 hour (Depending on the complexity of the mission)
4	Platoon establishes terminal airfield	7 hours
5	Platoon conducts terminal ATS operations.	2 hours
6	Conduct AARs at company/platoon.	1.5 hours
*7	Companies conduct sustainment operations.	N/A
		Total time 14.5 hours
<p>* Indicates time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.</p> <p>** Does not include flight check verification.</p> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <p>Because of the complexity of terminal ATS operations, the mission should be included as an on order mission in the FTX OPORD to allow additional planning time.</p> <p>Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.</p> <p>Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the staff.</p> <p>AARs are not time-constrained.</p>		

**7. STX-A—Special Situation.**

- a. The commander may choose to use a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to initiate STXs in support of the FTX. The unit receives the FRAGO shown in below as an example.

CLASSIFICATION

**FRAGO 92-04****Reference: OPERATION ORDER xx-xx Maps, series xxxx, sheets xxxx****Task Organization: No change****1. SITUATION (No change)**

**2. MISSION.** The terminal platoon deploys forward at (DTG) to establish and operate a fully instrumented airfield at OBJ FLIGHT (PU 12345678) in support of the 82 Abn Div air insertion into the 12th Corps rear area.

**3. EXECUTION**

**a. Commander's Intent:** I want to deploy the terminal platoon forward with TACT 1 as the advance party as soon as possible to establish the airfield and a tactical NDB before H-8. We must be operational to assist both Army and Air Force aircraft. It is imperative that we make maximum use of terrain for electromagnetic shielding.

**b. Concept of Operations:** TACT 1 and 1/1/A/3-187 Inf will be the advance party for the terminal Plt and will conduct a tactical road march on ROUTE RED to OBJ FLIGHT. The terminal Plt conducts a tactical road march on ROUTE RED from AA RADAR to OBJ FLIGHT. The platoon will deploy forward of the company to install, operate, and maintain the tactical GCA, tower, and tactical NDB. 1/1/A/3-187 Inf will provide local security for the platoon.

**c. Tasks to Units:****(1) TACT 1.**

- (a)** First in order of march with 1/1/A/3-187 Inf on ROUTE RED.
- (b)** Advance party for the terminal Plt.
- (c)** Establish communications at OBJ FLIGHT.
- (d)** Be prepared to deploy forward within one hour after site closure.

**(2) Terminal Plt.**

- (a)** Second in order of march along ROUTE RED.
- (b)** Install the tactical NDB at OBJ FLIGHT NLT (DTG).
- (c)** Conduct tactical GCA and tower operation the NLT (DTG).

**(3) 1/A/3-187 Inf.**

- (a)** First in order of march with TACT 1 along ROUTE RED.
- (b)** Conduct a recon of ROUTE RED.
- (c)** Provide 1st Squad for security to TACT 1 for their deployment to OBJ FLIGHT.
- (d)** Conduct a recon of OBJ FLIGHT for NBC contamination and overall site security.
- (e)** Provide local security at OBJ FLIGHT.

**d. Coordinating Instructions.****(1) MOPP level:****(2) OEG:****(3) Troop safety:****(4) Terrorist threat.**

- (a)** Level I threat currently is low but is expected to increase within the next 24 to 48 hours. Level III threat is possible.
- (b)** Keep civilians out of OBJ AIRFIELD.
- (c)** Notify the commander of any suspicious activities.

**(5) Report all checkpoints along ROUTE RED.****(6) Report closure on objectives.****(7) Report status of ATS equipment when checks are completed.****(8) ADA/weapons control status: YELLOW/HOLD.****(9) Hostile aircraft criteria: Positive identification of threat aircraft attacking friendly elements that respond improperly to IFF interrogation.****4. SERVICE SUPPORT (No change)****5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL (No change)**

CLASSIFICATION

b. Leaders use troop-leading procedures to establish and operate a tactical terminal airfield. They must receive, plan, coordinate, and execute assigned mission. The commander will evaluate and critique the unit's performance, consider any information on threat conditions, and brief leaders on sustainment operations.

#### 8. Support Requirements:

a. **Minimum trainers or observer-controllers.** The commander is the primary trainer. One observer controller (O/C) is the minimum required to conduct this exercise. For internal evaluations, the commander is also the primary O/C. At least one other O/C is required if OPFOR is used.

b. **Opposing forces.** Use OPFOR in this exercise after the company has demonstrated basic proficiency and is at the "run" phase of training. If used, the OPFOR should be familiar with area reconnaissance operations, and employ thoroughly planned tactics to disrupt mission execution. Such tactics may affect assembly area occupation, aircraft availability and employment, and other aspects of the operation.

c. **Vehicles or communications.** Every attempt should be made to use only vehicles and communications equipment that are organic and on hand. When OPFOR are employed, additional vehicles and communications equipment will be required for the OPFOR and the O/C. These additional vehicles and equipment should come from outside the unit.

d. **Maneuver area.** The training area should be large enough to allow for tactical displacement of all required organic equipment.

#### e. Pyrotechnic and ammunition support requirements.

(1) Pyrotechnics and ammunition are not required to conduct this STX. If used, pyrotechnic training aids and ammunition authorizations are found in DA Pamphlet 350-38, Standards in Weapons Training. This pamphlet is the proponent publication for their authorization and is subject to change. It is available through the Internet from the Army Electronic Library Online, at <http://books.army.mil/cgi-bin/bookmgr/BOOKS>. Training managers should verify the currency of their information when preparing yearly forecasts and when ordering these TADSS for a particular exercise.

(2) Unit trainers must divide these resources among their subordinate units as the training situation dictates. The ammunitions listed in DA PAM 350-38 in the total. Commanders may desire to use more or less ammunition for a particular exercise. However, units cannot exceed their annual allocation.

(3) Pyrotechnic requirements for combat training centers are resourced separately and are not part of the unit's annual allocation.

(4) When this STX is conducted using ammunition and Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement system (MILES) devices, an additional company O/C is required.

9. **T&EO Sequence.** Table 4-5 lists the T&EOs in chapter 5 to be used for this STX.

---

**NOTE:** If a company were conducting this STX independently, battalion staff tasks would not necessarily be required.

---

**Table 4-5. T&EOs Supporting STX-A.**

Task Number	Task Title
01-4-0124	Operate the Electronic Shop Shelter-Mounted Avionics AN/ASM-146 and AN/ASM-147
01-4-3001	Conduct Communications and Electronic Maintenance
01-2-2047	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
01-2-0203	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
01-2-0120	Employ Air Defense Measures
01-2-0101	Occupy An Assembly Area
01-2-0001	Prepare for Unit Move
01-2-2048	Conduct Unit Movement
01-2-0715	Perform Field Sanitation
01-4-0029	Install the Landing Control Central AN/TSQ-71 Series
01-4-0032	Conduct Ground Controlled Approach Radar Operations
01-4-0033	Install the AN/TSQ-70A Or AN/TSW-7A
01-4-0034	Conduct Tower Operations
01-5-0021	Install the AN/TRN-30(V)1
01-5-0116	Install the AN/TSQ-198
01-5-0033	Provide ATS at a Temporary Landing Site

### STX-B: CONDUCT FORWARD AREA ATS

1. **Objective.** This sample STX trains the organization to conduct forward area ATS. During the exercise, the unit will react to threat situations, reorganize, and continue the mission. This STX will help the unit develop, test, and improve SOPs; prevent wasted time and effort; and maintain operational efficiency. It can be used at company or at platoon level.
2. **Interface.** This STX supports the FTX "Conduct Combat/Combat Support Operations." Drills do not supported this STX.
3. **Preliminary Leader Training.** Before the unit conducts this STX, unit leaders must be proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes the following:
  - a. Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise, how to implement the unit SOP, and how to coordinate supporting fires.
  - b. MAPEX using the exact area where the STX is to be conducted.
  - c. Terrain boards or sand table exercises that permit the use of simulations or miniatures to gain a three-dimensional perspective while rehearsing the exercise.
  - d. TEWT in which emphasis is given to threat capabilities, active and passive defensive techniques, movement techniques, visual signals, reorganization following enemy contact, risk management, and safety.
4. **Leader Training Tips.**
  - a. Know the requirements of conducting forward area ATS as discussed in FM 1-120.
  - b. Review the T&EO requirements for conducting forward area ATS.

- c. Become familiar with the T&EOs listed in table 4-5 that support this exercise.
- d. If possible, personally conduct a reconnaissance of the training area before the MAPEX or TEWT.
- e. Develop a plan based on METT–TC. Consider questions such as the following:
  - (1) What information is available on the airfield from which the company/platoon will conduct forward area ATS?
  - (2) What is the likelihood of a ground, air, or nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attack?
  - (3) What effect will adverse weather have on the mission?
  - (4) What is the condition of unit personnel and equipment?
  - (5) How many personnel are required?
  - (6) How many personnel are available?
  - (7) How are they to be organized?
  - (8) What equipment configurations are required?
  - (9) What is required of the supported unit(s)?
  - (10) What intelligence is available for mission planning?
  - (11) What supporting fires are required?
  - (12) What are the support arrangements?
  - (13) How much time is needed to prepare?
  - (14) How long will it take to complete the operation?
  - (15) How much planning time is available?
  - (16) Were there previous ATC activities; i.e., a closed airfield, at the chosen site?
  - (17) Are there specific host nation ATS and non-ATS coordination requirements?

**5. Training Enhancers.**

- a. After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this STX and the leaders are trained in the leader tasks, this STX may be conducted under several condition options:
  - (1) With Opposing Forces (OPFOR).
  - (2) At night using night vision devices.
  - (3) Within an NBC environment.
- b. The exercise should be tailored to the appropriate level of unit proficiency. As the unit becomes increasingly proficient, trainers may add more complex situations.
  - (1) Air insertion.
  - (2) Loss of equipment and personnel.
  - (3) Threat.
  - (4) Escape and evasion.
  - (5) Simulated loss of a leader (pre- or mid-mission).
  - (6) Incidents of meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion (MIJI).
  - (7) Change/modification of mission.
- c. During training, leaders must enforce the task standards in the T&EOs. As training progresses and more realistic conditions are added, the unit must be able to maintain those standards or retrain on the particular task steps/procedures or entire tasks that were performed below standard.
- d. The OPFOR is a vital element in the training process. In the early stages of training, the leadership should discuss OPFOR tactics and ways to defeat them. As training progresses, walk-through training can be conducted to show the unit how to defeat the threat. When the unit can perform all tasks at an acceptable level, the OPFOR should be employed to enhance and reinforce training. An

- e. During the exercise, leaders should take advantage of any information regarding suspected OPFOR activity or adverse conditions.
  - f. When the unit has demonstrated proficiency in this STX as a stand-alone event, the unit sustains proficiency by executing the STX as part of the FTX. Personnel turnover will require leaders to assess the need for additional training to maintain proficiency.
- 6. STX B—General Situation.**
- a. The company is in an assembly area. It is ordered to conduct forward area ATS.
  - b. The unit will conduct the exercise under various environmental conditions, day or night.
  - c. The STX is over when the unit has demonstrated collective proficiency at executing forward area ATS.
  - d. Table 4–6 shows the estimated time needed for each part of this exercise as a training event during this STX.

<b>Table 4-6. Suggested Time Allocation for STX-B.</b>		
<b>STX-B: CONDUCT FORWARD AREA ATS</b>		
<b>Event</b>	<b>Action</b>	<b>Time Required</b>
1	Company receives FRAGO to conduct forward area ATS.	1 hour
2	Company conducts troop-leading procedures.	2 (to 4) hours (Depending on the complexity of the mission)
3	Company/platoon execute movement to objective IAW FRAGO.	2 to 4 hours (Depending on the complexity of the mission)
4	Company conducts pathfinder/landing zone/pickup zone operations.	2 to 4 hours
5	Company/platoon conducts terminal control.	1 hour
6	Conduct AARs at company and/or battalion.	1 hour
7*	Companies conduct sustainment operations.	N/A
		<b>Total Time 9 hours</b>
<p>*Indicates time not added to total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.</p> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <p>Because of the complexity of forward area ATS operations, the mission should be included as an on order mission in the FTX OPORD to allow additional planning time.</p> <p>Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.</p> <p>Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the staff.</p> <p>AARs are not time-constrained.</p>		

**7. STX B—Special Situation.**

a. The commander may choose to use a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to initiate subsequent STXs in support of the FTX. The unit receives the FRAGO shown below as an example.

CLASSIFICATION

**FRAGO 92-04**

Reference: OPERATION ORDER xx-xx Maps, series xxxx, sheets xxxx

Task Organization: No change.

**1. SITUATION (No change)**

**2. MISSION**

The TACTs 1 and 2 deploy forward at (DTG) to establish and operate a heavy and light PZ at OBJ FLIGHT (PU 12345678) in support of the 101st Abn Div air assault into the 12th Corps rear area.

**3. EXECUTION**

- a. **Commander's Intent.** I want to deploy the airspace information services platoon's two TACTs forward with TACT 1 as the advance party as soon as possible to establish the heavy PZ and a tactical NDB before H-8. We must be operational before H-2 to facilitate the movement of aircraft into the PZs. It is imperative that we make maximum use of terrain for electromagnetic shielding.
- b. **Concept of the Operation.** TACT 1 and 1/1/A/3-187 Inf will be the advance party and will conduct a tactical road march on ROUTE RED to Heavy PZ. The TACT 2 conducts a tactical road march on ROUTE RED to Light PZ. TACTs will install, operate, and maintain the TTCS and tactical NDB. The supported unit will provide local security.
- c. **Tasks to Units.**
  - (1) TACT 1.
    - (a) First in order of march with 1/1/A/3-187 Inf on ROUTE RED.
    - (b) Establish control of Heavy PZ.
    - (c) Install the tactical NDB at (MGRS).
  - (2) TACT 2.
    - (a) Second in order of march along ROUTE RED.
    - (b) Establish control of Light PZ.
    - (c) B/P to deploy (MGRS) NLT H-5 to provide pathfinder support.
  - (3) 1/A/3-187 Inf.
    - (a) First in order of march with TACT 1 along ROUTE RED.
    - (b) Conduct a recon of ROUTE RED.
    - (c) Provide 1st Squad for local security.
- d. **Coordinating Instructions.**
  - (1) MOPP level:
  - (2) OEG:
  - (3) Troop safety:
  - (4) Terrorist threat.
    - (a) Level I threat currently is low but is expected to increase within the next 24 to 48 hours. Level III threat is possible.
    - (b) Keep civilians out of OBJ AIRFIELD.
    - (c) Notify the commander of any suspicious activities.
  - (5) Report all checkpoints along ROUTE RED.
  - (6) Report closure on objectives.
  - (7) Report status of ATS equipment when checks are completed.
  - (8) ADA/weapons control status: YELLOW/HOLD.
  - (9) Hostile aircraft criteria: Positive identification of threat aircraft attacking friendly elements that respond improperly to IFF interrogation.

**4. SERVICE SUPPORT.** ROM (Designation), located at (grid location), will be operational beginning NLT (date/time group), until end of mission.

**5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.** No change to OPORD \_\_\_.

CLASSIFICATION

**b.** Leaders use troop-leading procedures to conduct a zone reconnaissance. They must receive, plan, coordinate, and execute assigned mission. The commander will evaluate and critique the unit's performance, consider any information on threat conditions, and brief leaders on sustainment operations.

**8. Support Requirements.**

**a. Minimum Trainers or O/Cs.** The commander is the primary trainer. One observer controller (O/C) is the minimum required to conduct this exercise. For internal evaluations, the commander is also the primary O/C. At least one other O/C is required if OPFOR is used.

**b. Opposing Forces.** Use OPFOR in this exercise after the company has demonstrated basic proficiency and is at the "run" phase of training. If used, the OPFOR should be familiar with zone reconnaissance operations, and employ thoroughly planned tactics to disrupt mission execution.

**c. Vehicles or Communications.** Every attempt should be made to use only vehicles and communications equipment that are organic and on hand. When OPFOR are employed, additional vehicles and communications equipment will be required for the OPFOR and the O/C. These additional vehicles and equipment should come from outside the unit.

**d. Maneuver Area.** The training area should be large enough to allow for tactical displacement of all required organic aircraft and equipment.

**e. Pyrotechnic and Ammunition Support Requirements.**

(1) Pyrotechnics and ammunition are not required to conduct this STX. If used, pyrotechnic training aids and ammunition authorizations are found DA Pamphlet 350-38, Standards in Weapons Training. It is the proponent publication for their authorization and is subject to change. DA Pamphlet 350-38 is available via the Internet from the Army Electronic Library Online, at <http://books.army.mil/cgi-bin/bookmgr/BOOKS>. Training managers should verify the currency of their information when preparing yearly forecasts and when ordering these TADSS for a particular exercise.

(2) Unit trainers must divide these resources among their subordinate units as the training situation dictates. The pyrotechnics listed in DA PAM 350-38 are the total annual allocation for an air traffic services battalion. The HHC and OPFOR requirements are included in the total. Commanders may desire to use more or fewer pyrotechnics for a particular exercise. However, units cannot exceed their annual allocation.

(3) Pyrotechnic requirements for combat training centers are resourced separately and are not part of the unit's annual allocation.

(4) When this STX is conducted using ammunition and Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement system (MILES) devices, an additional company O/C is required.

**9. T&EO Sequence.** Table 4-7 lists the T&EOs in chapter 5 to be used for this STX.

---

**NOTE:** If a company were conducting this STX independently, battalion staff tasks would not necessarily be required.

---

<b>Table 4–7. T&amp;EOs Supporting STX-B.</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
01-4-3001	Conduct Communications and Electronic Maintenance
01-2-2047	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
01-2-0203	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
01-2-0120	Employ Air Defense Measures
01-2-0101	Occupy an Assembly Area
01-2-0001	Plan Unit Move
01-2-2048	Conduct Unit Movement
01-2-0715	Perform Field Sanitation
01-5-0116	Install the AN/TSQ-198
01-5-1353	Provide Pathfinder Support
01-5-0033	Provide ATS at a Temporary Landing Site
01-5-0123	Conduct Landing Zone/Pickup Zone (LZ/PZ) Operations



## Chapter 5

# TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES

**5-1. Introduction.** This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the units. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks that support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

**5-2. Structure.** Table 5-1 lists the T&EOs by Battle Operating System. Table 5-2 lists the elements and task titles and the T&EO task numbers. Chapter 2, paragraph 2-3 matrix, lists the missions that the air traffic services (ATS) battalion may perform and the number and name of the collective tasks associated with each of these missions. Chapter 2, paragraph 2-3 matrix, lists the collective tasks by their associated Battle Operating system (BOS) and includes the references to supporting documents. Chapter 2, paragraph 2-4 matrix, groups the individual tasks according to their associated collective task and military occupational specialty (MOS).

**5-3. Format.** The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

**a. Element.** The term element identifies the unit or unit element(s) that perform the task.

**b. Task.** The term task describes the action to be performed by the unit; the task number is also provided.

**c. References.** The references are in parentheses following the task number. The reference that contains the most information about the task (the primary reference) is listed first and underlined. If there is more than one reference, the references are either required to accomplish the task or referenced in the task.

**d. Iteration.** The term iteration is used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The letter "M" identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4).

**e. Commander/Leader Assessment.** The unit leadership uses the term assessment to indicate the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. All available evaluation data and leader input is submitted to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. The following ratings are used:

**(1) T - Trained.** The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.

**(2) P - Needs practice.** The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.

**(3) U - Untrained.** The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

**f. Condition.** Term condition is a statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

**g. Task standard.**

(1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training. Every soldier should understand it.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (when applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-T conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This evaluation will establish a common base line for unit performance.

**h. Task Steps and Performance Measures.** This is a listing of all actions required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (\*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

**i. GO/NO-GO Column.** This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

**j. Task Performance/Evaluation Summary Block.** This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "GO." It also provides the evaluator a means to rate the units demonstrated performance as a "GO" or "NO-GO." It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

**k. Supporting Individual Tasks.** This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. Listed are the reference, tasks number, and task title.

**l. OPFOR Standards.** These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished—not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

**5-4. Use.** The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

**Table 5-1. List of T&EOs by Battle Operating Systems**

<b>Develop Intelligence</b>	
PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL (01-1-1060.01-0NRC).....	5-8
PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE (01-1-1203.01-0NRC) .....	5-10
PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (01-1-1206.01-0NRC).....	5-12
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>	
PREPARE FOR UNIT MOVE (01-2-0001.01-00CS).....	5-14

OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA (01-2-0101.01-00CS).....	5-18
CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT (01-2-2048.01-00CS).....	5-20
<b>Protect the Force</b>	
COORDINATE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE (01-1-0034.01-00CS).....	5-24
EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES (01-1-1016.01-0NRC).....	5-27
ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES (01-1-1202.01-0NRC).....	5-29
DEFEND UNIT POSITION (01-2-0102.01-00CS).....	5-31
CROSS A NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC) CONTAMINATED AREA (01-2-0115.01-00CS) ..	5-33
EMPLOY AIR DEFENSE MEASURES (01-2-0120.01-00CS).....	5-36
RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC) ATTACK (01-2-0121.01-00CS).....	5-39
PERFORM NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC) DECONTAMINATION (01-2-0122.01-00CS).....	5-42
PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS (01-2-0201.01-00CS).....	5-44
CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT (01-2-0203.01-0NRC).....	5-46
IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES (01-2-2035.01-0NRC).....	5-48
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>	
COORDINATE PRE-DEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES (01-1-0062.01-0NRC).....	5-51
PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT (01-1-0111.01-00CS).....	5-54
ESTABLISH AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC) (01-1-1023.01- 00CS).....	5-57
PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT (01-1-1102.01-0NRC).....	5-60
CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS (01-1-1103.01-0NRC).....	5-62
CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING (01-1-1104.01-00CS).....	5-64
PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES (01-1-1105.01-0NRC).....	5-66
COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION, AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT (01-1-1402.01-0NRC).....	5-69
INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS (01-1-1403.01-0NRC).....	5-71
COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT (01-1-1405.01-00CS).....	5-73
PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES (01-1-1406.01-00CS).....	5-75
PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT (01-2-0702.01-00CS).....	5-77
PERFORM FIELD SANITATION (01-2-0715.01-0NRC).....	5-79
COORDINATE UNIT-LEVEL SUPPLY OPERATIONS (01-2-2054.01-0NRC).....	5-81
PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT (01-2-2064.01-00CS).....	5-83
SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS (01-2-7102.01-0NRC).....	5-85
EVACUATE CASUALTIES (01-2-7707.01-00CS).....	5-87
INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)2 (01-4-0022.01-00CS).....	5-89
INSTALL THE AN/TSC-61B (01-4-0025.01-00CS).....	5-91
INSTALL THE LANDING CONTROL CENTRAL AN/TSQ-71 SERIES (01-4-0029.01-00CS).....	5-94
INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-70A OR AN/TSW-7A (01-4-0033.01-00CS).....	5-97
INSTALL THE TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM (TAIS) AN/TSQ-221 (01-4-0117.01- 00CS).....	5-100
OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM- 147 (01-4-0124.01-00CS).....	5-103
PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT (01-4-0320.01-0NRC).....	5-105
PERFORM VEHICLE RECOVERY OPERATIONS (01-4-1029.01-00CS).....	5-107
CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS-ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE (01-4-3001.01-00CS) ..	5-109
PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE (01-4-7723.01-0NRC).....	5-112
INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)1 (01-5-0021.01-00CS).....	5-115
INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-198 (01-5-0116.01-00CS).....	5-117
IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM (01-5-1110.01-00CS).....	5-120
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>	
PERFORM ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A2C <sup>2</sup> ) DUTIES IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND (01-1-0050.01-00CS).....	5-122

PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6) (01-1-0052.01-00CS).....	5-125
COORDINATE FLIGHT CHECKS OF AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES (ATS) FACILITIES AND NAVAIDS (01-1-0110.01-00CS).....	5-129
CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A2C <sup>2</sup> ) (01-1-0112.01-00CS).....	5-131
CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS (01-1-0113.01-00CS).....	5-134
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A2C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND (01-1-0125.01-00CS).....	5-137
COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS (01-1-1001.01-0NRC).....	5-140
DIRECT THE STAFF (01-1-1002.01-0NRC).....	5-142
PLAN STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO) (01-1-1017.01-00CS).....	5-144
COORDINATE THE SAFETY PROGRAM (01-1-1024.01-0NRC).....	5-147
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1) (01-1-1101.01-0NRC).....	5-149
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM) (01-1-1120.01-0NRC).....	5-152
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2) (01-1-1201.01-0NRC).....	5-154
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3) (01-1-1301.01-0NRC).....	5-158
ESTABLISH A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) (01-1-1302.01-00CS).....	5-161
CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS (01-1-1303.01-00CS).....	5-164
ESTABLISH A TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP) (01-1-1306.01-00CS).....	5-167
PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS (01-1-1311.01-00CS).....	5-169
PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4) (01-1-1401.01-00CS).....	5-171
COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (01-2-0018.01-00CS).....	5-174
PERFORM CONSOLIDATION AND REORGANIZATION (01-2-0114.01-00CS).....	5-176
CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES (01-2-2047.01-00CS).....	5-178
CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT (01-2-7039.01-00CS).....	5-181
CONDUCT GROUND-CONTROLLED APPROACH RADAR OPERATIONS (01-4-0032.01-00CS).....	5-184
CONDUCT TOWER OPERATIONS (01-4-0034.01-00CS).....	5-188
CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (TAIS-AIC) OPERATIONS (01-4-0118.01-00CS).....	5-192
CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS (01-4-0119.01-00CS).....	5-195
ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS (01-4-1352.01-0NRC).....	5-198
PROVIDE AIR TRAFFIC SERVICE (ATS) AT A TEMPORARY LANDING SITE (01-5-0033.01-00CS).....	5-201
CONDUCT LANDING ZONE/PICKUP ZONE (LZ/PZ) OPERATIONS (01-5-0123.01-00CS).....	5-204
PROVIDE PATHFINDER SUPPORT (01-5-1353.01-00CS).....	5-208

**Table 5-2. List of T&EOs by Element**

**Command Section (Battalion Commander)**

Command and Control (C <sup>2</sup> ) Battalion/Squadron Operations (01-1-1001.01-0NRC).....	5-140
--	-------

**Command Section (Battalion Executive Officer)**

Direct the Staff (01-1-1002.01-0NRC).....	5-142
---	-------

**Command Section (Command Sergeant Major)**

Participate in the Staff Planning Process (CSM) (01-1-1120.01-0NRC).....	5-152
--	-------

**Battalion S1 Section**

Conduct Casualty Reporting (01-1-1104.01-00CS).....	5-64
Conduct Replacement Operations (01-1-1103.01-0NRC).....	5-62
Coordinate Pre-Deployment Activities (01-1-0062.01-0NRC).....	5-51
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S1) (01-1-1101.01-0NRC).....	5-149
Perform Strength Management (01-1-1102.01-0NRC).....	5-60

Provide Other Personnel and Administrative Services (01-1-1105.01-0NRC).....	5-66
<b>Battalion S2 Section</b>	
Coordinate Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Defense (01-1-00234.01-00CS) .....	5-24
Establish Security Measures (01-1-1201.01-0NRC) .....	5-29
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S2) (01-1-1201.01-0NRC) .....	5-154
Process Captured Documents and Materiel (01-1-1060.01-0NRC).....	5-8
Process Enemy Prisoners of War (01-1-1206.01-0NRC).....	5-12
Process Information into Intelligence (01-1-1203.01-0NRC).....	5-10
<b>Battalion S3 Section</b>	
Conduct Unit Movement (01-2-2048.01-00CS) .....	5-20
Control Tactical Operations (01-1-1303.01-00CS).....	5-164
Coordinate Flight Checks of Air Traffic Services (ATS) Facilities and NAVAIDS (01-1-0110.01-00CS) .....	5-129
Coordinate the Safety Program (01-1-1024.01-NRC) .....	5-147
Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures (01-1-1016.01-0NRC) .....	5-27
Establish a Tactical Command Post (TAC CP) (01-1-1306.01-00CS).....	5-167
Establish a Tactical Operations Center (TOC) (01-1-1302.01-00CS).....	5-161
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S3) (01-1-1301.01-0NRC) .....	5-158
Perform Liaison Operations (01-1-1311.01-00CS).....	5-169
Plan Stability and Support Operations (SASO) (01-1-1017.01-00CS).....	5-144
<b>Communications Section</b>	
Establish Communications (01-4-1352.01-0NRC) .....	5-198
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S6) (01-1-0052.01-00CS) .....	5-125
Provide Signal Support (01-1-0111.01-00CS).....	5-54
<b>Army Airspace Command and Control (A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>) Element</b>	
Conduct Civil-Military Liaison Operations (01-1-0113.01-00CS) .....	5-134
Conduct Tactical Airspace Integration System—Army Airspace Command and Control (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) (01-1-0112.01-00CS).....	5-131
Participate in the Staff Planning Process A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> in Support of a Division or Higher Level of Command (01-1-0125.01-00CS) .....	5-137
Perform Army Airspace Command and Control (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) Duties in support of a Division or Higher Level of Command (01-1-0050.01-00CS).....	5-122
<b>Battalion S4 Section</b>	
Coordinate External Transportation Assets for Movement of Personnel, Supplies, and Equipment (01-1-1405.01-00CS).....	5-73
Coordinate the Requisition, Acquisition, and Distribution of Supplies and Equipment (01-1-1402.01-0NRC) .....	5-69
Establish an Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC) (01-1-1023.01-00CS).....	5-57
Inform the Commander of Equipment Readiness Status (01-1-1403.01-0NRC).....	5-71
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S4) (01-1-1401.01-00CS) .....	5-171
Provide Other Logistical Services (01-1-1406.01-00CS) .....	5-75
<b>Chaplain/Ministry Team</b>	
Implement the Command Religious Support Program (01-5-1110.01-00CS).....	5-120

**Headquarters Company**

Support Tactical Operations Center (TOC) Operations (01-2-7102.01-0NRC)..... 5-85

**Supply Section (Company)**

Provide Unit Supply Support (01-4-0320.01-0NRC)..... 5-105

**Automotive Maintenance Section**

Perform Unit-Level Maintenance (01-4-7723.01-0NRC)..... 5-112

Perform Vehicle Recovery Operations (01-4-1029.01-00CS) ..... 5-107

**All Companies**

Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (01-2-0203.01-0NRC)..... 5-46

Combat Battlefield Stress (01-2-0018.01-00CS) ..... 5-174

Conduct Hasty Assembly Area Displacement (01-2-7039.01-00CS) ..... 5-181

Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (01-2-2047.01-00CS)..... 5-178

Conduct Unit Movement (01-2-2048.01-00CS) ..... 5-20

Coordinate Unit-Level Supply Operations (01-2-2054.01-0NRC)..... 5-81

Cross a Nuclear/Biological/Chemical (NBC) Contaminated Area (01-2-0115.01-00CS) ..... 5-33

Defend Unit Position (01-2-0102.01-00CS) ..... 5-31

Employ Air Defense Measures (01-2-0120.01-00CS)..... 5-36

Evacuate Casualties (01-2-7707.01-00CS) ..... 5-87

Implement Fratricide Prevention Measures (01-2-2035.01-0NRC) ..... 5-48

Occupy an Assembly Area (01-2-0101.01-00CS)..... 5-18

Perform Company/Troop Strength Management (01-2-2064.01-00CS)..... 5-83

Perform Consolidation and Reorganization (01-2-0114.01-00CS)..... 5-176

Perform Field Sanitation (01-2-0715.01-0NRC)..... 5-79

Perform Nuclear/Biological/Chemical (NBC) Decontamination (01-2-0122.01-00CS)..... 5-42

Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (01-2-0201.01-00CS) ..... 5-44

Prepare for Unit Move (01-2-0001.01-00CS)..... 5-14

Prepare Unit for Deployment (01-2-00702.01-00CS) ..... 5-77

Respond to a Nuclear/Biological/Chemical (NBC) Attack (01-2-0121.01-00CS) ..... 5-39

**Communications and Navigation Maintenance Section**

Conduct Communications-Electronics (COM/NAV) Maintenance 01-4-3001.01-00CS)..... 5-109

Operate the Electronic Shop Shelter-Mounted Avionics AN/ASM-146 and AN/ASM-147 (01-4-0124.01-00CS)..... 5-103

**Control Tower Teams/Tactical Teams**

Conduct Tower Operations (01-4-0034.01-00CS)..... 5-188

Install the AN/TRN-30(V)1 (01-5-0021.01-00CS) ..... 5-115

Install the AN/TSQ-70A or AN/TSW-7A (01-4-0033.01-00CS)..... 5-97

**Ground-Controlled Approach (GCA) Teams**

Conduct Ground-Controlled Approach Radar Operations (01-4-0032.01-00CS)..... 5-184

Install the Landing Control Central AN/TSQ-71 Series (01-4-0029.01-00CS)..... 5-94

**Airspace Information Center (AIC) Team**

Conduct Airspace Information (AIC) Operations (01-4-0119.01-00CS) ..... 5-195

Conduct Tactical Airspace Integration System—Airspace Information Center (TAIS-AIC)  
Operations (01-4-0118.01-00CS) .....5-192  
Install the AN/TRN-30(V)2 (01-4-0022.01-00CS).....5-89  
Install the AN/TSC-61B (01-4-0025.01-00CS) .....5-91  
Install the Tactical Airspace Integration System (TAIS) AN/TSQ 221 (01-4-0117.01-00CS) .....5-100

**Tactical Teams**

Conduct Landing Zone/Pickup Zone (LZ/PZ) Operations (01-5-0123.01-00CS).....5-204  
Install the AN/TSQ-198 (01-5-0116.01-00CS).....5-117  
Provide Air Traffic Service (ATS) at a Temporary Landing Site (01-5-0033.01-00CS).....5-201  
Provide Pathfinder Support (01-5-1353.01-00CS) .....5-208

**ELEMENT:** S2 SECTION

**TASK:** PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL (01-1-1060.01-0NRC)  
 (FM 3-19.40) (FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Enemy documents or materiel have been captured. The capturing unit has reported and requested instructions for disposition. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All captured documents and materiel were accurately analyzed for intelligence value. One hundred percent of all captured documents and materiel were evacuated to higher headquarters or photographed and destroyed IAW the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). Critical documents or materiel were evacuated without delay.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The S2 section coordinates with the capturing unit to determine the type of captured documents or materiel.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained a general description of documents or materiel.</li> <li>b. Determined potential intelligence value of captured documents or materiel.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The S2 section directs the unit to perform destruction or evacuation procedures.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated evacuation procedures IAW the unit SOP.</li> <li>b. Photographed designated documents or materiel and initiated destruction procedures.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. +The S2 section coordinates with the S4 section and the capturing unit for evacuation of documents or materiel.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Specified where documents or materiel would be picked up.</li> <li>b. Specified when pickup would take place.</li> <li>c. Specified how evacuation would be accomplished (e.g., as part of a logistics package).</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. +The S2 section receives documents or materiel.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed documents or materiel to determine effect on the current mission.</li> <li>b. Processed intelligence information.</li> <li>c. Reported any significant intelligence that could affect current missions to the commander.</li> <li>d. Secured documents or materiel until they were evacuated.</li> <li>e. Transported critical or time-sensitive documents or materiel to higher headquarters immediately.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. +The S2 section coordinates with the S4 and the brigade/regimental S2 for evacuation of documents or materiel to military intelligence (MI) collection point.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Directed the transport of sensitive or specialized equipment to the MI collection point. b. Prioritized evacuation so that nuclear, biological, and chemical and signal equipment were evacuated first, then weapon and command and control systems. c. Completed the document register (S4 responsibility). d. Prepared turn-in documentation for captured routine equipment (S4 responsibility). e. Directed the transport of captured routine materiel to the division support area.  * 6. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
191-000-0001	Process Captives	
301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material	
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning	
301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1203.01-0NRC	PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1206.01-0NRC	PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Determined if incoming data met the criteria for a decision point, line, or event. j. Collated incoming information with existing intelligence to determine if new activities were in concert with expected enemy courses of action and current activities. k. Requested additional information from the G2 and subordinate units to fill gaps in intelligence. l. Updated the situation map. m. Projected future enemy dispositions based on the enemy situation template. n. Made appropriate recommendations to the commander based on sound analytical procedures and judgment. o. Provided intelligence report to subordinate units.  * 3. Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material	
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning	
301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1206.01-0NRC	PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S2 SECTION

**TASK:** PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (01-1-1206.01-0NRC)  
 (FM 3-19.40) (JOINT PUB 3-50.21)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Enemy soldiers have surrendered or have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) were processed immediately using the 5 Ss (search, segregate, silence, safeguard, speed to rear). EPWs were evacuated to holding areas within 12 hours of capture or surrender. All materials of military intelligence value were forwarded immediately. There were no violations of prisoners' rights under international law. No prisoners were allowed to escape because of improper handling procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The S2 section, with security force augmentation, SEARCHES captured personnel.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated EPW issues with the detailed Judge Advocate or servicing Staff Judge Advocate's office.</li> <li>b. Confiscated all weapons, equipment, and documents.</li> <li>c. Returned personal items of no military intelligence value.</li> <li>d. Issued a written receipt for confiscated personal property.</li> <li>e. Tagged each prisoner and each item confiscated from the prisoner with required information.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Personnel:   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Specified place, date, and time of capture.</li> <li>(b) Specified capturing unit.</li> <li>(c) Summarized circumstances of capture.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(2) Inventory items:   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Specified type of document or material.</li> <li>(b) Specified place, date, and time of capture.</li> <li>(c) Specified the capturing unit.</li> <li>(d) Specified circumstances of capture.</li> <li>(e) Specified enemy unit from which items came (if known or can be determined).</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The security force SEGREGATES EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated EPWs by rank, sex, nationality, and ideology; also segregated deserters and civilians.</li> <li>b. Located EPWs at temporary collection points in coordination with the S1.</li> <li>c. Turned over wounded EPWs to medical personnel for evacuation through medical channels.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. +The security force maintains SILENCE among EPWs and prevents all communications between EPWs with special emphasis on the following:                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prevented EPW leaders from giving orders.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Prevented EPWs from planning escapes. 4. +The security force SAFEGUARDS captured enemy personnel. a. Removed EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield. b. Treated EPWs humanely. c. Provided EPWs with available food, water, and medical attention, as required. 5. The security force SPEEDS evacuation of EPWs to the rear. a. Notified higher headquarters that enemy personnel had been captured. b. Coordinated transportation and accompanying security for EPWs with the S1 and the S4. c. Exploited intelligence information. d. Processed EPWs as quickly as possible. e. Evacuated EPWs to the rear as quickly as possible. f. Advised the EPW collection point of prisoners en route. g. Kept EPWs from command and control or key logistics facilities while en route. * 6. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/ Responsibilities	
011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation	
081-831-1000	Evaluate a Casualty	
191-000-0001	Process Captives	
301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material	
301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1060.01-0NRC	PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1203.01-0NRC	PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** PREPARE FOR UNIT MOVE (01-2-0001.01-00CS)  
(FM 55-30) (FM 100-14) (FM 17-95)  
(FM 55-9)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. Tactical operations dictate that a battalion/squadron move is required. The company/troop may or may not move as an integral member of the battalion The S3/S4 has conducted movement planning. The commander has selected a convoy commander (usually the HHC/HHT commander) who has conducted troop-leading procedures. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**NOTE:** The tactical situation will dictate whether the battalion/squadron moves as a whole or whether the companies/troops will conduct the move independently.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. Movement planning was conducted in a timely manner, which allowed subordinate units adequate time to prepare. The unit was ready to cross the start point (SP) NLT time specified in movement order.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: Steps and performance measures referring to aircraft, crews, or aircraft specific equipment apply only to units with organic aircraft.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The convoy commander reviews the movement plan.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the movement (and new assembly area location, if applicable) with higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Conducted a map reconnaissance to select routes.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Selected routes that provide cover and concealment.</li> <li>(2) Selected routes that provide trafficable terrain.</li> <li>(3) Conducted risk assessment</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Selected the road march technique.</li> <li>d. Selected the movement order.</li> <li>e. Determined distance factors.</li> <li>f. Determined movement rate factors:                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Vehicles column speed and catchup speed.</li> <li>(2) Rate of march.</li> </ol> </li> <li>g. Determined time factors:                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) SP time.</li> <li>(2) Pass time.</li> <li>(3) Time distance.</li> <li>(4) Arrival time.</li> <li>(5) Completion time.</li> <li>(6) Extra time needed for slower vehicles.</li> </ol> </li> <li>h. Determined order of unit movement.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Positioned command vehicles and radios for optimal convoy command and control.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Organized vehicles by mobility capability.            (3) Divided the unit into mixed columns to maintain unit integrity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Finalized and issued the march order.</li> <li>j. Designated a convoy commander and quartering party IAW unit SOP.</li> <li>k. Conducted back brief to the battalion/squadron commander on the movement plan.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. + The quartering party/office in charge (OIC) organizes the quartering party.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Assembled representatives from each subelement.</li> <li>c. Briefed personnel and designated an assembly area, SP location and time.</li> </ul> <p>3. +The unit prepares vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preventive maintenance checks and service (PMCS) on all vehicles and equipment and reported all deficiencies beyond operator's capability to immediate supervisor.</li> <li>b. Removed all unit identification markings on vehicles.</li> <li>c. Covered all reflective surfaces of all vehicles or cargo with available materials</li> <li>d. Hardened ground vehicles, if necessary.</li> <li>e. Placed antennas at lowest height and turned radio volume and squelch to lowest operational setting consistent with operational requirements. (Sets squelch setting "on" and call-light "off" when operating at night.)</li> </ul> <p>4. +The unit dismantles the current operating site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Struck tentage and camouflage nets IAW applicable TMs and within time specified in the displacement plan.</li> <li>b. Loaded all designated equipment IAW unit load plans and within time specified in the displacement plan.</li> <li>c. Disguised all critical equipment and supplies with tarpaulins or any other authorized covering.</li> <li>d. Dismantled wire communications, antennas, generators, and power cables within time specified in the displacement plan.</li> <li>e. Removed all signs of area occupation.</li> <li>f. Positioned all stay-behind party vehicles and equipment in areas that provided cover and did not impede departure of main body vehicles.</li> <li>g. Dispatched advance/quartering party no later than (NLT) time specified in movement order.</li> </ul> <p>5. +The convoy commander and leaders organize the ground convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned control vehicles without setting a pattern.</li> <li>b. Assigned recovery vehicle(s) positions where they could move to disabled vehicles without disrupting convoy movement.</li> <li>c. Assigned hardened vehicle(s) with crew-served weapons interspersed throughout the convoy.</li> <li>d. Assigned passenger locations so that all unit personnel had a position and semi-automatic and automatic weapons were alternated throughout the convoy to cover front, rear, and flanks.</li> <li>e. Assigned soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees.</li> <li>f. Assigned sufficient number of recovery vehicles and mechanics to trail party leader.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Provided vehicle position listing with location of all vehicles to the trail party leader.</p> <p>h. Opened radio net(s) as specified in the movement order.</p> <p>* 6. +The convoy commander and leaders conduct pre-movement inspections.</p> <p>a. Inspected personnel and their equipment for compliance with commander's guidance, unit tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs) and higher headquarters (HQ) movement order.</p> <p>b. Inspected organizational equipment for accountability and serviceability.</p> <p>c. Inspected vehicles, trailers, and loads for serviceability, proper stowing, and security.</p> <p>d. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to unit and higher HQ staff element.</p> <p>* 7. +The company/troop commander plans for the movement of aircraft.</p> <p>a. Completed troop-leading procedures and conducted aircrew briefings IAW the unit SOP, which included as a minimum:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Order of movement.</li> <li>(2) Departure time.</li> <li>(3) Route of flight.</li> <li>(4) Movement technique.</li> <li>(5) Start point, air control point, and release point.</li> <li>(6) FARP location.</li> <li>(7) Assembly area occupation plan.</li> </ol> <p>b. Ensured that platoon loaded equipment and aircraft were prepared for flight.</p> <p>* 8. +The convoy commander plans for the movement of vehicles and personnel.</p> <p>a. Completed troop-leading procedures and issued an OPORD/FRAGO which:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver.</li> <li>(2) Briefed convoy chain of command and assigned serial commanders.</li> <li>(3) Briefed convoy routes.</li> <li>(4) Prescribed the rate of march and catchup speeds.</li> <li>(5) Briefed vehicle intervals.</li> <li>(6) Identified scheduled halts.</li> <li>(7) Briefed safety, accident, and breakdown procedures.</li> <li>(8) Briefed immediate action security measures.</li> <li>(9) Briefed blackout condition procedures.</li> <li>(10) Identified location of medical support.</li> <li>(11) Identified location of maintenance support.</li> <li>(12) Provided location and identification of destination.</li> <li>(13) Briefed arm/hand signals.</li> <li>(14) Briefed radio frequencies and call signs for control personnel, security force commander, fire support elements, reserve security elements, and medical transportation support.</li> </ol> <p>b. Prepared to cross the SP.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Positioned all vehicles under overhead cover.</li> <li>(2) Cleared all individuals and crew-served weapons.</li> <li>(3) Posted air guards in positions designated by march commander.</li> <li>(4) Posted security guards to maintain 360-degree surveillance.</li> <li>(5) Forwarded movement readiness report to higher HQ staff element.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 9. + The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations	
011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations	
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
031-503-1037	Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper	
031-503-2001	Identify Chemical Agents Using M256 Series Chemical Agent Detector Kits	
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures	
031-503-3010	Supervise Employment of Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Markers	
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain	
551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Moved aircraft into final positions with ground guides. d. Parked aircraft IAW SOP for emergency departure. e. Conducted aircraft after-operations inspections.  4. +Unit prepares for future operations. a. Performed required vehicle, equipment, and aircraft maintenance. b. Conducted resupply operations. c. Performed pre-combat checks (if combat operations were imminent). d. Implemented plan for continuous operations. e. Continued to improve perimeter defensive positions.  * 5. + The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-510-0023	Conduct Assembly Area Operations	
011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations	
011-400-2300	Perform Tactical Communications, Using SINGARS Radios, in a Field Environment	
011-420-0006	Conduct Fire Support Planning and Coordination	
071-990-0005	Enforce Detection Prevention Measures	
091-900-0006	Direct Unit Maintenance Operations	
551-88N-0002	Prepare for Unit Movement	
551-88N-0003	Plan Unit Movement	
551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0702.01-00CS	PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** S3 SECTION  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 COMPANY

**TASK:** CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT (01-2-2048.01-00CS)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 1-112) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 1-114) (FM 55-9) (FM 71-2)  
 (FM 7-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The company/troop has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. Troop-leading procedures have been completed. All preparations and coordination for the move have been made. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. The company/troop met all time schedules. All vehicles, personnel, and aircraft, if applicable, moved to the new location without damage to, or loss of, equipment or personnel. The unit was not observed by enemy forces as a result of poor road march or tactical flight discipline, if applicable. Disabled vehicles and downed aircraft, if applicable were recovered without incident.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> Steps and performance measures referring to aircraft, aircrews, or aircraft specific equipment apply only to units with organic aircraft.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The company/troop commander briefs and dispatches the quartering party.</li> <li>2. +The quartering party moves to the assembly area.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoitered route and reported condition and trafficability.</li> <li>b. Maintained security and air guards.</li> <li>c. Conducted a tactical road march to the assembly area.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. +The quartering party occupies the tentative assembly area.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established security.</li> <li>b. Established communications with the tactical operations center (TOC)/tactical command post.</li> <li>c. Conducted hasty reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Cleared and secured assembly area.</li> <li>e. Monitored the area for nuclear, biological, and chemical contamination.</li> <li>f. Identified and marked:                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Entrances.</li> <li>(2) Exits.</li> <li>(3) Internal routes.</li> </ol> </li> <li>g. Reconnoitered for:                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Drainage.</li> <li>(2) Slope.</li> <li>(3) Cover and concealment.</li> <li>(4) Terrain.</li> <li>(5) Dispersion</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(6) Trafficability.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>h. Reconnoitered forward area rearm/refuel point (FARP) location and refuel on the move (ROM) sites.</li> <li>i. Reconnoitered landing zones (if applicable).</li> <li>j. Identified and marked obstacles and contaminated areas.</li> <li>k. Reported to headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>4. +The quartering party prepares the site for occupation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected and marked locations in accordance with (IAW) standing operating procedure (SOP).               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Command post /TOC.</li> <li>(2) Aircraft.</li> <li>(3) Vehicles and equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Maintained security.</li> <li>c. Removed obstacles (if feasible).</li> <li>d. Prepared a site map and began site preparation.</li> <li>e. Posted road guards and unit guides at the release point (if applicable).</li> </ul> <p>* 5. +The convoy commander initiates road march and controls troop movement toward the start point (SP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed troop to begin movement using the designated formation, road march technique, vehicle interval, and speed.</li> <li>b. Positioned himself where he could best control the movement of troops.</li> <li>c. Used visual signals, FM radio, and/or digital system to communicate IAW OPORD/FRAGO/or unit SOP.</li> <li>d. Reported control measures IAW OPORD/FRAGO or unit SOP (voice or digital).</li> </ul> <p>* 6. +The troop conducts tactical movements on the route.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed the SP at the designated time, using the proper formation, road march technique, vehicle interval, and speed as prescribed in the OPORD/FRAGO.</li> <li>b. Maintained 360-degree ground and air observation.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. +The convoy/serial commander(s) ensures that vehicles that drop out of the march rejoin the march at the rear or continue along the route of march as directed.</p> <p>* 8. +The convoy commander enforces march discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed directional guides at all critical intersections along route, if necessary.</li> <li>b. Assumed position(s) along march route that provided command presence at critical turns or other points of decision.</li> <li>c. Enforced all movement polices defined in the movement plan, with emphasis on formation.</li> <li>d. Adjusted formation distances and speed consistent with roads and speed limits.</li> <li>e. Enforced security measures to protect equipment and cargo during halts.</li> <li>f. Communicated to unit leaders and operators, by radio or proper visual signals, any violations of march discipline or changes to current orders.</li> </ul> <p>9. +The unit employs march discipline.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Maintained designated march speed specified in movement plan or as prescribed by the convoy commander.</p> <p>b. Maintained proper vehicle interval as specified in movement plan or as adjusted by the convoy, serial, or unit commander.</p> <p>c. Obeyed vehicle driving regulations and safe driving procedures based on conditions.</p> <p>d. Crossed all checkpoints as scheduled.</p> <p>e. Reacted correctly to convoy, serial, or march commander's arm/hand signals.</p> <p>10. +The convoy conducts scheduled halts as directed in the OPORD/FRAGO.</p> <p>a. Established local security.</p> <p>(1) Dispersed vehicles and occupied terrain that provided fields of fire covering the route, if applicable.</p> <p>(2) Employed scouts to conduct reconnaissance of danger areas, as necessary.</p> <p>b. Posted guides to direct traffic, as necessary.</p> <p>c. Performed during-operations maintenance.</p> <p>d. Refueled, if scheduled.</p> <p>e. Updated position navigational systems, as necessary.</p> <p>f. Reported troop status to higher headquarters commander by messenger, FM, digital system, or IAW SOP.</p> <p>11. +The convoy conducts unscheduled halts, as necessary.</p> <p>a. Cleared route of march IAW OPORD/FRAGO.</p> <p>b. Established local security.</p> <p>(1) Dispersed vehicles and occupied terrain that provided fields of fire covering the route, if applicable.</p> <p>(2) Employed scouts to conduct reconnaissance of danger areas, as necessary.</p> <p>c. Determined the cause of the halt.</p> <p>d. Reported unscheduled halt to the higher commander with as much information as possible about the reason for the halt.</p> <p>e. Eliminated the cause of the halt, if possible.</p> <p>f. Continued the march when directed by the higher commander or as soon as possible.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The nature of the unscheduled halt may require the troop to conduct actions on contact, followed by the execution of a course of action to eliminate the threat.</p> <p>12. +The convoy takes appropriate actions when a vehicle becomes disabled.</p> <p>a. Moved the disabled vehicle off the road so it did not block traffic, if possible.</p> <p>b. Posted guides to direct traffic around the vehicle, if necessary.</p> <p>c. Established local security IAW OPORD/FRAGO or unit SOP.</p> <p>d. Reported status of the disabled vehicle to the convoy/unit commander via the serial commander/maintenance support.</p> <p>e. Conducted repairs within capability of vehicle crew and rejoined the rear of the column.</p> <p>f. Requested maintenance support, if the crew was unable to repair the vehicle, assisted maintenance personnel, and rejoined the rear of the column once the vehicle was repaired or was recovered by maintenance personnel.</p> <p>13. +The convoy arrives at and moves through the release point (RP).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Cleared the RP without stopping or blocking the RP. b. Reported arrival at and the completion of the move through the RP to the higher commander (FM or digital). c. Followed guides and moved to the designated troop location.  14. +The company/troop conducts aircraft air movement. a. Departed at the specified time. b. Followed designated air routes using appropriate terrain flight techniques. c. Reported passing the RP and proceeded to the FARP IAW the unit SOP. d. Repositioned to assigned location (assembly area or holding area, depending on mission).  *15. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-7000	Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations	
011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations	
011-420-0005	Apply the Fundamentals of Air Defense	
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information	
551-88N-0002	Prepare for Unit Movement	
551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0120.01-00CS	EMPLOY AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) Forecasted the procurement of NBC defense equipment (dosimeters, MOPP gear, monitors, etc.) with the S4.</p> <p>(5) Coordinated through the S3 for external decontamination support.</p> <p>2. +The NBC section plans for decontamination operations.</p> <p>a. Identified possible decontamination sites (personnel, aircraft, and ground support assets).</p> <p>b. Coordinated with brigade/regiment for decontamination support.</p> <p>c. Coordinated the integration of host-nation assets into decontamination operation, if applicable.</p> <p>d. Recommended priority of decontamination.</p> <p>e. Assisted companies/troops with operational decontamination requirements.</p> <p>3. +The S3 establishes a battalion/squadron NBC center.</p> <p>a. Coordinated the activities of the company/troop NBC teams.</p> <p>b. Reported NBC equipment and readiness status to the S3.</p> <p>c. Consolidated company/troop operational exposure guidance and radiation status information.</p> <p>d. Developed radiological survey and chemical detection plans.</p> <p>e. Collated, evaluated, and distributed NBC contamination data.</p> <p>f. Processed NBC reports.</p> <p>(1) NBC-1 (Initial Observer's Report)—Received from observers and forwarded to brigades/regiments.</p> <p>(2) NBC-2 (Evaluated Data)—Received from divisions (generated at battalion/squadron if operating independently).</p> <p>(3) NBC-3 (Warning of Predicted Contamination Report)—Received from higher headquarters.</p> <p>(4) NBC-4 (Reconnaissance &amp; Monitoring &amp; Survey Report)—Received from company/troop NBC teams and forwarded to brigades/regiments.</p> <p>(5) NBC-5 (Actual Contaminated Area Report)—Received from divisions for review of impact on operations.</p> <p>(6) NBC-6 (Detailed Information on Chemical/Biological Attack Report)—Received from companies/troops and forwarded to brigades/regiments.</p> <p>g. Received and analyzed the chemical downwind report.</p> <p>h. Updated the tactical situation map.</p> <p>i. Briefed the command group, as required.</p> <p>* 4. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-1101	Employ NBC Protection for Aviation Operations	
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC Warning and Reporting System	
011-510-1103	Conduct Aviation Operations in an NBC Environment	
011-420-1101	Supervise a Unit NBC Defense Program	
031-503-3005	Submit NBC 1 Report	
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures	
031-503-3014	Supervise Decontamination Procedures	
031-503-4002	Prepare a Unit for NBC Attack	
031-503-7000	Integrate NBC Concepts into Mission Planning	
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0201.01-00CS	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S3 SECTION

**TASK:** EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES (01-1-1016.01-0NRC)  
 (FM 3-19.30) (AR 380-5) (FM 24-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit was not compromised by electronic, visual, or audio means. Mission accomplishment was not degraded by inadequate operational security (OPSEC) measures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S3 implements OPSEC measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed the S2 physical security plan.</li> <li>b. Formulated information security measures.</li> <li>c. Formulated signal security measures.</li> <li>d. Determined counter and counter-countersurveillance measures.</li> <li>e. Determined automated systems security.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The S3 section implements information security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Controlled the distribution of all written OPORDs and annexes.</li> <li>b. Accounted for all signal operation instructions (SOI).</li> <li>c. Controlled all operational information on a need-to-know basis.</li> <li>d. Maintained all classified information and material in an authorized security container.</li> <li>e. Maintained emergency destruction instructions IAW applicable regulations and the unit SOP.</li> </ul> <p>3. +The S3 section implements signal security (SIGSEC) measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Transmitted mission essential information by secure radio only.</li> <li>b. Used authentication and encryption codes specified in the SOI.</li> <li>c. Limited message transmissions to no more than 20 seconds.</li> <li>d. Reported all SIGSEC discrepancies/violations to next higher headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>4. +The S3 section implements electronic protection measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tuned equipment to assigned frequencies specified in the current SOI.</li> <li>b. Observed radio silence periods, as directed.</li> <li>c. Employed anti-jamming procedures.</li> <li>d. Forwarded reports of electromagnetic interference to communications personnel within 10 minutes of the incident.</li> </ul> <p>5. The S3 section directs employment of countersurveillance measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured the employment of litter prevention measures that kept areas free of trash, litter, or personal items.</li> <li>b. Ensured the employment of measures that prevented the creation of foot-paths and vehicle tracks between elements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Ensured that radios were operated with volumes and squelches on lowest possible settings. d. Camouflaged vehicles, equipment, and tents. e. Buried cables and wires, as appropriate. f. Employed noise and light discipline.  6. The S3 section implements automated systems security. a. Positioned computers within an enclosure that provided controlled access. b. Secured all electrical facilities that supported the system. c. Restricted access to the computer by use of classified passwords. d. Controlled all log-ons and file access by the use of unique operator passwords. e. Changed passwords IAW the unit SOP schedule, or more frequently as necessitated by the situation. f. Destroyed all outdated printouts of reports and lists.  * 7. Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1051	Implement Electronic Protections (EPs)	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-500-2300	Operate Communications Security Equipment	
805C-PAD-3591	Protect Classified Information and Materials	STP 21-24-SMCT
805C-PAD-3594	Store Classified Information and Materials	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-990-0005	Enforce Detection Prevention Measures	
191-000-0002	Employ Physical Security Measures	
301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures	
301-371-1051	Enforce Personnel Security Policies	
301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1303.01-0NRC	PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-990-0003	Control Entry into a Restricted Area	
071-990-0005	Enforce Detection Prevention Measures	
191-000-0002	Employ Physical Security Measures	
301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-7102.01-0NRC	SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** DEFEND UNIT POSITION (01-2-0102.01-00CS)  
(FM 6-20) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The battalion/squadron has occupied a forward assembly area (AA), and each company has been assigned a sector to defend. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. The battalion/squadron established immediate 360-degree security. The assembly area was not breached as a result of poor security. The battalion/squadron prepared and implemented a security plan within 1 hour of occupation of the AA.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. +The companies/troops implement the battalion/squadron assembly area security plan.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Occasionally the tactical situation will require the establishment of a separate company/troop assembly area. The same planning considerations will apply to the development of a company/troop security plan.</p> <p>2. +The companies/troops organize security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned sectors of responsibility to platoons.</li> <li>b. Searched the area for mines, boobytraps, or enemy presence.</li> <li>c. Established observation posts/listening posts (OPs/LPs).</li> <li>d. Prepared defensive fighting positions.</li> <li>e. Positioned chemical alarms for nuclear, biological, and chemical defense.</li> <li>f. Positioned crew-served weapons on likely avenues of approach.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Established primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.</li> <li>(2) Ensured that interlocking fires were established, if possible.</li> <li>(3) Prepared range cards.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Continued to improve fighting positions.</li> <li>h. Established communication between OPs, companies/troops, and the main CP headquarters.</li> <li>i. Established communication between OPs, companies/troops, and the main CP.</li> <li>j. Prepared dismount points where necessary.</li> </ul> <p>3. +The companies/troops prepare defensive fire plans.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the locations of all defensive positions and OP/LP's.</li> <li>b. Determined the principle direction of fire and final protective line for all machineguns.</li> <li>c. Ensured overlapping sectors of fire or coverage of dead space with grenade launchers and artillery fire.</li> <li>d. Submitted recommendations for target reference points.</li> <li>e. Forwarded fire plans to battalion/squadron.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. +HHC/HHT organizes a reaction force. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted periodic patrols to locate and neutralize reported OPFOR.</li> <li>b. Established communications with company/troop headquarters.</li> <li>c. Counterattacked intruding OPFOR.</li> </ul> 5. +The companies/troops react to an OPFOR ground attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted the main CP of OPFOR activity.</li> <li>b. Occupied fighting positions.</li> <li>c. Engaged OPFOR IAW rules of engagement, weapons control status, and the unit SOP.</li> <li>d. Alerted aircraft to activate scatter plan IAW the unit standing and operating procedures.</li> <li>e. Formed the reaction force at the designated rally point.</li> <li>f. Reported actions to the main CP.</li> </ul> * 6. Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain	
071-990-0005	Enforce Detection Prevention Measures	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0120.01-00CS	EMPLOY AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Took measures to reduce personnel exposure to dust or mud (closed windows and air vents if mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) permitted).</p> <p>i. Planned for the transport, by aircraft, of all personnel and equipment not essential to the ground move, if exposure was reduced by air transport.</p> <p>j. Started continuous NBC monitoring.</p> <p>k. Completed all normal preparations for a unit move IAW unit SOP.</p> <p>l. Activated NBC overpressurization systems when in the closed hatch position, if applicable.</p> <p>3. +The company/troop conducts move across contaminated area.</p> <p>a. Used movement techniques to minimize dust.</p> <p>b. Maintained intervals that minimized exposure to dust clouds.</p> <p>c. Moved steadily without unnecessary halts or delays while in the contaminated area.</p> <p>d. Continually monitored personnel, detection devices, radiac equipment, and dosimeters for signs of exposure.</p> <p>4. +The company/troop clears the contaminated area.</p> <p>a. Reported clearing to battalion/squadron.</p> <p>b. Submitted NBC-1 report with radiation and/or chemical/biological data.</p> <p>c. Assessed and treated casualties, if applicable.</p> <p>d. Performed immediate decontamination:</p> <p>(1) Removed dust or mud from vehicles and personal equipment.</p> <p>(2) Performed personal equipment decontamination (if necessary).</p> <p>e. Coordinated for operational decontamination (if necessary).</p> <p>f. Reported present personnel and equipment status, if applicable.</p> <p>5. +The company/troop resumes operational missions.</p> <p>* 6. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1047	Process Information during Tactical Operations	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-510-1101	Employ NBC Protection for Aviation Operations	

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-1103	Conduct Aviation Operations in an NBC Environment	
031-503-1013	Decontaminate Yourself and Individual Equipment Using Chemical Decontamination Kits	
031-503-1015	Protect Yourself from NBC Injury/Contamination with the Appropriate Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear	
031-503-1037	Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper	
031-503-2023	Measure Radiation Dose Rate and Total Dose Rate	
031-503-3002	Conduct Unmasking Procedures	
031-503-3004	Supervise Crossing of a Contaminated Area	
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures	
031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	
031-503-7000	Integrate NBC Concepts into Mission Planning	
121-010-8001	Report Casualties	
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Established the aiming point using the "football field" method.</p> <p>(2) Used the "volume of fire" technique to mass small arms fire.</p> <p>(3) Coordinated fires with supporting air defense artillery (ADA) units, if applicable.</p> <p>(4) Engaged aircraft IAW the rules of engagement and weapon control status.</p> <p>i. Reloaded weapons following engagement of the aircraft.</p> <p>j. Assessed damage and casualties.</p> <p>k. Submitted a situation report (SITREP) to the battalion/squadron CP.</p> <p>l. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit position as directed by headquarters.</p> <p>3. +The moving unit takes passive air defense measures against nonattacking hostile aircraft.</p> <p>a. Alerted personnel to potential air threat.</p> <p>b. Posted air guards IAW the SOP.</p> <p>c. Gave air attack alarm as specified in the SOP.</p> <p>d. Moved vehicles to covered, concealed positions; increased dispersion. All personnel prepared to engage aircraft, as directed.</p> <p>e. Dismounted personnel and prepared to engage aircraft.</p> <p>f. Visually identified the hostile aircraft.</p> <p>g. Reported any aircraft action to the battalion/squadron tactical CP.</p> <p>h. Continued to track the hostile aircraft.</p> <p>i. Rallied the convoy after departure of the hostile aircraft and continued the unit move.</p> <p>4. +The moving unit takes active air defense measures against attacking hostile aircraft.</p> <p>a. Gave the air attack alarm IAW the unit SOP.</p> <p>b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in depth; vehicle operators continued to move.</p> <p>c. Moved vehicles to covered, concealed positions, if possible.</p> <p>d. Dismounted personnel and prepared to engage the hostile aircraft.</p> <p>e. Identified the hostile aircraft.</p> <p>f. Engaged the aircraft with all available small arms and crew-served weapons.</p> <p>(1) Established the aiming point using the "football field" method.</p> <p>(2) Used the "volume of fire" technique to mass small arms fire.</p> <p>(3) Coordinated fires with supporting ADA, if applicable.</p> <p>(4) Engaged aircraft IAW the rules of engagement and weapon control status.</p> <p>g. Reloaded weapons following engagement of aircraft.</p> <p>h. Assessed damage and casualties.</p> <p>i. Submitted a SITREP to the battalion/squadron CP.</p> <p>j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit position as directed by headquarters.</p> <p>5. +Company/troop aircraft conducting tactical missions take active air defense measures.</p> <p>a. Performed evasive maneuvers IAW the unit SOP.</p> <p>b. Attempted to use terrain masking.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Fired on attacking aircraft by establishing an aiming point, if possible. d. Rallied aircraft after the departure or destruction of the hostile aircraft, if applicable. e. Submitted a SITREP to the battalion/squadron CP. f. Continued the mission.  * 6. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures. (See appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information	
441-401-0001	Supervise the Implementation of Air Defense Measures	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0102.01-00CS	DEFEND UNIT POSITION	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2048.01-00CS	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Submitted an NBC-1 report if appropriate (personnel observed the chemical/biological attack).</p> <p>h. Stayed covered until the signal was given to uncover.</p> <p>i. Tested the area with detector kits and reported results.</p> <p>j. Marked contaminated areas.</p> <p>4. +Unit NBC teams conduct chemical/biological surveys.</p> <p>a. Conducted the survey using the techniques prescribed by the battalion/squadron chemical officer, or as deemed appropriate by the NBC team chief when operating independently.</p> <p>b. Reported the survey results to the company/troop commander.</p> <p>* 5. The commander conducts post-strike actions.</p> <p>a. Assessed casualties.</p> <p>(1) Treated and evacuated casualties.</p> <p>(2) Reestablished chain of command and cross-leveled personnel.</p> <p>(3) Forwarded casualty feeder report.</p> <p>b. Forwarded NBC-4 report (results of survey) to battalion/squadron headquarters.</p> <p>c. Assessed status of vehicles, equipment, and aircraft.</p> <p>(1) Reported vehicle, equipment, and aircraft status.</p> <p>(2) Returned vehicles, equipment, and aircraft to operable status as soon as possible.</p> <p>6. +Personnel conduct immediate/operational decontamination.</p> <p>a. Decontaminated skin.</p> <p>b. Conducted a wipe down of personal equipment with decontamination kit.</p> <p>c. Conducted a spray down of equipment and vehicles, if possible.</p> <p>d. Marked contaminated runoff areas.</p> <p>* 7. The commander develops a contingency plan.</p> <p>a. Received guidance from battalion/squadron.</p> <p>b. Initiated unmasking procedures.</p> <p>c. Analyzed the mission and conducted troop-leading procedures.</p> <p>d. Prepared to move the company/troop (if necessary).</p> <p>e. Requested thorough decontamination support (if necessary).</p> <p>f. Resumed operational missions.</p> <p>* 8. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-1047	Process Information during Tactical Operations	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation	
011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support	
011-510-1101	Employ NBC Protection for Aviation Operations	
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC Warning and Reporting System	
011-420-1101	Supervise a Unit NBC Defense Program	
031-503-1013	Decontaminate Yourself and Individual Equipment Using Chemical Decontamination kits	
031-503-1015	Protect Yourself from NBC Injury/Contamination with the Appropriate Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear	
031-503-1018	React to a Nuclear Hazard or Attack	
031-503-1019	React to a Chemical or Biological Hazard or Attack	
031-503-1035	Protect Yourself from Chemical/Biological Contamination Using Your Assigned Protective Mask	
031-503-3005	Submit NBC 1 Report	
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures	
031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0115.01-00CS	CROSS A NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC) CONTAMINATED AREA	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0122.01-00CS	PERFORM NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC) DECONTAMINATION	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** PERFORM NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/CHEMICAL (NBC) DECONTAMINATION (01-2-0122.01-00CS)  
(FM 3-5) (FM 3-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Nuclear, biological, or chemical (NBC) contamination has occurred. Time constraints do not allow contamination to decay naturally to a minimally acceptable level. The factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain and weather, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) permit decontamination. Higher level support for decontamination is not available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit decontaminated to a negligible risk within the time specified in the commander's guidance. There were no personnel casualties or damage to equipment resulting from any part of the decontamination process. No contamination was spread to personnel, equipment, or to the environment except that which was deemed as acceptable in the risk assessment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> Steps and performance measures referring to aircraft, aircrews, or aircraft specific equipment apply only to units with organic aircraft.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The commander directs unit personnel to perform individual decontamination.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Began decontamination as soon as the situation permitted.</li> <li>b. Ensured contaminants were removed and controlled.</li> <li>c. Directed MOPP gear exchange using buddy teams (if available).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The commander directs decontamination of vehicles, equipment, and aircraft.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervised the washing of vehicles, equipment, and aircraft.</li> <li>b. Used field-expedient techniques, such as driving through a stream or using water from a fire hydrant, if available, and the contamination runoff was acceptable.</li> <li>c. Ensured controls were in place to maintain separation between "dirty" and "clean" equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. + NBC personnel update the unit radiation status (for radiological contamination only).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined present degree and extent of existing hazard using the AN/PDR-27.</li> <li>b. Read dosimeter.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Averaged the total dose.</li> <li>(2) Rounded off reading to nearest centigray.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Reported results to the commander.</li> <li>d. Zeroed all dosimeters, using PP-1578-A.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. +The company/troop continues the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Covered, marked, and reported contaminated runoff.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Ensured that the operation exposure guidance (OEG) was not exceeded. c. Monitored decontaminated personnel with the AN/PDR-27 for level of contamination. d. Repeated decontamination as necessary. e. Updated the unit radiation exposure status (RES), and continuously compared the RES with the OEG. f. Continued to monitor NBC situation. (1) Sought and received information from higher headquarters. (2) Used assigned NBC equipment to monitor current situation and detected changes.  * 5. + Commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1047	Process Information during Tactical Operations	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-510-1100	Determine Aircraft Decontamination Levels and Procedures	
031-503-2023	Measure Radiation Dose Rate and Total Dose Rate	
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures	
031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	
031-503-3014	Supervise Decontamination Procedures	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0115.01-00CS	CROSS A NUCLEAR/ BIOLOGICAL/ CHEMICAL (NBC) CONTAMINATED AREA	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS (01-2-0201.01-00CS)  
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The use of OPFOR nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons is possible. NBC alert status has been issued in accordance with (IAW) unit standing operating procedures (SOPs). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. Actions taken by the unit limited the effects of an NBC attack.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. + The commander ensures accountability and serviceability of NBC defense equipment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed that NBC detection equipment was issued to trained operators.</li> <li>b. Ensured that NBC detection equipment was employed and operational immediately after notification.</li> </ul> 2. + The company/troop takes action to protect itself against NBC attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared protective shelters for personnel with overhead cover.</li> <li>b. Placed all equipment and supplies under cover.</li> <li>c. Secured or tied down all loose equipment.</li> <li>d. Briefed soldiers and reviewed the unit SOP.</li> <li>e. Assumed the designated mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) level.</li> </ul> * 3. +The commander adjusts MOPP level based upon MOPP analysis/guidance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented MOPP level directives.</li> <li>b. Analyzed company/troop status and mission.</li> </ul> * 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-420-1101	Supervise a Unit NBC Defense Program	
031-503-1015	Protect Yourself from NBC Injury/Contamination with the Appropriate Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear	
031-503-1019	React to a Chemical or Biological Hazard or Attack	
031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	
031-503-4002	Prepare a Unit for NBC Attack	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1303.01-00CS	CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0121.01-00CS	RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR/ BIOLOGICAL/ CHEMICAL (NBC) ATTACK	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0115.01-00CS	CROSS A NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/ CHEMICAL (NBC) CONTAMINATED AREA	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0122.01-00CS	PERFORM NUCLEAR/BIOLOGICAL/ CHEMICAL (NBC) DECONTAMINATION	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT (01-2-0203.01-0NRC)  
(FM 21-75) (FM 20-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion/squadron is in an assembly area or companies/troops are operating autonomously and are in a stationary position. The OPFOR possesses air and ground surveillance capability. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPPA.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit location is not compromised as a result of improper or inadequate camouflage.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +Leaders select concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured vehicle tracks followed terrain features such as edge of wood lines and fields.</li> <li>b. Ensured vehicle tracks continued past the parking spot to another logical location.</li> <li>c. Ensured personnel used concealed routes when possible.</li> <li>d. Ensured all vehicles followed in the same tracks.</li> <li>e. Ensured all tracks that led into concealed positions are removed.</li> <li>f. Ensured vehicles and equipment were positioned under cover or in shadows whenever possible.</li> <li>g. Ensured vehicle positions used natural surroundings for concealment.</li> <li>h. Ensured vehicle positions avoided terrain features (hilltops, road intersections, etc.) that the enemy could use as reference points.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +Personnel conceal vehicles and equipment.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used natural material to break up shapes or shadows.</li> <li>b. Ensured natural materials blended with the surroundings.</li> <li>c. Changed natural material regularly when it wilted or discolored.</li> <li>d. Used camouflage screen systems and other manmade materials to enhance natural camouflage.</li> <li>e. Covered or subdued all shiny surfaces such as windows, mirrors, metal, headlights, etc.</li> <li>f. Kept heat sources (generators, engines, mess areas, etc.) under cover when possible to reduce thermal and noise signatures.</li> <li>g. Buried cables and wires, as appropriate.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. +Personnel enforce noise, light, and litter discipline.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used only vehicle blackout lights from dusk to dawn.</li> <li>b. Ensured that all lighted work areas were completely shielded.</li> <li>c. Muffled or masked noise that could not be eliminated.</li> <li>d. Stored or buried litter.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. + The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-990-0005	Enforce Detection Prevention Measures	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0120.01-00CS	EMPLOY AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES (01-2-2035.01-0NRC)  
(FM 1-111) (FM 100-14) (FM 3-0)  
(FM 34-130)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has issued an OPORD/FRAGO. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** There were no casualties or equipment damage due to inadequate fratricide prevention planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The commander completes the fratricide risk assessment matrix.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed situational awareness.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Evaluated fire and maneuver control by assessing density of forces versus clarity of the situation.</li> <li>(2) Evaluated the fire distribution plan by comparing available rehearsal time verses collective proficiency, and navigation difficulty.</li> <li>(3) Evaluated potential navigation problems by assessing reconnaissance and intelligence versus visibility and navigation difficulty.</li> <li>(4) Evaluated fire control and battle tracking.</li> <li>(5) Evaluated battlefield hazards by comparing use of dud-producing munitions versus knowledge of existing hazards.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Assessed combat identification measures; identified friendly recognition and marking system.</li> <li>c. Assessed fire control discipline.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Evaluated command and control measures.</li> <li>(2) Reviewed the rules of engagement (ROE).</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Assessed personnel and leadership preparedness.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Evaluated mission-related experience and competence.</li> <li>(2) Considered soldier and leader fatigue and stress factors.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 2. +The commander takes appropriate measures to reduce the risk of fratricide.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enforced the fire and maneuver plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Low—Conducted back-briefs; supervised combat preparation.</li> <li>(2) Caution—Used a limited visibility rehearsal, clarified the intent of operations, and cross-trained soldiers/crews on critical tasks.</li> <li>(3) High—Rehearsed adjacent and converging task forces. Used liaison personnel, if available, to confirm ground unit maneuver plan and locations.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Enforced the fire distribution plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Low—Ensured all ground AA missions, passage in and out of areas, and how fire controls were briefed and/or rehearsed.</p> <p>(2) Caution—Ensured that ground and flight weapons status were appropriate. Modified task organization and implemented a limited visibility plan.</p> <p>(3) High—Modified plans, simplified coordination between air and ground forces.</p> <p>c. Rehearsed land navigation.</p> <p>(1) Low—Conducted map reconnaissance, covered the impact of terrain, weather, and enemy.</p> <p>(2) Caution—Used redundant navigation aids, ground guides, night vision aids; marked enemy and friendly positions.</p> <p>(3) High—Assigned navigation responsibilities to multiple crews (redundancy); conducted route reconnaissance whenever possible.</p> <p>d. Emphasized fire control and battle tracking.</p> <p>(1) Low—Coordinated positive clearance of fires; made communications checks, and back briefed fire support.</p> <p>(2) Caution—Coordinated positive clearance of fires, used SOP, guides, beacons, and vectoring where available.</p> <p>(3) High—Coordinated positive clearance of fires, established liaison with the ground unit.</p> <p>e. Combated battlefield hazards.</p> <p>(1) Low—Instilled safety discipline; ensured that all known hazards were identified and disseminated.</p> <p>(2) Caution—Considered all contingency plans, actions at hazards and equipment limitations.</p> <p>(3) High—Established intermediate objectives or control points, considered special logistic and/or maintenance actions, and coordinated a detailed deception plan.</p> <p>f. Briefed combat identification.</p> <p>(1) Low—Rehearsed combat vehicle identification skills.</p> <p>(2) Caution—Used and recognized Identification, friend or foe and expedient measures for exposed elements.</p> <p>(3) High—Used and recognized clear, infrared friendly markings, and used multiple recognition signals.</p> <p>g. Rehearsed the fire control discipline.</p> <p>(1) Low—Reviewed the ROE, and enforced the challenge or password discipline.</p> <p>(2) Caution—Simplified the plan, modified the ROE.</p> <p>(3) High—Rotated high-stress positions, augmented door gunners.</p> <p>h. Confirmed soldiers' and leaders' preparedness.</p> <p>(1) Low—Followed full troop-leading process, and established sleep plan/crew rest criteria IAW unit SOP.</p> <p>(2) Caution—Emphasized the troop-leading process, refreshed mission-specific skills, and controlled the pace in execution.</p> <p>(3) High—Prioritized tasks and rehearsals, gave FRAGO only for an emergency, and avoided requirements that exceeded training level.</p> <p>* 3. + The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0505	Conduct Company-Level Rehearsals /AARs	
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1303.01-00CS	CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S1 SECTION

**TASK:** COORDINATE PRE-DEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES (01-1-0062.01-0NRC)  
 (FM 12-6) (AR 220-10) (AR 25-400-2)  
 (FM 100-17) (FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron has received deployment orders. It has the movement directive and the preparation for overseas movement (POM) information message, and continuously receives messages from the installation emergency operations center (EOC), the installation transportation office, the deployment support organization, the appropriate headquarters, and subordinate units. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All assigned personnel were administratively prepared for deployment within the time frame specified by the commander.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The S1 supervises personnel readiness actions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed personnel screening.</li> <li>b. Certified personnel qualified for deployment.</li> <li>c. Recommended the disposition of personnel on temporary duty, attending schools, or in authorized leave status according to commander's guidance.</li> <li>d. Recommended cross-leveling actions to the commander.</li> <li>e. Coordinated personnel replacement and disposition of excess and nondeployable personnel.</li> <li>f. Identified and reported shortages in critical military occupational specialties.</li> <li>g. Redistributed personnel based on the commander's guidance.</li> <li>h. Briefed rear detachment personnel.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The S1 plans the POM.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed the movement directive, movement plan/order, POM information message, and standing operating procedures to identify processing and personnel service requirements.</li> <li>b. Established support requirements.</li> <li>c. Published the POM plan.</li> <li>d. Briefed the command group.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the POM with brigade/regimental S1.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The S1 coordinates POM requirements and functions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated personnel service company support.</li> <li>b. Coordinated legal support.</li> <li>c. Coordinated medical and dental support.</li> <li>d. Coordinated Red Cross support.</li> <li>e. Coordinated religious support.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with the provost marshal for privately owned vehicle storage.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. +The S1 section participates in the POM process.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed soldiers on the POM process.</li> <li>b. Issued the POM checklist.</li> <li>c. Reviewed family care plans.</li> <li>d. Reviewed pay elections.</li> <li>e. Assisted soldiers in the completion of postal forms.</li> <li>f. Reviewed the POM checklist for completeness.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The S1 briefs family members.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated installation support.</li> <li>b. Established briefing site and schedules.</li> <li>c. Published a family support packet.</li> <li>d. Provided rear detachment points of contact.</li> </ul> <p>6. The personnel staff noncommissioned officer (PSNCO) provides records management.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified personnel records to accompany units.</li> <li>b. Identified records to be transferred to records holding area.</li> <li>c. Provided the S3 with records management input to the rear detachment plan.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0300	Coordinate Staff Duties/Responsibilities in Tactical Units	
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support	
011-530-0009	Direct Aviation Staff Functions	
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status	
121-008-1496	Supervise the Implementation of Financial Readiness Actions	
121-010-3095	Coordinate Unit Deployment Readiness Activities	
121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting	

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
121-010-8015	Recommend Administrative and Personnel Actions	
121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administration Functions	
152-100-0002	Perform Tasks in a Civilian/Military Work-group	
224-300-2000	Implement a Public Affairs Plan	
301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0702.01-00CS	PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMMUNICATIONS SECTION

**TASK:** PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT (01-1-0111.01-00CS)  
 (FM 4-30.3) (FM 11-43)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The communications plan and paragraph 5b of the OPORD have been approved. They serve as the basis for communications support during mission preparation and execution. These actions take place under the S3's coordinating staff supervision over S6/signal officer (SIGO) activities. In turn, the S6/SIGO exercises staff supervision over the communications activities of the command's communications section and subordinate and attached communications elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. Signal personnel maintain and monitor communications operations IAW appropriate FMs and unit TSOPs. The approved communications plan is modified as required by the evolving tactical situation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S-6/signal officer exercises technical and tactical supervision over command signal activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated, directed, and monitored the establishment and maintenance of battalion communications systems, networks, and facilities, to include primary and alternate voice and digital communications.</li> <li>b. Implemented communications guidance and monitored adherence to communications discipline, such as:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Listening silence during displacements.</li> <li>(2) Emergency destruction of cryptographic equipment or keying material as required by the situation.</li> <li>(3) Development and dissemination of circuit and traffic diagrams and line-route maps.</li> <li>(4) Maintenance, issue, and accounting for unit SOIs in accordance with regulations.</li> <li>(5) Maintenance and updating of equipment and circuit status logs.</li> <li>(6) Distribution of SOIs and telephone directories.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Monitored changes in communications mission requirements.</li> <li>d. Monitored the establishment of internal wire communications as required by unit TSOP.</li> <li>e. Supervised the integration of communications systems with higher, lower, and adjacent headquarters.</li> <li>f. Integrated host nation and allied signal interfaces when needed.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. +The communications section chief selects site for equipment placement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured location provided the best cover and concealment possible.</li> <li>b. Ensured location provided the best possible physical security.</li> <li>c. Ensured location had access to at least one escape route</li> </ul> <p>3. +The communications section provides retransmission support.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected site for antenna.</li> <li>b. Installed and operated a secure retransmission station.</li> <li>c. Established/maintained physical security/control of COMSEC materials and documents containing essential elements of friendly information (EEFI).</li> <li>d. Installed generator set if required.</li> </ul> <p>4. The communications section extends the range of the retrans station if required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected site for antenna installation.</li> <li>b. Assembled antenna components.</li> <li>c. When using RC-292 antenna, ensured the number of antenna sections used for the radiating and ground plane elements conform to the operating frequency.</li> <li>d. Erected antenna using team method.</li> <li>e. Accomplished the transition from whip to RC-292/OE-254 antenna without unnecessary interruption of service.</li> </ul> <p>5. The communications section employs preventive electronic countercounter-measures (ECCM) procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Transmitted quickly and precisely.</li> <li>b. Used low power when possible.</li> <li>c. Used antenna with shortest feasible range.</li> <li>d. Selected site that masked signal from enemy interception.</li> <li>e. Used proper radio telephone operator procedures.</li> <li>f. Encrypted all EEFI category data.</li> <li>g. Authenticated when using nonsecure communications means.</li> </ul> <p>6. The communications section establishes voice radio net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Installed radio set.</li> <li>b. Performed before operation PMCS.</li> <li>c. Set assigned frequency.</li> <li>d. Made required settings.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Checked for proper cable connections.</li> <li>(2) Loaded variables in required encryption devices.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>7. +The communications section prepares physical security plan.</p> <p>8. The communications section operates radio set.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used low power.</li> <li>b. Established contact.</li> <li>c. Entered net.</li> <li>d. Performed during operations PMCS.</li> <li>e. Made the radio set remote, if required.</li> <li>f. Extended the range of the radio station.</li> <li>g. Installed generator set if required.</li> <li>h. Employed preventive ECCM techniques.</li> <li>i. Implemented remedial ECCM techniques.</li> <li>j. Assumed the duties of net control station.</li> <li>k. Initiated net call.</li> <li>l. Controlled entry and departure of stations in the net.</li> <li>m. Monitored the net and corrected errors in operating procedures.</li> <li>n. Imposed or lifted listening silence.</li> <li>o. Closed the net.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
p. Maintained radio equipment. * 9. +The S6/signal officer provides C <sup>2</sup> automation support. a. Coordinated and organized all tactical automation in support of battalion C <sup>2</sup> systems. b. Coordinated system upgrades, replacements, integration, and evacuation with higher HQ. c. Developed command information systems and the integration of databases for newly assigned and attached units. *10. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0014	Employ Aviation Command, Control, and Communications (C <sup>3</sup> ) Operations	
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-510-1301	Supervise Ground Maintenance Operations	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Supervised preparation of reports. e. Planned and coordinated supply, services and maintenance support. f. Provided logistics information to the TOC, as appropriate. g. Maintained status of all vehicles and aircraft.  * 4. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures (appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support	
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities	
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)	
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/ Responsibilities	
011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support.	
011-540-0008	Supervise the Unit Level Logistics System—Aviation (ULLS-A)	
011-540-0010	Coordinate Supply functions with Supply Support Activities (SSA)	
011-540-0016	Monitor the Standard Army Retail Supply System (SARSS1-0).	
011-540-0022	Supervise Aircraft Readiness Reporting	
011-540-0029	Supervise the Preparation of Maintenance Forms and Records	
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain	
121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administration Functions	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1303.01-00CS	CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1401.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1405.01-00CS	COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1406.01-00CS	PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S1 SECTION

**TASK:** PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT (01-1-1102.01-0NRC)  
 (FM 101-5) (FM 100-14) (FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The S1 section is operational and is located at the administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC). The command and control strength reporting system is in effect. Reports are received daily from subordinate units. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Reports were forwarded within the prescribed time limits specified in the unit SOP. There were no discrepancies between reported personnel strength and actual numbers of personnel present for duty or accounted for.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The S1 section performs unit strength accounting.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received unit strength reports from subordinate units.</li> <li>b. Verified accuracy of reports using tactical reports, battalion/squadron aid station reports, and other sources of information.</li> <li>c. Determined critical shortages by military occupational specialty (MOS) and grade.</li> <li>d. Determined critical MOS replacement requirements and priorities.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with the S1s of units providing attachments.</li> <li>f. Prepared a consolidated battalion/squadron personnel status report.</li> <li>g. Forwarded the consolidated report to the brigade/regimental S1 strength management section, as required by the SOP.</li> <li>h. Briefed the commander and staff daily.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The S1 section prepares the periodic personnel report (PPR).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured the timely receipt of accurate personnel report input for all assigned, attached, and reporting units.</li> <li>b. Prepared the PPR.</li> <li>c. Assigned the appropriate security classification to the report.</li> <li>d. Prepared additional annexes to the report, as necessary.</li> <li>e. Submitted the PPR to higher headquarters IAW the unit SOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The S1 maintains unit strength.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested, received, and assigned replacement personnel.</li> <li>b. Recommended cross-leveling actions to the commander.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S1 SECTION

**TASK:** CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS (01-1-1103.01-0NRC)  
 (FM 12-6) (FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The S1 section is located at the administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC). The S1 section is operational. The command and control strength reporting system is in effect. The unit is equipped with the Tactical Army Combat Service Support Computer System (TACCS). Replacements arrive with a full issue of equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Replacements are processed and transported to assigned units within 6 hours of their arrival and IAW the unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. +The personnel administration center (PAC) conducts administrative processing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed assignment orders.</li> <li>b. Welcomed soldiers to the unit.</li> <li>c. Assigned soldiers to units according to the commander's priorities.</li> <li>d. Signed soldiers in on DA Forms 647 (Personnel Register).</li> <li>e. Collected medical and dental records.</li> <li>f. Turned in medical and dental records to the battalion/squadron/supporting aid station.</li> <li>g. Added names to the battle roster.</li> <li>h. Prepared the Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) input.</li> <li>i. Prepared DA Forms 3955 (Change of Address and Directory Card).</li> <li>j. Forwarded DA Forms 3955 to servicing postal activity.</li> </ul> 2. +The S1 conducts replacement coordination with supporting and supported units. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notified subordinate units.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the S4 for transportation support.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the S4 for personnel and weapons systems replacement.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the S4 regarding equipment issue, feeding, and rest areas.</li> </ul> * 3. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status	
121-010-8001	Report Casualties	
121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting	
121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administration Functions	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1102.01-0NRC	PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1105.01-0NRC	PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1303.01-00CS	CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Provided update to the post locator.		
* 4. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/ Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support	
011-510-1500	Prepare Military Correspondence	
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status	
121-010-8001	Report Casualties	
121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting	
121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administration Functions	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1102.01-0NRC	PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1103.01-0NRC	CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1105.01-0NRC	PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2064.01-00CS	PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-7707.01-00CS	EVACUATE CASUALTIES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-1110.01-00CS	IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Provided appropriate security for all mail until delivered to soldiers or returned to supporting postal facility.</li> <li>c. Delivered mail to addressees as soon as the tactical situation permitted; returned undeliverable mail.</li> </ul> <p>6. The S1 section legal specialist provides legal support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the staff judge advocate (SJA) for personal legal assistance to unit personnel.</li> <li>b. Prepared judicial and nonjudicial proceedings documents.</li> <li>c. Processed all appeals.</li> </ul> <p>7. The S1 section performs common administrative functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Processed DA Forms 31 (Request Authority for Leave) and annotated DA Forms 4179-R (Leave Control Log).</li> <li>b. Maintained duty rosters.</li> <li>c. Prepared military correspondence.</li> <li>d. Maintained required functional files.</li> <li>e. Prepared and submitted recurring reports outlined in the unit SOP.</li> <li>f. Maintained required regulations and SOPs.</li> <li>g. Maintained blank forms and references required to perform administrative functions.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. +The S1 coordinates with the brigade/regimental S1 for medical and dental support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified specific support requirements.</li> <li>b. Determined the number of personnel to be supported.</li> <li>c. Identified special equipment requirements.</li> </ul> <p>* 9. The S1 coordinates with the chaplain for support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Specified location of unit requesting services.</li> <li>b. Determined the type of services needed.</li> <li>c. Determined the time available to the unit for services and counseling.</li> <li>d. Identified casualties requiring special ministering.</li> <li>e. Identified refugees and detainees requiring ministering.</li> </ul> <p>*10. The S1 provides morale support or coordinates for support from division G1 or brigade/regimental S1.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested satellite phone link in combat zone to facilitate soldiers' communication with home and families.</li> <li>b. Arranged for United Services Organization (USO)-related attractions that could be attended by unit soldiers.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the division G1 for audiovisual entertainment.</li> <li>d. Obtained recreational equipment.</li> <li>e. Coordinated rest &amp; relaxation (R&amp;R), leave, and other morale activities when the unit left combat.</li> <li>f. Coordinated for mobile PX support in the unit assembly areas.</li> </ul> <p>*11. The S1 provides morale and welfare report to the commander.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the SJA and legal clerk for Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ) status.</li> <li>b. Reviewed AWOL and desertion rates for each subordinate unit.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Obtained crime and straggler rates from division G1 or brigade/regimental S1. d. Reviewed sick call and stress casualty rate from battalion/squadron surgeon. e. Reported on awards and promotions. f. Reported on morale enhancing activities. g. Determined the overall status of unit morale.  *12. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties /Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support	
011-510-1500	Prepare Military Correspondence	
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status	
121-010-8015	Recommend Administrative and Personnel Actions	
121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administration Functions	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-0062.01-0NRC	COORDINATE PRE-DEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1103.01-0NRC	CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support.	
011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support	
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/ Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-510-1300	Supervise Aviation Maintenance Operations	
011-510-1301	Supervise Ground Maintenance Operations	
011-540-0005	Supervise Aviation Property Accountability	
011-540-0007	Supervise Unit Class IX Repair Parts Procedures	
011-540-0008	Supervise the Unit Level Logistics System—Aviation (ULLS-A)	
011-540-0016	Monitor the Standard Army Retail Supply System (SARSS1-0).	
011-540-0026	Coordinate with Corpus Christi Army Depot (CCAD)	
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status	
101-92Y-0001	Supervise Supply Activities	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1023.01-00CS	ESTABLISH AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1405.01-00CS	COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0320.01-0NRC	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support	
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/ Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-540-0005	Supervise Aviation Property Accountability	
011-540-0022	Supervise Aircraft Readiness Reporting	
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1401.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1402.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S4 SECTION

**TASK:** COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT (01-1-1405.01-00CS)  
 (FM 100-10) (FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:**                                    1    2    3    4    5    M    (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:**                                    T    P    U    (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The battalion/squadron has published an OPORD/FRAGO. Combat service support (CSS) assets are available. External transportation assets are needed to support missions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. The proper type and number of transportation assets were available as a result of accurate staff assessments by the S4. Supporting units were given adequate time to plan and prepare for the missions as a result of timely coordination by the S4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +The S4 determines transportation requirements. a. Reviewed the concept of the operation with the S3 and other staff sections. b. Analyzed the capabilities of available organic transportation assets. c. Determined external transportation requirements.  * 2. +The S4 requests and allocates external transportation assets. a. Coordinated external transportation assets with the support organization. b. Received and allocated external transportation assets. c. Prepared movement plans and orders. d. Recommended procedures, to the commander, for controlling transportation assets and the priority of movement for subordinate units.  * 3. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support	
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/ Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-540-0033	Supervise Shipment of Army Aircraft	
551-88N-0003	Plan Unit Movement	
551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1023.01-00CS	ESTABLISH AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1303.01-00CS	CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1406.01-00CS	PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0320.01-0NRC	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S4 SECTION

**TASK:** PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES (01-1-1406.01-00CS)  
 (FM 100-10) (FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The battalion/squadron has published an OPORD/FRAGO. Combat service support (CSS) assets are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. Mission accomplishment was enhanced by adequate coordination of logistical services.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The S4 section plans and coordinates the construction and maintenance of facilities (except fortifications and signal facilities).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the situation and the commander's intent.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with engineers for assets to perform construction.</li> <li>c. Evaluated and coordinated the use of local civilians, if available and required.</li> <li>d. Provided real property control.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with and provided priorities to engineer assets and/or local civilian agencies.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The S4 section coordinates and provides personnel services.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated for bath and laundry services.</li> <li>b. Provided personnel clothing exchange.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. +The S4 coordinates and augments graves registration (GRREG) functions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received information and intelligence on area of search, and analyzed the factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain and weather, time available, and civilian considerations.</li> <li>b. Issued instructions to subordinate units to include:                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Nuclear, biological, and chemical reconnaissance and security area.</li> <li>(2) Chaplain support.</li> <li>(3) GRREG unit augmentation.   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Search.</li> <li>(b) Recovery.</li> <li>(c) Burial and/or transport of remains.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Prepared DD Forms 565 (Statement of Recognition of Deceased) and DD Forms 567 (Record of Search and Recovery).</li> <li>d. Secured personal effects to remains.</li> <li>e. Completed emergency burial data.</li> <li>f. Prepared a DD Form 551 (Record of Interment).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support	
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/ Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support.	
101-515-0002	Plan Mortuary Affairs Support Functions	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1023.01-00CS	ESTABLISH AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1405.01-00CS	COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0320.01-0NRC	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. + The company/troop stages equipment and personnel for deployment. a. Moved vehicles, personnel, and equipment to the staging area. b. Conducted pre-mission planning and repositioned aircraft to staging area, if applicable.  5. + The company/troop deploys aircraft, personnel and equipment. <b>NOTE:</b> Units will deploy by rail, ground, ship, United States Air Force (USAF) aircraft, or self-deploy. Actual deployment procedures will be coordinated based upon mission and mode of deployment.  * 6. + The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
154-385-6465	Employ the Risk Management Process during Mission Planning	STP 21-24-SMCT
011-420-0028	Plan Aviation Deployment	
011-540-0033	Supervise Shipment of Army Aircraft	
091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status	
121-010-3095	Coordinate Unit Deployment Readiness Activities	
551-88N-0002	Prepare for Unit Movement	
551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** PERFORM FIELD SANITATION (01-2-0715.01-0NRC)  
(FM 21-10-1) (AR 40-5) (FM 21-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated combat environment. The unit does not have access to permanent sanitation, mess, or water facilities. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Any degradation of unit operation tempo was not a result of poor health or illness caused by inadequate field sanitation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander appoints a field sanitation team (FST). 2. + The FST monitors field sanitation. a. Inspected water for potability. b. Inspected prescribed load of water purification materials. c. Inspected use of protective measures against disease-carrying organisms (i.e., rodents, insects, etc.). d. Enforced personal hygiene measures. e. Inspected latrines and urinals. f. Inspected hand-washing facilities. g. Inspected waste disposal procedures. h. Inspected food transport, maintenance, preparation, and service. i. Enforced heat, cold, and noise prevention measures. 3. + The FST provides information on field sanitation status. a. Determined deficiencies. b. Reported deficiencies. c. Provided recommendations and training. * 4. + The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
081-831-1047	Supervise the Implementation of Preventive Medicine Policies	
081-831-9000	Implement Preventive Medicine Measures	
081-831-9023	Enforce Preventive Medicine Measures for Protection against Disease and Nonbattle Injuries	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
101-92Y-0001	Supervise Supply Activities	
101-92Y-0002	Supervise Supply Activities in a Unit	
101-92Y-0003	Supervise Supply Operations at the Company Level	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1402.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. + The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
101-92Y-0003	Supervises Supply Operations at the Company Level	
121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1103.01-0NRC	CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1104.01-00CS	CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-510-0502	Supervise Company-Level Maintenance	
011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support	
081-831-9000	Implement Preventive Medicine Measures	
091-357-0001	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	
091-900-0006	Direct Unit Maintenance Operations	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** EVACUATE CASUALTIES (01-2-7707.01-00CS)  
(FM 8-10-6)

**ITERATION:**                                    1    2    3    4    5    M    (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:**                                    T    P    U    (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/company is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has incurred casualties. The assembly area is secure and the main CP and the battalion/company aid station are operational. The medical team is available to provide emergency medical aid and evacuation of casualties. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. Casualties receive immediate first aid when brought to the casualty collection point. Casualties are evacuated by the most expeditious manner available. All classified/sensitive documents are removed from casualties and secured.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: Steps and performance measures referring to medics or medical personnel apply only to units with organic medics.</p> <p>* 1. +The commander/first sergeant develops the casualty evacuation plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted the medical treatment team of impending casualties.</li> <li>b. Determined assets needed to evacuate casualties.</li> <li>c. Confirmed primary and alternate evacuation routes (if by vehicle).</li> <li>d. Coordinated air evacuation (if tactical situation permits).</li> <li>e. Designated separate holding areas for contaminated and uncontaminated killed in action personnel.</li> <li>f. Designated a holding area and security plan for enemy prisoner of war casualties.</li> <li>g. Provided vehicles and/or aircraft to battalion/squadron, as required.</li> <li>h. Coordinated with higher headquarters for support in the event of civilian casualties.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The medics process casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the condition of casualties and prioritized injuries.</li> <li>b. Separated nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contaminated casualties from uncontaminated casualties.</li> <li>c. Treated the most seriously wounded patients first.</li> <li>d. Stabilized patients to prevent further injury.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Stopped the bleeding.</li> <li>(2) Prevented/treated shock.</li> <li>(3) Splinted broken bones.</li> <li>(4) Administered painkillers.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>3. +The unit personnel search casualties for sensitive or confidential information or equipment and secure the information and equipment.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. +Company personnel prepare for air evacuation (if tactical situation permits).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the number and status of casualties.</li> <li>b. Secured landing zones.</li> <li>c. Guided inbound aircraft to the pickup zone.</li> <li>d. Assisted in loading casualties.</li> <li>e. Evacuated casualties with appropriate personal NBC equipment.</li> </ul> <p>5. The unit forwards DA Forms 1155 (Witness Statement on Individual) and DA Forms 1156 (Casualty Feeder Report) to battalion S1.</p> <p>6. Commander or leader supervises evacuation of casualties and remains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified evacuation requirements.</li> <li>b. Coordinated additional support requirements with battalion S1.</li> <li>c. Requested evacuation of casualties and remains from battalion S1.</li> <li>d. Provided pickup site location and area security status.</li> <li>e. Forwarded spot casualty and casualty feeder reports and witness statements to battalion S1.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. +Commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
081-831-1000	Evaluate a Casualty	
121-010-8001	Report Casualties	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) TEAM

**TASK:** INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)2 (01-4-0022.01-00CS)  
(FM 1-120) (TM 11-5825-255-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The air traffic services (ATS) unit has coordinated with supported units and forwarded required airspace information data to the Tactical Airspace Integration System (TAIS)—Army Airspace Command and Control (A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>) and Airspace Information Center (AIC) teams. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. The team installed, to an operational status, the AN/TRN-30(V)2 (tactical and semi-fixed mode) within 90 minutes. The AN/TRN-30(2) must be flight checked and the appropriate packets submitted before it can be used in IFR conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The team leader selects equipment site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured the site provided the best cover and concealment possible consistent with reliable transmission and reception.</li> <li>b. Verified cover and concealment at first light if site was established during darkness.</li> <li>c. Ensured optimal use of terrain against electronic attack.</li> <li>d. Ensured freedom of interference from power lines and other sources of frequency interference.</li> <li>e. Ensured physical security.</li> <li>f. Provided for at least one alternate route for displacement in case of attack.</li> <li>g. Provided for adequate water drainage.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The team installs AN/TRN-30(V)2.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured all equipment components were on hand.</li> <li>b. Installed ground sheet.</li> <li>c. Assembled and erected antenna mast.</li> <li>d. Connected ground radials.</li> <li>e. Connected battery/external power source.</li> <li>f. Connected external power cables to external power source.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Both the beacon and the external power source MUST be grounded.</p> <p>3. +The team operates the AN/TRN-30(V)2.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set appropriate beacon frequency and code.</li> <li>b. Ensured mode selection and antenna switch were set.</li> <li>c. Set power switch to ON.</li> <li>d. Observed voltage meter needle was in the green zone.</li> <li>e. Observed RF needle was in the green zone and fluctuated.</li> <li>f. Set code rate control.</li> </ul> <p>4. +The team maintains the AN/TRN-30(V)2.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Performed operator preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS). b. Cleaned equipment as needed.  * 5. +The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-5050	Install Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or AN/TRN-30(V)2	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5051	Operate Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or (V)2	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5054	Prepare the Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or (V)2, for Movement	STP 1-93C1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-4-0025.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TSC 61B	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0117.01-00CS	INSTALL THE TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM (TAIS) AN/TSQ-221	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0118.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (TAIS-AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0119.01-00CS	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Checked the voltage/frequency phase monitor. d. Ensured that radios were off.  4. +The team operates the AN/TSC-61B. a. Placed the main circuit breaker to on. b. Placed the remaining AC circuit breakers to on, as required. c. Set the DC power supply switch to auto. d. Turned the DC voltage adjust controls to the extreme left. e. Started the DC power supplies. f. Adjusted DC output to 28.0 volts. g. Placed the appropriate DC circuit breakers to on, as required. h. Energized the radio sets.  5. +The team maintains the AN/TSC-61B. a. Performed operator preventive maintenance check services (PMCS). b. Cleaned the equipment and shelter, as needed.  6. +The team installs a nondirectional beacon, as required.  * 7. +The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-0009	Prepare the Flight Coordination Central, AN/TSC-61B, for Movement	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0016	Install the Flight Coordination Central, AN/TSQ-61B	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-3001	Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-0052.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0111.01-00CS	PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0117.01-00CS	INSTALL THE TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM (TAIS) AN/TSQ-221	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0118.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (TAIS-AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0119.01-00CS	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0124.01-00CS	OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-3001.01-00CS	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS-ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** GCA TEAMS

**TASK:** INSTALL THE LANDING CONTROL CENTRAL AN/TSQ-71 SERIES (01-4-0029.01-00CS)  
 (TM 11-5895-474-12) (FM 1-120) (FM 1-303)  
 (TM 95-225) (TM 95-226)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The unit has coordinated with the supported aviation unit and forwarded required airspace data to the appropriate units. The ground control approach (GCA) team and the communications and navigation maintenance (COM/NAV) section have deployed to the airfield/landing site. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. The GCA team and COM/NAV section installed the landing control central, AN/TSQ-71 series, and related components to operational status, camouflaged it, and performed all preventive maintenance checks and services within 7 hours.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The GCA team leader reviews Army Tactical Command and Control System products for situational awareness.</li> <li>* 2. +The GCA team leader reviews Digital Topographic Support System and Integrated Meteorological System products to support site selection and preparation.</li> <li>* 3. +The GCA team leader selects the equipment site.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured the site provided the best cover and concealment consistent with reliable transmission and reception requirements.</li> <li>b. Ensured optimal use of terrain against electronic attack.</li> <li>c. Ensured freedom of interference from power lines or other sources of friendly frequency interference.</li> <li>d. Ensured physical security.</li> <li>e. Planned for at least one alternate route for displacement in case of attack.</li> <li>f. Provided for adequate water drainage.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. +The GCA team and COM/NAV section install the AN/TSQ-71 series and related components.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Installed the AN/TSQ-71B and generator.</li> <li>b. Installed the AN/TPN-18A.</li> <li>c. Installed the AN/TPX-44.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. +The GCA team operates the AN/TSQ-71 series.</li> <li>* 6. +The GCA team leader develops terminal en route procedures and submits them to quality assurance (QA) for review.</li> <li>* 7. +The GCA team leader develops and distributes a minimum vectoring altitude chart.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
8. +The COM/NAV section aligns radar and identification, friend or foe. 9. +The GCA team installs the theodolite. *10. +The GCA team leader ensures the landing control central is ready for flight check. *11. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-1009	Install the Landing Control Central, AN/TSQ-71B	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-3001	Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-3002	Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-5006	Operate the Landing Control Central, AN/TSQ-71B	STP 1-93C1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-0050.01-00CS	PERFORM ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) DUTIES IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0052.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0110.01-00CS	COORDINATE FLIGHT CHECKS OF AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES (ATS) FACILITIES AND NAVAIDS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0111.01-00CS	PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

---

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0201.01-00CS	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0032.01-00CS	CONDUCT GROUND-CONTROLLED APPROACH RADAR OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0033.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-70A OR AN/TSW-7A	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0034.01-00CS	CONDUCT TOWER OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0119.01-00CS	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0124.01-00CS	OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-3001.01-00CS	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS-ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. + The commander or leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-0003	Prepare the Aircraft Control Central, AN/TSQ-70A, for Movement	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-1007	Install the Air Traffic Control Central, AN/TSQ-70A	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-3001	Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-3002	Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-5002	Operate the Air Traffic Control Central, AN/TSQ-70A	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5004	Operate the Air Traffic Control Central, AN/TSW-7A	STP 1-93C1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-0050.01-00CS	PERFORM ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) DUTIES IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0052.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0111.01-00CS	PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0201.01-00CS	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0029.01-00CS	INSTALL THE LANDING CONTROL CENTRAL AN/TSQ-71 SERIES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0032.01-00CS	CONDUCT GROUND-CONTROLLED APPROACH RADAR OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0034.01-00CS	CONDUCT TOWER OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0119.01-00CS	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0124.01-00CS	OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-3001.01-00CS	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS-ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0021.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)1	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Ensured circuit breakers were in the off position. c. Checked the voltage/frequency phase monitor. d. Ensured that radios were off.  4. +The team prepares the TAIS for AIC/A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> mission profile. a. Integrated TAIS with the ABCS communication plan. b. Established digital connections, including TADIL B, TADIL A, and FAAD Data Link. c. Established line of sight (LOS) communications with higher, lower, and lateral ATS, A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> , and C <sup>2</sup> organizations. d. Established NLOS communications with higher, lower, and lateral ATS, A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> , and C <sup>2</sup> organizations.  5. The team maintains the AN/TSQ-221. a. Performed operator preventive maintenance checks services (PMCS). b. Cleaned the equipment/shelter, as needed.  6. + The team operates the Tactical Airspace Integration System (TAIS) IAW their mission profile.  7. The team installs a nondirectional radio beacon, as required.  * 8. +The commander or leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-3001	Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-0052.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0111.01-00CS	PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

---

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0025.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TSC 61B	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0118.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (TAIS-AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0119.01-00CS	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0124.01-00CS	OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-3001.01-00CS	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS-ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Ensured that circuit breakers were set to the OFF position.                      f. Connected the power cables.                      g. Connected to the LAN.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Applicable before operation PMCS should be conducted at appropriate intervals during the installation process.</p> <p>h. Applied power to the AN/ASM-147.                      i. Camouflaged the shelter.</p> <p>4. The operator(s) conducts during-and-after operations PMCS on both the ANASM-146 and AN/ASM-147 shelters, as required.</p> <p>a. Initiated DA Forms 2404 (Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet) and gathered equipment needed to perform PMCS.                      b. Performed daily checks and services.                      c. Performed monthly checks and services.                      d. Performed quarterly checks and services, if scheduled.                      e. Completed DA Forms 2404 and forwarded them to the maintenance supervisor.</p> <p>* 5. + The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-3001	Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
-------------	------------	------------

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** SUPPLY SECTION (COMPANY)

**TASK:** PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT (01-4-0320.01-0NRC)  
 (AR 710-2) (DA PAM 710-2-1) (FM 100-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP and the administrative and logistics operations center are operational, and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Mission accomplishment was not degraded by inadequate supply support.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The commander directs supply operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored operations by reviewing supply records and status.</li> <li>b. Directed inventories of supplies and equipment to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Inspected storage of unit equipment, weapons, ammunition, and rations.</li> <li>d. Directed issue of supplies and equipment.</li> <li>e. Calculated field service requirements.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The supply sergeant supervises unit supply.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the supply status to determine total assets.</li> <li>b. Conducted inventories to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Developed a supply storage plan.</li> <li>d. Monitored supply procedures by reviewing supply transactions.</li> <li>e. Directed control of weapons, ammunition, and rations.</li> <li>f. Provided input to the materiel condition status report regarding equipment on hand.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The supply section requests supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Calculated resupply requirements.</li> <li>b. Coordinated requirements with platoons and elements.</li> <li>c. Recorded the requests on the appropriate document register.</li> <li>d. Submitted requests for resupply.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The supply section receives supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected incoming supplies for quantity and condition.</li> <li>b. Recorded receipt on the appropriate document register.</li> <li>c. Stored supplies according to storage plans.</li> <li>d. Notified the requesting platoon or element that supplies were available for issue.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The supply section issues supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Processed supply requests.</li> <li>b. Prepared transaction documents.</li> <li>c. Maintained prescribed copies of transactions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>6. The supply section maintains small arms and ammunition.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Controlled stored weapons and ammunition. b. Requested ammunition resupply. c. Performed organizational maintenance on small arms and crew-served weapons. d. Forwarded weapons beyond unit repair capabilities to the supporting maintenance unit.  * 7. +The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE /EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
101-92Y-0001	Supervise Supply Activities	
101-92Y-0002	Supervise Supply Activities in a Unit	
101-92Y-0003	Supervise Supply Operations at the Company Level	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1402.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION, AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** AUTO MAINTENANCE SECTION (COMPANY)  
 AUTO MAINTENANCE SECTION

**TASK:** PERFORM VEHICLE RECOVERY OPERATIONS (01-4-1029.01-00CS)  
 (FM 3-20.15)

**ITERATION:**                                    1    2    3    4    5    M    (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:**                                    T    P    U    (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The automotive maintenance section receives a mission that requires a vehicle or equipment be recovered. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. Vehicle/equipment is recovered and evacuated, without further damage, within timelines specified by the commander or unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The maintenance section coordinates with the owning unit.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined repair parts, tools, and equipment.</li> <li>b. Determined battlefield damage assessment repair (BDAR)/recovery team composition.</li> <li>c. Determined nature of damage.</li> <li>d. Received update on the OPFOR situation, and nuclear, biological, and chemical conditions.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with commanders if recovery mission might interfere with tactical operations or compromise security.</li> <li>f. Designated pickup point if different from unit site.</li> <li>g. Designated route of approach.</li> <li>h. Coordinated for guides, if required.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. +The motor officer directs the recovery operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined repair parts, if applicable.</li> <li>b. Determined tools/equipment, if applicable.</li> <li>c. Determined BDAR/recovery method.</li> <li>d. Briefed the BDAR/recovery team.</li> <li>e. Dispatched the BDAR/recovery team.</li> <li>f. Established security at the recovery site.</li> <li>g. Repaired vehicle/equipment on site if possible and permitted by the tactical situation.</li> <li>h. Used BDAR or field expedient methods, if required.</li> <li>i. Recommended course of action to the commander if vehicle/equipment was nonreparable or could not be recovered.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. +The recovery team recovers the vehicle/equipment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured unit equipment was removed and secured.</li> <li>b. Rugged/loaded vehicle/equipment for evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. +The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-510-0502	Supervise Company-Level Maintenance	
011-510-1301	Supervise Ground Maintenance Operations	
091-900-0006	Direct Unit Maintenance Operations	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Verified elevation and azimuth data potentiometer and electronic filter adjustments.</p> <p>e. Verified angle volt dial alignment.</p> <p>f. Verified search scan mode alignment.</p> <p>g. Verified precision scan mode alignment.</p> <p>h. Verified simultaneous scan mode alignment.</p> <p>i. Verified cursor alignment (to include cursor saw-tooth alignment).</p> <p>j. Performed LO tune and receiver gain adjustments.</p> <p>k. Performed minimum discernible signal transmitter power out.</p> <p>4. The section diagnoses and repairs C-E malfunctions.</p> <p>a. Troubleshoot malfunctions.</p> <p>b. Identified malfunctions.</p> <p>c. Coordinated for support maintenance as necessary, to include:</p> <p>(1) Technical assistance.</p> <p>(2) Spare parts.</p> <p>(3) TMDE.</p> <p>(4) Personnel.</p> <p>d. Performed authorized repairs or evacuated equipment as necessary.</p> <p>e. Checked repaired equipment for proper functioning.</p> <p>* 5. The section leader coordinates request for on-site maintenance of forward-deployed ATS assets.</p> <p>a. Determined and assessed the nature of malfunctions.</p> <p>b. Determined equipment location (grid coordinates) of reported malfunctions.</p> <p>c. Assessed risks to deploying company maintenance team (CMT).</p> <p>d. Coordinated transportation for the CMT.</p> <p>e. Obtained frequencies, call signs, and passwords, as necessary.</p> <p>f. Briefed the CMT on the mission.</p> <p>g. Deployed the CMT.</p> <p>6. The CMT repairs or evacuates the malfunctioning components.</p> <p>7. The CMT checks the repaired equipment for proper functioning.</p> <p>* 8. +The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1042	Perform Mouth to Mouth Resuscitation	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** AUTO MAINTENANCE SECTION (COMPANY)  
 AUTO MAINTENANCE SECTION

**TASK:** PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE (01-4-7723.01-0NRC)  
 (FM 4-30.3) (DA PAM 738-750)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP and the administrative and logistics operations center are operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit vehicle and equipment maintenance status meet or exceed DA standards.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The motor officer directs the unit maintenance program.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored implementation of unit maintenance program.</li> <li>b. Monitored unit operational levels by reviewing vehicle and equipment status reports.</li> <li>c. Identified current or anticipated maintenance problems.</li> <li>d. Coordinated resolution of maintenance problems with higher headquarters.</li> <li>e. Requested control substitution approval from higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Approved emergency field repairs.</li> <li>g. Prepared material condition status reports.</li> <li>h. Monitored the Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP)</li> <li>i. Monitored the maintenance quality control program.</li> <li>j. Monitored the safety program.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +Platoon/section leaders supervise operator maintenance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervised performance of preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>b. Monitored the status of equipment repair parts.</li> <li>c. Inspected vehicles, weapons, and equipment.</li> <li>d. Coordinated maintenance assistance with the unit maintenance section.</li> <li>e. Requested approval for emergency field repairs from the company commander.</li> <li>f. Monitored the maintenance status of vehicles, weapons, and equipment.</li> <li>g. Provided input to the materiel condition status report.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. +Unit personnel perform operator maintenance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed PMCS.</li> <li>b. Performed operator's adjustments according to appropriate technical manual.</li> <li>c. Notified supervisor of maintenance problems beyond operator's capabilities.</li> <li>d. Performed emergency field repairs.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. +Motor sergeant supervises unit-level maintenance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organized unit maintenance personnel.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Assigned equipment to appropriate maintenance area.</li> <li>c. Ensured tools, personnel, and repair parts were available.</li> <li>d. Supervised battle damage assessment and repair procedures.</li> <li>e. Supervised Class IX requisition procedures.</li> <li>f. Supervised recovery operations.</li> <li>g. Coordinated maintenance status with platoon/section leaders.</li> <li>h. Requested controlled substitution approval from commander.</li> <li>i. Provided unit maintenance status update to the commander.</li> </ul> <p>5. +Maintenance personnel repair organic equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected equipment.</li> <li>b. Determined level of maintenance.</li> <li>c. Performed corrective actions.</li> <li>d. Performed final inspection of completed work.</li> <li>e. Completed maintenance forms.</li> <li>f. Notified platoon/section upon completion of repairs.</li> </ul> <p>6. Maintenance personnel conduct transactions with maintenance support activity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the category of maintenance.</li> <li>b. Corrected all unit-level maintenance deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Prepared required documentation.</li> <li>d. Prepared vehicles for evacuation.</li> <li>e. Evacuated equipment to support maintenance.</li> <li>f. Picked up equipment upon notification.</li> <li>g. Verified completion of repairs.</li> </ul> <p>7. +Maintenance personnel perform maintenance, administrative, and support functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained prescribed load list.</li> <li>b. Requested repair parts for unit equipment.</li> <li>c. Maintained document registers.</li> <li>d. Maintained maintenance control records.</li> <li>e. Maintained publications, tools, and equipment.</li> <li>f. Maintained power generators.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. +The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-540-0007	Supervise Unit Class IX Repair Parts Procedures	
091-670-0003	Supervise Unit Maintenance Operation	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-4-1029.01-00CS	PERFORM VEHICLE RECOVERY OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** TACTICAL TEAM/CONTROL TOWER TEAM

**TASK:** INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)1 (01-5-0021.01-00CS)  
 (TM 11-5825-255-12) (FM 1-120)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The unit has accomplished all coordination with supported units and forwarded required airspace information data to the appropriate control unit(s). All soldiers and equipment are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrates digital systems, as appropriate. The team installs and operates the AN/TRN-30(V)1, providing air traffic services (ATS) for aviation units. The AN/TRN-30(V)1 must be flight checked and the appropriate packets submitted before the system can be used in instrument flight rules (IFR) conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The team leader selects the equipment site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured the site provided the best cover and concealment consistent with reliable transmission and reception.</li> <li>b. Verified cover and concealment at first light if site was established during darkness.</li> <li>c. Ensured optimal use of terrain against electronic attack.</li> <li>d. Ensured freedom of interference from power lines and other sources of friendly frequency interference.</li> <li>e. Ensured physical security.</li> <li>f. Planned for at least one alternate route for displacement in case of attack.</li> <li>g. Provided for adequate water drainage.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The team installs the AN/TRN-30(V)1.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured all equipment components were on hand.</li> <li>b. Installed ground sheet.</li> <li>c. Assembled and erected antenna mast.</li> <li>d. Connected ground radials.</li> <li>e. Connected battery/external power source.</li> <li>f. Connected the external power cables to the external power source.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Both the beacon and the external power source MUST be grounded.</p> <p>3. +The team operates the AN/TRN-30(V)1.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set appropriate beacon frequency and code.</li> <li>b. Ensured mode selection and antenna switch were properly set.</li> <li>c. Set power switch to ON.</li> <li>d. Observed voltage meter needle was in the green zone.</li> <li>e. Observed that the radio frequency (RF) meter needle was in the green zone and fluctuated.</li> <li>f. Set code rate control.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. The team sets up the team terminal instrument procedures (TERPS) nondirectional radio beacon (NDB) approach and forwards TERPS information to the S3 who further forwards the information to the appropriate Department of the Army regional representative (DARR) or as required for verification of data.  5. The team maintains the AN/TRN-30(V)1. a. Performed operator preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS). b. Cleaned equipment as needed.  * 6. +The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-3001	Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-5050	Install Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or AN/TRN-30(V)2	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5051	Operate Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or (V)2	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5054	Prepare the Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or (V)2, for Movement	STP 1-93C1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-4-0033.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-70A OR AN/TSW-7A	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0034.01-00CS	CONDUCT TOWER OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0033.01-00CS	PROVIDE AIR TRAFFIC SERVICE (ATS) AT A TEMPORARY LANDING SITE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0116.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-198	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0123.01-00CS	CONDUCT LANDING ZONE/PICKUP ZONE (LZ/PZ) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-1353.01-00CS	PROVIDE PATHFINDER SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 7. +Commander/Leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-3001	Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-7001	Introduction to the AN/TSQ-198 (Tactical Terminal Control System)	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-7002	Prepare the AN/TSQ-198 (Tactical Terminal Control System) for Movement	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-7003	Install the AN/TSQ-198 (Tactical Terminal Control System)	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-7004	Operate the AN/TSQ-198 (Tactical Terminal Control System)	STP 1-93C1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-0050.01-00CS	PERFORM ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) DUTIES IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0052.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0111.01-00CS	PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0201.01-00CS	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0034.01-00CS	CONDUCT TOWER OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0119.01-00CS	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0124.01-00CS	OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-3001.01-00CS	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS-ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0021.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30 (V)1	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0033.01-00CS	PROVIDE AIR TRAFFIC SERVICE (ATS) AT A TEMPORARY LANDING SITE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0123.01-00CS	CONDUCT LANDING ZONE/PICKUP ZONE (LZ/PZ) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-1353.01-00CS	PROVIDE PATHFINDER SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** MINISTRY TEAM

**TASK:** IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM (01-5-1110.01-00CS)  
 (FM 16-1) (FM 101-5) (FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. Religious support programs enhanced unit morale, welfare, and combat effectiveness.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The chaplain implements the unit's religious support program.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the needs of the command.</li> <li>b. Coordinated unit, area, and denominational coverage throughout the battalion/squadron.</li> <li>c. Established ministry objectives for the battalion/squadron and measured the results.</li> <li>d. Prepared a religious support plan for inclusion in the OPORD/FRAGO, and supervised its execution.</li> <li>e. Reviewed casualty data.</li> <li>f. Maintained authorized equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The chaplain provides pastoral ministry.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided pastoral care to all members of the battalion/squadron and to collocated elements having no assigned chaplain.</li> <li>b. Ministered to casualties and hospitalized or confined personnel.</li> <li>c. Provided pastoral counseling to members of the command.</li> <li>d. Conducted appropriate memorial ceremonies and worship services to honor the dead and wounded.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The chaplain advises the commander and staff on religious matters.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Advised on religious, moral, morale, ethical, and humanitarian aspects of policies and leadership affected by religion to ensure high standards.</li> <li>b. Advised on specific religious requirements of soldiers.</li> <li>c. Assessed the training that soldiers received in moral and ethical decision-making.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. +The chaplain establishes liaison with chaplains of higher and adjacent units, and with chaplains of other services and allied nations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Advised the commander and staff on the effect of host country religion on U.S. interests and operations.</li> <li>b. Provided ecclesiastical supplies to subordinate unit ministry teams.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. +The chaplain provides ministerial support in the treatment of battle fatigue.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided immediate support for battle fatigue.</li> <li>b. Provided care and counseling.</li> <li>c. Provided additional skill training on the initial treatment of battle fatigue.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. + The commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
158-100-1134	Resolve an Ethical Dilemma	
158-100-1240	Communicate Effectively as a Leader	
158-100-1260	Counsel Subordinates	
158-100-1331	Apply Ethical Decisionmaking Process as a Commander, Leader, or Staff Member	
158-100-1385	Implement Measures to Reduce Operational Stress	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> ELEMENT

**TASK:** PERFORM ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>) DUTIES IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND (01-1-0050.01-00CS)

(FM 3-52)

(FM 3-100.2)

(FM 100-103-2)

(FM 101-5-1)

(FM 1-100)

(FM 1-120)

(JP 3-52)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Communications have been established with higher headquarters and the Tactical Airspace Integration System (TAIS)—Airspace Information Centers (AIC). The current airspace control order (ACO) and air tasking order (ATO) have been published and received. Map overlays of the area of operations display current airspace control measures (ACM) and air traffic service (ATS) facility locations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. The Army Airspace Command and Control (A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>) team planned, coordinated, and resolved conflicts in airspace requirements.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. +The A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> element processes airspace requests received via Maneuver Control Systems (MCS) or Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below, as appropriate.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received and identified ACM requests, battlefield planning data, and graphics.</li> <li>b. Conducted deconfliction operations.</li> <li>c. Forwarded requests for airspace requirements to controlling headquarters for approval and/or for inclusion in the ATO and ACO.</li> <li>d. Forwarded ACMs and airspace usage approvals/disapproval to affected units.</li> <li>e. Updated the TAIS and transmitted the revised unit airspace plan (UAP) to appropriate commanders and airspace users.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. +The A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> element coordinates with ATS units.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received and reported the operational status of ATS equipment and facilities for inclusion in the ACO.</li> <li>b. Transmitted changes to the current or new ATO and ACO to the AIC and other ATS units within the team's area of influence.</li> <li>c. Forwarded new and updated requirements for airspace to the TAIS-AIC and other ATS facilities based on immediate requests by airspace users.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. +The A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> element responds to the changing tactical situation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed Army Tactical Command and Control System and TAIS products for situational awareness of the battle tempo of airspace users to identify conflicts.</li> <li>b. Processed planned and unplanned unit airspace plan changes.</li> <li>c. Conducted deconfliction operations, as necessary.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Forwarded requested changes to controlling headquarters.</li> <li>e. Forwarded ACMs and airspace usage approvals/disapprovals to affected elements.</li> <li>f. Updated the TAIS and transmitted the revised UAP to appropriate commanders and airspace users.</li> <li>g. Prepared backup graphic overlays.</li> <li>h. Updated A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> overlays to command maps, as required</li> </ul> <p>4. +The A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> element coordinates requests for new or changed ATS facility locations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Forwarded requests for new or changed locations to the appropriate ATS facility or unit.</li> <li>b. Posted changes to the team's status, listing facility down time and the time of return to service.</li> </ul> <p>5. +The A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> element provides planning guidance to higher headquarters on the formulation of the A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> annex and airspace requests.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified and received ACM requests, battlefield planning data, and graphics from airspace users via MCS.</li> <li>b. Identified airspace conflicts and resolved airspace conflicts through deconfliction operations.</li> <li>c. Forwarded proposed TAIS deliverables to higher headquarters for approval/disapproval.</li> <li>d. Notified airspace users of approval/disapproval of ACM(s).</li> <li>e. Transmitted A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> deliverables using MCS.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. + The commander or leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-0001	Locate a Geographic Coordinate on a Sectional, JOG-A, or TPC	STP 1-93C1-SM STP 1-93P1-SM
011-143-0021	Identify Data in DOD Flight Information Publications (FLIPS)	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-4003	Implement Airspace Management Procedures (NAS)	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-5059	Identify Airspace Control Measures	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-143-5062	Determine Army Airspace Command and Control Procedures	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-7000	Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-7005	Integrate Airspace Control Measures	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-420-0018	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0052.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0111.01-00CS	PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0025.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TSC-61B	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0117.01-00CS	INSTALL THE TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM (TAIS) AN/TSQ-221	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0118.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (TAIS-AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0119.01-00CS	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMMUNICATIONS SECTION

**TASK:** PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6) (01-1-0052.01-00CS)  
 (FM 101-5) (FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The unit has received the OPLAN/OPORD from higher headquarters. The S6 is located at the main CP. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations staff estimate, recommendations, plans, and orders were prepared with no errors within the prescribed timeframe. Subordinate units are allowed two-thirds of the available planning time as a result of proper planning techniques. The OPORD/FRAGO meet all requirements outlined in FM 101-5. Horizontal and vertical communications were established and maintained. Mission accomplishment was enhanced by adequate planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The S6 (communications-electronics staff officer) conducts mission analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations.</li> <li>b. Determined specified and implied communications tasks.</li> <li>c. Reviewed the commander's specific guidance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The S6 and the S2 analyze the signal situation and the threat.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined enemy's capability to employ electronic attack (EA) measures.</li> <li>b. Reviewed the All Source Analysis System (ASAS) for the locations and dispositions of enemy EA systems (if available).</li> <li>c. Determined the locations of commercial communication facilities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The S6 recommends courses of action (COAs) that support the operation from a signal aspect.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed and compared COA(s).</li> <li>b. Determined the advantages and disadvantages of each COA.</li> <li>c. Recommended to the commander the most advantageous COA.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The S6 prepares the signal portion of the OPLAN/OPORD.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted the signal portion of the OPLAN/OPORD to the S3 that included—                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Signal tasks for subordinate and supporting units.</li> <li>(2) Coordinating instructions that described general signal, wire, and radio procedures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Briefed the signal portion of the OPLAN/OPORD, as required.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The S6 develops the communications plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured the staff understood the capabilities and limitations of the signal units' organic and external signal assets.</li> <li>b. Determined communications considerations for proposed tactical operations.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Conducted a terrain analysis to determine requirements for communications support.</li> <li>d. Developed plan for providing signal communications support to the operation.</li> <li>e. Planned and requested use of indigenous communications facilities.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with higher headquarters for additional communications support, if required.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The S6 coordinates communications support with the battalion staff.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the S1 regarding—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Communications personnel strength and replacement priorities.</li> <li>(2) Headquarters and CP locations, organization, arrangement, and operation.</li> <li>(3) Location of ambulance exchange point aid stations for remote communications teams.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Coordinated with the S2 regarding—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy communications activities.</li> <li>(2) Evaluation of meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) reports and security violations.</li> <li>(3) Planning, coordination, and staff supervision of communications security (COMSEC), signal security (SIGSEC), and command and control protect—network security management.</li> <li>(4) Commander's Critical Information Requirements pertaining to communications intelligence.</li> <li>(5) Use of signal activities to support higher headquarters' deception plan.</li> <li>(6) Reviewed ASAS for enemy reconnaissance elements/routes/observation post that could affect remote communications sites, if available.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Coordinated with the S3 regarding—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ability to support tactical operations and the impact of current and planned operations on communications support.</li> <li>(2) Implementation of operations security and SIGSEC measures.</li> <li>(3) Communications activities to support higher headquarters' deception plan.</li> <li>(4) Input for the communications annex to the OPORD/FRAGO.</li> <li>(5) Recommended locations of retransmission/relay teams.</li> <li>(6) Recommended sites for CP and headquarters.</li> <li>(7) Communication aspects of CP locations.</li> <li>(8) Minimizing the effects of Electromagnetic Pulse, if applicable.</li> <li>(9) Tasking for security escort to remote signal sites.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Coordinated with the S4 regarding—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Procurement, storage, and distribution of communications equipment.</li> <li>(2) Priorities for maintenance and evacuation of communications equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Coordinated with HHC regarding—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Specific location of communications element at the main CP.</li> <li>(2) Main CP site selection.</li> <li>(3) Reconnaissance of proposed jump site.</li> <li>(4) Proper employment of communications equipment and antennas.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 7. The S6 coordinates the use and allocation of radio frequencies.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained radio frequency allocations from higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Assigned available frequencies to subordinate units.</li> <li>c. Planned for the use of available frequencies to avoid conflict.</li> <li>d. Processed MIJI reports and provided alternate frequencies when practical.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The S6 supervises the activities of the COMSEC subaccount.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed the battalion Signal Operating Instructions (SOI).</li> <li>b. Maintained the battalion SOI distribution scheme.</li> <li>c. Distributed SOIs to subordinate units, as required, and maintained accountability.</li> <li>d. Included SOI use in battalion plans and orders.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with higher headquarters for access to necessary SOI items.</li> <li>f. Supervised all COMSEC items within the brigade, to include.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Accountability.</li> <li>(2) Distribution.</li> <li>(3) Destruction.</li> <li>(4) Security.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Ensured that attached/OPCONed units to the brigade had all required information and data.</li> </ul> <p>* 9. The S6 coordinates the following with the communications section of higher and adjacent headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed applicable technical directives.</li> <li>b. Reviewed tactical plans for impending operations.</li> <li>c. Established the mesh net for internal communications.</li> <li>d. Reviewed changes anticipated in current operations.</li> <li>e. Determined requirements for signal personnel.</li> <li>f. Established routes of signal communications and locations of signal centers for the communications systems.</li> </ul> <p>10. The communications section supervises and assists subordinate units with signal activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assisted with the location of signal facilities and activities.</li> <li>b. Planned and directed the operation and maintenance of signal communication systems by assigned or attached units.</li> <li>c. Coordinated measures to reduce radio interference.</li> </ul> <p>11. The communications section manages the flow of battalion communications and information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established and maintained the local area network (LAN) linking the Army Tactical Command and Control System (ATCCS) within the Tactical Operations Center.</li> <li>b. Established message and communications priorities.</li> <li>c. Integrated the LAN into the tactical internet</li> <li>d. Maintained communications equipment status in the Combat Services Support Control System in conjunction with the S4.</li> <li>e. Supervised planning for and use of electronic protection measures.</li> </ul> <p>*13. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0022.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)2	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0029.01-00CS	INSTALL THE LANDING CONTROL CENTRAL AN/TSQ-71 SERIES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0032.01-00CS	CONDUCT GROUND CONTROLLED APPROACH RADAR OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0021.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)1	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Processed and displayed ATO airspace control measures (ACMs). b. Received ACMs from Army forces (ARFOR) elements. c. Deconflicted ACMs and processed to appropriate echelon. d. Provided feedback to ARFOR elements on ACM submissions. e. Displayed unit airspace plan. f. Constructed, stored, displayed, and shared A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> overlay. g. Retransmitted A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> deliverables.  * 4. + The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-0014	Process Flight Progress Strips	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0018	Provide Traffic Information/Advisories	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0020	Provide Flight Following Service	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-1021	Communicate Using Interphone Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-3002	Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-5057	Communicate Using Radio Communication Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5063	Decode METAR Weather Reports	STP 1-93C1-SM STP 1-93P1-SM
011-143-7000	Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-420-0018	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-0052.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0111.01-00CS	PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0025.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TSC-61B	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0117.01-00CS	INSTALL THE TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM (TAIS) AN/TSQ-221	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0118.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (TAIS-AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0119.01-00CS	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0124.01-00CS	OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-3001.01-00CS	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS-ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> ELEMENT

**TASK:** CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS (01-1-0113.01-00CS)  
 (FM 3-52) (FM 3-100.2) (FM 100-103-2)  
 (FM 1-120)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The planned operation requires that airspace, air traffic control (ATC) services, ATC facilities, and navigational aid (NAVAID) use be coordinated with civil-military authorities. The unit coordinated with civil-military authorities and forwarded required airspace management information to the Tactical Airspace Integration System (TAIS)—Army Command and Control (A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>) and Airspace Information Center (AIC) teams. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. The element(s) coordinated all requirements for the planned operation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> Air traffic control (ATC) operations/exercise planning procedures are conducted in accordance with (IAW) Federal Aviation Administration Order (FAAO) 7610.4, FAAO 7400.2, and applicable international civil aviation organization (ICAO)/host nation procedures. Coordinate with host nation, airspace control authority (ACA), Federal Aviation Administration (FAA), regional military representatives, or FAA Regional Air Traffic Division, as appropriate.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> liaison officers (LNOs) receive airspace and ATC operation requirements.                         <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified airspace requirements in the initial planning stage.</li> <li>b. Coordinated all pertinent data relative to the mission with affected ATC Facilities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> conducts military airspace planning.                         <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Completed planning 4 months before the proposed effective date:                                 <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determined bases to be used as staging fields and estimated volume of activity.</li> <li>(2) Activated inactive bases, if necessary.</li> <li>(3) Established navigational aids, military control facilities, and frequencies as applicable.</li> <li>(4) Determined ingress and egress areas.</li> <li>(5) Established requirements routes from staging bases, including volume of use.</li> <li>(6) Determined location of military air traffic facilities.</li> <li>(7) Determined requirements for military control of air traffic outside of the area of operations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Completed planning 3 months before operations (mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time, and civilian considerations [METT-TC] dependent).</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Initiated, coordinated, and developed the Aviator's Procedures Guide.                      (2) Coordinated any special operating procedures and/or FAA, ICAO, Host nation, ACA, and military agreements.</p> <p>c. Completed planning 45 days before the beginning operations (METT-TC dependent).                      (1) Provided any additional information deemed necessary by the host nation, FAA, ICAO, ACA or the exercise proponent.                      (2) Provided copies of all established procedures and agreements for distribution to the host nation, FAA, ICAO, ACA, and military personnel who require this information.</p> <p>d. Disseminated information, as necessary, to facilitate force protection/fratricide avoidance.</p> <p>3. Air traffic services (ATS) conducts ATS facility coordination.                      a. Determined location of ATC services.                      b. Received air traffic control authority from regional Air Traffic (AT) Division/Host nation/ACA.                      c. Equipped units to transmit and receive all frequencies necessary to control all categories of instrument flight rules (IFR) traffic, including civil, before approach control authority.                      d. Established letters of agreement (LOAs) between military facilities and the appropriate the host nation/FAA facilities IAW established practice.</p> <p>4. The host nation/regional AT division/ACA certifies qualified military facility personnel before delegation of control.</p> <p>* 5. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties /Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0050.01-00CS	PERFORM ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) DUTIES IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Received the commander's decision and guidance for implementation.</p> <p>4. +The A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> element develops the A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> annex.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Delineated the airspace subsector by upper limits, left and right limits, and front and rear limits.</li> <li>b. Described authority to be exercised by each echelon, concerning Army users, other Service users, establishment of control measures, and positive and procedural control requirements.</li> <li>c. Stated the commander's airspace priorities.</li> <li>d. Stated the A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> mission.</li> <li>e. Explained the concept of operations/scheme of maneuver, to include A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> overlay.</li> <li>f. Wrote subunit paragraphs that discussed the following for each airspace user (fire support, Air Force, aviation, aid defense (AD), ATS).               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Type of control required (positive or procedural, when and where).</li> <li>(2) A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> responsibilities not covered in SOP (such as peculiar information requirements, changes to responsibility for management of subsectors, weapons control orders/autonomous operation procedures (if changed), times of operation/restrictions).</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Delineated information affecting more than two users; for example:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) All procedural A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> control measures and restrictions (included fire support).</li> <li>(2) Information not included in the overlay(s).</li> <li>(3) Flight rules (instrument meteorological conditions (IMC)/visual meteorological conditions (VMC)).</li> <li>(4) Airspace control order issuing times.</li> <li>(5) High-use areas.</li> <li>(6) Friendly EW operations that affected airspace users.</li> <li>(7) Forward arming and refueling point (FARP) locations (active/preplanned).</li> <li>(8) Airfield locations/operations.</li> <li>(9) Navigational aids (NAVAIDs) locations (active/preplanned time of operation).</li> <li>(10) Flight operations center (FOC)/ flight coordination center/(FCC) location/operations.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>5. +The A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> element generates A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup> control measure requests to support the annex and forwards the requests for approval. (Theater requirements and means to accomplish this may vary.)</p> <p>* 6. + The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of the steps in, the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties /Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)	
154-385-6465	Employed the Risk Management Process during Mission Planning	STP 21-24-SMCT
155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War during Mission Planning	
158-100-1240	Communicate Effectively as a Leader	
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1120.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
158-100-1240	Communicate Effectively as a Leader	
171-630-0015	Supervise the Flow of Information in a Battalion Tactical Operations Center (TOC)	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 6. +The S3 determines and plans the unit mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Oriented on the area, its culture, and the nature of the situation.</li> <li>b. Planned operations to complement those of Government and private agencies.</li> <li>c. Planned operations within the framework of the overall mission, with primary focus on stability and support operations (SASO).</li> <li>d. Planned for transition to civilian agencies as soon as feasible.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. +The commander emphasizes civil affairs and information operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured soldiers at all levels understood the consequences of releasing inaccurate, unsubstantiated or poorly timed information.</li> <li>b. Released information that was authoritative and reflected the degree of accuracy known at the time.</li> </ul> <p>8. +The unit conducts support, anti-terrorism, counterterrorism, and force-on-force operations, as required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Accommodated the culture, values, and methods of operations of the other participants.</li> <li>b. Accommodated the political, economic, and social situations, including demographics, of the population.</li> <li>c. Prioritized efforts and allocated resources to achieve the greatest essential support to the largest number of people possible.</li> <li>d. Displayed preparedness (capability to apply force without threatening), consistent with mission constraints, by conducting demanding combined arms training routinely in the area of operations, as appropriate.</li> <li>e. Used warfighting doctrine, with suitable modification, to accommodate the situation.</li> <li>f. Transitioned quickly between support, peacekeeping/peace-enforcing operations, and offensive/defensive operations, as required.</li> <li>g. Applied force that was consistent with, and adequate to, assigned objectives, employing combat power selectively IAW assigned missions and prescribed rules of engagement (ROE).</li> </ul> <p>* 9. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0021	Employ Fundamentals of Army Operations	

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing	
011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
154-385-6465	Employ the Risk Management Process during Mission Planning	STP 21-24-SMCT
011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support.	
011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations	
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment	
224-300-2000	Implement a Public Affairs Plan	
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1120.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1401.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S-3 SECTION

**TASK:** COORDINATE THE SAFETY PROGRAM (01-1-1024.01-0NRC)  
 (AR 385-95) (AR 385-10) (FM 100-14)  
 (FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** There were no personnel injuries or damage to equipment resulting from poor safety procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. +The safety officer and/or noncommissioned officer, in coordination with the S3, monitors and assists in executing the safety program. The program includes the areas of safety and occupational health, risk management, and accident prevention for aviation and ground operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Served as the principal safety and risk management advisor, trainer, planner, and evaluator for the commander.</li> <li>b. Investigated, reported, and analyzed unit accidents; identified cause factor trends and recommended corrective action.</li> <li>c. Monitored execution of safety and risk management procedures in the readiness and tactical SOP, including the aircraft pre-accident crash rescue plan.</li> <li>d. Evaluated and reported on unit success in meeting the commander's safety goals, objectives, and priority actions.</li> </ul> 2. Provides safety and risk management training for unit personnel to correct observed shortcomings.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-510-1700	Implement the Army Safety Program	
158-100-1140	Communicate Effectively in a Given Situation	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S1 SECTION

**TASK:** PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1) (01-1-1101.01-0NRC)  
 (FM 101-5) (DA PAM 600-67) (DA PAM 600-8-20)  
 (FM 100-14) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP and the administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC) are operational and all staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Personnel service support systems are in effect. The executive officer (XO) has directed each staff section to prepare its respective staff estimates and recommendations, plans, and orders for the commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The personnel staff estimate, recommendations, plans, and orders were prepared with no errors within the prescribed timeframe.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The S1 conducts mission analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations.</li> <li>b. Identified essential tasks to be done.</li> <li>c. Reviewed the concept of the operation with the S3.</li> <li>d. Evaluated planning guidance.</li> <li>e. Identified the status of personnel.</li> <li>f. Identified personnel support tasks required for operations, including strength management, replacement and casualty operations, and services.</li> <li>g. Forecasted personnel requirements.</li> <li>h. Supervised S1 section activities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The S1 prepares the personnel estimate.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated the unit strength maintenance posture.</li> <li>b. Identified critical replacement requirements.</li> <li>c. Indicated the impact of enemy prisoner of war, non-U. S. augmentation, and civilians possibly available for labor requirements.</li> <li>d. Reported the status of unit health, welfare, and morale; included factors that affected the climate, commitment, and cohesion of the unit.</li> <li>e. Identified deficiencies in personnel services that may have affected operations.</li> <li>f. Analyzed courses of action considering personnel factors.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Compared courses of action to evaluate deficiencies from a personnel aspect.</li> <li>(2) Determined advantages and disadvantages of each course of action.</li> <li>(3) Recommended the best course of action.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Submitted the personnel estimate to the XO.</li> <li>h. Conducted personnel status briefings, as required.</li> <li>i. Maintained a current personnel estimate of the situation in coordination with other staff elements.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. +The S1 section prepares plans and orders. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the preparation of the service support annex with the S4 and the support organization.</li> <li>b. Developed the personnel portion of the OPORD to include, as a minimum:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Replacement and casualty operations.</li> <li>(2) Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</li> <li>(3) Personnel service support.</li> <li>(4) Health, welfare, and morale activities.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> * 4. +Performs risk management for the personnel functional area IAW the responsibilities and task standards specified in appendix C (e.g., the identification of critical shortages of specialized personnel that would constitute a hazard to a particular mission).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties / Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain	
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment	
155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War during Mission Planning	
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMMAND SECTION

**TASK:** PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM) (01-1-1120.01-0NRC)  
 (FM 101-5) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Battalion/squadron planning, coordination, and operations are enhanced as a result of timely assistance and advice from the command sergeant major (CSM).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. +The CSM performs duties and responsibilities that vary according to the commander's specific desires and the unit's type, size, and mission. * 2. +The CSM conducts mission analysis. a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations. b. Identified essential tasks to be done, and reviewed the concept of operation with the S3. c. Identified support tasks required for the operation. d. Evaluated planning guidance. e. Supervised local security operations, as directed. * 3. +The CSM provides advice and recommendations to the commander and staff in matters pertaining to enlisted personnel preparedness. * 4. +The CSM provides input to the detailed planning of operations that are directly under his control; for example, convoy operations, quartering party operations, etc. * 5. The CSM monitors and reports on unit performance and progress in support of the mission. * 6. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment	
158-100-1240	Communicate Effectively as a Leader	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>k. Conducted a comparative evaluation of threat forces to facilitate threat integration into the planning.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Developed and maintained threat data relevant to mission, order of battle (OB), friendly capabilities, and higher headquarters analysis.</li> <li>(2) Developed a doctrinal template.</li> <li>(3) Developed enemy OB or situational templates.</li> </ul> </li> <li>l. Provided event analysis input (matrix or other form).</li> <li>m. Recorded results, together with the S3, in the form of a decision support template and matrix.</li> <li>n. Ensured that identified decision points, decision lines, and decision events were included in an updated collection plan.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. +The S2 section prepares the intelligence staff estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained and analyzed information.</li> <li>b. Described the AOs to include weather, terrain, and other characteristics.</li> <li>c. Described the enemy situation.</li> <li>d. Described probable enemy courses.</li> <li>e. Created a situational template.</li> <li>f. Described the effects of the AOs and enemy situation on friendly courses of action.</li> <li>g. Compared courses of action in order to:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Evaluate deficiencies from an intelligence aspect.</li> <li>(2) Analyze advantages and disadvantages.</li> </ul> </li> <li>h. Indicated whether the mission could be supported and which prescribed course of action could be supported from an intelligence aspect.</li> <li>i. Submitted the intelligence estimate to the XO and briefed, as required.</li> <li>j. Maintained a current intelligence estimate of the situation together with other staff elements.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. +The S2 section conducts staff coordination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided the staff with an overview of the current enemy situation to assist in the staff planning process.</li> <li>b. Provided input to the staff's mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Determined the capability of friendly intelligence assets to support the mission.</li> <li>d. Assisted the tactical operations officer in identifying aircraft survivability measures.</li> </ul> <p>5. +The S2 section prepares the intelligence annex.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed the intelligence annex, which included the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Summary of the enemy situation.</li> <li>(2) Essential elements of information.</li> <li>(3) Intelligence acquisition tasks.</li> <li>(4) Measures for handling enemy prisoners of war documents and material.</li> <li>(5) Counterintelligence.</li> <li>(6) Reports and distribution.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Issued the intelligence annex and accompanying appendixes with overlays.</li> </ul> <p>6. +The S2 section develops the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&amp;S) plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed R&amp;S plans from the companies/troops.</li> <li>b. Determined the battalion/squadron R&amp;S requirements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Reviewed R&S plans from brigade/regiment. d. Considered fire support, maneuver, engineer augmentation, and command and control. e. Determined limits of responsibility. f. Coordinated the plan with the S3 and higher headquarters. g. Prepared R&S annex for the OPORD. h. Maintained continuous update of the R&S plan.  * 7. + The S2 section performs risk management for the intelligence functional area IAW the responsibilities and task standards specified in appendix C (e.g., identification and control of enemy air defense assets in the area of operations).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0307	Perform Intelligence and Electronic Warfare (IEW) Staff Duties/Responsibilities	
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-510-0704	Plan Intelligence Reconnaissance / Surveillance Missions	
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain	
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment	
155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War during Mission Planning	
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield Process into Mission Planning	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S3 SECTION

**TASK:** PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3) (01-1-1301.01-0NRC)  
 (FM 101-5) (DA PAM 385-1) (FM 100-14)  
 (FM 3-0) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The executive officer (XO) has directed each staff section to prepare its respective staff estimates and recommendations, plans, and orders. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations staff estimate, recommendations, plans, and orders were prepared with no errors within the prescribed timeframe. Subordinate units were allowed two-thirds of the available planning time as a result of proper planning techniques. The OPORD/FRAGO met all requirements outlined in FM 101-5. Mission accomplishment was enhanced by adequate planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S3 conducts the mission analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations.</li> <li>b. Identified all specified tasks from the higher headquarters OPORD/FRAGO.</li> <li>c. Determined implied tasks.</li> <li>d. Identified essential tasks required for operations.</li> <li>e. Coordinated essential tasks with appropriate staff sections.</li> <li>f. Identified friendly vulnerabilities and limitations.</li> <li>g. Restated the mission.</li> <li>h. Issued a warning order to subordinate units.</li> <li>i. Supervised the S3 section.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. +The S3 prepares the operations staff estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the relative combat power.</li> <li>b. Developed friendly courses of action.</li> <li>c. Provided courses of action to other staff sections.</li> <li>d. Analyzed courses of action with other staff sections.</li> <li>e. Determined advantages and disadvantages of each course of action with other staff sections.</li> <li>f. Recommended the most advantageous course of action.</li> <li>g. Recommended the optimum task organization to accomplish the mission based on unit capabilities and the commander's intent.</li> <li>h. Submitted the operations estimate to the commander or XO.</li> <li>i. Conducted command briefings as required.</li> <li>j. Maintained a current operations estimate of the situation in coordination with other staff sections.</li> </ul> <p>3. +The S3 section prepares plans and orders.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Established a planning cell within the CP in coordination with the staff. b. Developed the OPORD/FRAGO with supporting annexes, appendixes, and overlays. c. Distributed the OPORD/FRAGO to all pertinent units.  * 4. +The S3 executes staff coordinating responsibilities for the safety functional area. a. Performed mission risk management duties in planning, coordinating, and controlling tactical operations IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C. b. Coordinated the implementation of the command safety and occupational health program to meet the commander's guidance (IAW DA PAM 385-1).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-143-5062	Determine Army Airspace Command and Control Procedures	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD	
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain	
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment	
155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War during Mission Planning	
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S3 SECTION

**TASK:** ESTABLISH A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) (01-1-1302.01-00CS)  
 (FM 101-5) (FM 100-14) (FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The tactical situation dictates movement of the tactical operations center (TOC). Units have been deployed tactically and are conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. Communications between the TOC and higher and lower headquarters was not disrupted. The command and control (C<sup>2</sup>) of tactical operations was not disrupted. Tactical information was received, analyzed, and disseminated in an effective manner on a continuous basis.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S3 establishes the TOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected the staff elements to be represented based on the situation and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>b. Established procedures to minimize the time required to process information.</li> <li>c. Established procedures to facilitate immediate information exchange between internal and external staff sections.</li> <li>d. Maintained the status of the current situation.</li> <li>e. Prepared and disseminated orders, requests, and reports necessary for current operations.</li> <li>f. Recommended the employment of organic and attached resources.</li> <li>g. Established an internal TOC security plan.</li> <li>h. Began planning for future operations.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The S3 section operates the TOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained communications with higher and lower headquarters throughout the movement and TOC establishment.</li> <li>b. Received and processed required operational reports promptly.</li> <li>c. Prepared situation maps and updated them immediately upon receipt of tactical information.</li> <li>d. Maintained a staff journal.</li> <li>e. Maintained flight records for aircrew members, as required.</li> <li>f. Provided recommendations to the commander.</li> </ul> <p>3. +The communications section operates a net control station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Opened and closed the net.</li> <li>b. Used challenge and authentication.</li> <li>c. Controlled entry and departure from the net.</li> <li>d. Monitored the net and corrected errors in operating procedures.</li> <li>e. Imposed and lifted station and net restrictions.</li> <li>f. Controlled a direct net.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Passed all meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion (MIJI) reports to the officer in charge as soon as possible. h. Used blind broadcast procedures, when appropriate. i. Used a crypto net control device, as appropriate.  4. The S3 displaces the TOC to support current or planned operations. a. Established a forward TOC to control immediate operations IAW the unit standing operating procedures. b. Moved the TOC to an area where C <sup>2</sup> of ongoing present or planned operations were easily facilitated. c. Established TOC security. d. Maintained communications with all elements. e. Ensured that the displaced TOC was operational before the main TOC displaced. f. Moved the main TOC to the new site and resumed C <sup>2</sup> responsibilities.  * 5. +Identify and control hazards IAW risk management procedures in appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1050	Transmit Flight Movement Messages	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1052	Operate Single Channel Ground and Air Radio System (SINCGARS) Equipment	STP 1-93C1-SM STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1059	Operate the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1060	Extract Data from Signal Operation Instructions (SOI) Extract	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1061	Prepare a Situation Map	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-3052	Manage TOC Operations Using the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-500-2300	Operate Communications Security Equipment.	

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
071-990-0003	Control Entry into a Restricted Area	
113-305-1001	Communicate by a Tactical Radio	
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information	
301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1202.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-7102.01-0NRC	SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Coordinated with other maneuver, combat support, and combat service support assets to ensure successful mission accomplishment. (1) Integrated air and ground schemes of maneuver, if required. (2) Consolidated air and ground control measures. (3) Coordinated air and ground direct fire planning, if required. (4) Coordinated logistical support. (5) Confirmed communication and communication security requirements. c. Continued planning and coordination for future operations. d. Kept the commander apprised of the situation.  * 5. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-141-1047	Process Information during Tactical Operations	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-3052	Manage TOC Operations Using the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-510-0011	Implement Fundamentals of Air-Ground Operations	
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD	
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing	
171-630-0015	Supervise the Flow of Information in a Battalion Tactical Operations Center (TOC)	
301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1017.01-00CS	PLAN STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1120.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1401.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S3 SECTION

**TASK:** ESTABLISH A TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP) (01-1-1306.01-00CS)  
 (FM 1-111) (FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The tactical situation dictates the establishment of a tactical command post (TAC CP). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operation of the TAC CP allowed the commander or S3 to control tactical operations continuously. Site selection of the TAC CP allowed uninterrupted communications. No pertinent combat information was missed as a result of inadequate communication in the TAC CP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. +The S3 section establishes a TAC CP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected appropriate TAC CP personnel based on mission, enemy, troops, terrain and weather, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>b. Selected and coordinated mode of transportation for TAC CP (airborne or ground).</li> <li>c. Conducted reconnaissance of the proposed new location.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The situation and/or time may dictate a map reconnaissance. Reconnaissance should include security and communication requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Established an internal TAC CP security plan.</li> <li>e. Maintained continuous communications with higher, lower, and adjacent units.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The S3 section displaces the TAC CP to support current or planned operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved the TAC CP to an area where command and control (C<sup>2</sup>) of ongoing or planned operations were facilitated.</li> <li>b. Maintained continuous communications with higher, lower, and adjacent units.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the displaced TAC CP was operational and controlled all operations before the main tactical operations center displaced.</li> <li>d. Moved the main TAC CP to a position where C<sup>2</sup> responsibilities could be resumed.</li> <li>e. Conducted flight-following operations, as required.</li> <li>f. Received and processed required operational reports in a timely manner.</li> <li>g. Prepared and updated situation maps immediately upon receipt of tactical information.</li> <li>h. Maintained a staff journal.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-141-1050	Transmit Flight Movement Messages	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1052	Operate Single Channel Ground and Air Radio System (SINCGARS) Equipment	STP 1-93C1-SM STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1060	Extract Data from Signal Operation Instructions (SOI) Extract	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1061	Prepare a Situation Map	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing	
011-510-0503	Perform Company-Level Command Post Operations	
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain	
113-305-1001	Communicate by a Tactical Radio	
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment	
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information	
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1202.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(6) Army airspace command and control rules and procedures. (7) Coordinated altitudes. h. Advised aviation units of high-to-medium altitude air defense (AD) units, location and frequencies, if applicable. i. Coordinated current and future operations. 3. Battalion/squadron staff and liaison personnel conduct after action reviews. a. Debriefed the supported commander or S3 on mission execution and lessons learned. b. Debriefed the parent unit commander or S3 on mission execution and lessons learned. * 4. +Identify and control hazards IAW the risk management procedures in appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-3012	Extract Critical Information from Joint Air-space Documents	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0305	Conduct Battalion/Brigade After Action Review	
011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
113-305-1001	Communicate by a Tactical Radio	
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S4 SECTION

**TASK:** PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4) (01-1-1401.01-00CS)  
 (FM 101-5) (FM 100-14) (FM 101-5-1)  
 (FM 1-100) (FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP and administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC) are operational. Combat service support assets are in place and operational. The executive officer (XO) has directed each staff section to prepare its respective staff estimate, and recommendation, plans, and orders. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. The logistics staff estimate, recommendations, plans, and orders were prepared with no errors within the prescribed timeframe. Mission accomplishment was not degraded as a result of inadequate logistical planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> Steps and performance measures referring to aircraft, aircrews, or aircraft specific equipment apply only to units with organic aircraft.</p> <p>* 1. +The S4 conducts a mission analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations.</li> <li>b. Reviewed the concept of the operation with the S3.</li> <li>c. Determined the logistic situation, to include:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Maintenance.</li> <li>(2) Supply.</li> <li>(3) Services available.</li> <li>(4) Transportation.</li> <li>(5) Labor.</li> <li>(6) Facilities and construction.</li> <li>(7) Civil support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Evaluated planning guidance.</li> <li>e. Directed and supervised S4 section activities.</li> </ul> <p>2. +S4 section determines logistics requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined subordinate unit logistics requirements.</li> <li>b. Submitted logistics requirements to higher headquarters and appropriate organizations.</li> <li>c. Provided guidance for specific requirements not addressed in the unit SOP.</li> <li>d. Determined supportability of forward arming and refueling point (FARP) locations through a review of the S2 trafficability analysis.</li> </ul> <p>3. +S4 section prepares the logistical staff estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed courses of action, to include:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Sufficiency of area of operations.</li> <li>(2) Materiel and services.</li> <li>(3) Advantages and disadvantages.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Indicated whether the mission could be supported from a logistics aspect.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Recommended which course of action, from a logistic aspect, could be best supported.</p> <p>d. Submitted the logistics estimate to the XO.</p> <p>e. Conducted briefings as required.</p> <p>f. Maintained a current logistics estimate of the situation in coordination with other staff sections.</p> <p>* 4. +The S4 prepares plans and orders.</p> <p>a. Developed administrative movement plans as required.</p> <p>b. Developed the service support annex in coordination with S1. Addressed, as a minimum:</p> <p>(1) Personnel administration.</p> <p>(2) Materiel and services.</p> <p>(3) Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</p> <p>(4) Civil-military cooperation.</p> <p>c. Issued the service support annex and accompanying appendixes to include the overlay.</p> <p>* 5. +Performed risk management for the logistics functional area IAW the responsibilities and task standards specified in appendix C (e.g., identify and control hazards associated with night refueling operations at the forward arming and refueling point (FARP)).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/ Responsibilities	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support.	
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain	
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment	
155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War during Mission Planning	
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1120.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (01-2-0018.01-00CS)  
(FM 6-22.5)

**ITERATION:**                                    1    2    3    4    5    M    (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:**                    T    P    U    (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The Tactical Operations Center (TOC) is operational and all staff sections are functioning. The unit is deployed and is performing its mission over a prolonged period of time. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander or element leader applied techniques to combat battlefield stress. These measures included cross-training, task rotation, stress management, sleep discipline, and special talent and resource identification. No loss of personnel, equipment, or mission degradation was incurred because of poor application of battlefield stress techniques.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander or element leader keeps soldiers informed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, OPORDs, and FRAGOs to the lowest level possible.</li> <li>b. Provided an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations.</li> <li>c. Stated the leader's intentions.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively about the mission, purposes, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Promoted a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Quelled and prevented rumors.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander or element leader implements a sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a sleep plan.</li> <li>b. Provided safe, secure sleeping areas away from vehicles and other activities.</li> <li>c. Provided an opportunity for the maximum number of soldiers to sleep or rest when possible.</li> <li>d. Specified and provided time for leaders to sleep.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The commander or element leader implements task rotation or restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cross-trained soldiers on critical tasks.</li> <li>b. Developed a plan to rotate soldiers between demanding and undemanding tasks.</li> <li>c. Assigned two soldiers to work independently on each task that requires accuracy, such as mathematical computations (duplicate effort).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The commander or element leader applies stress management techniques.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented the buddy system so that soldiers and leaders watch each other for signs of stress or battle fatigue.</li> <li>b. Taught soldiers relaxation techniques before their deployment.</li> <li>c. Ensured that soldiers use relaxation techniques when needed.</li> <li>d. Facilitated acceptance and orientation of newly arrived soldiers in the unit.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Ensured the unit accepted and reintegrated soldiers returning to duty after having suffered stress or battle fatigue.</p> <p>* 5. . The commander or element leader applies stress treatment techniques.</p> <p>a. Developed a plan to deal with cases of mild and more serious stress or battle fatigue.</p> <p>b. Assigned simpler tasks to soldiers who show signs of stress or battle fatigue.</p> <p>c. Ensured that leaders are supportive of soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue whether the stress or battle fatigue is manifested in speech or behavior.</p> <p>d. Moved soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue who have not shown improvement after resting to the supporting unit or medical facilities.</p> <p>e. Referred soldiers who show more serious signs of stress or battle fatigue or are not recuperating for medical evacuation or care.</p> <p>* 6. + Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-9001.17-0003	Build a Cohesive Unit or Organization	STP 21-II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** PERFORM CONSOLIDATION AND REORGANIZATION (01-2-0114.01-00CS)  
(FM 7-10) (FM 7-91)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The Tactical Operations Center (TOC) is operational and all staff sections are functioning. The unit is has been in contact with the enemy. It has broken contact and has initiated appropriate tactical measures to continue operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualties and damage to weapon systems and critical equipment were assessed immediately. Casualties were appropriately treated, reported and evacuated. As necessary, unit personnel were reassigned to fill leadership positions and man air traffic control (ATC) positions and weapons systems. Weapons systems and equipment were requisitioned and repositioned to maintain local security and to allow the company to continue the mission. No loss of personnel or equipment was caused by poor consolidation and reorganization techniques.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The senior leader reassigns responsibilities to maintain unit combat and mission capability.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Filled leadership positions.</li> <li>b. Ensured that weapons systems and critical equipment were manned.</li> <li>c. Verified local security.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The senior noncommissioned officer (NCO) determines the status of personnel and equipment.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Accounted for all assigned and attached personnel.</li> <li>b. Assessed personnel losses and weapon system and equipment damages.</li> <li>c. Began repairs or evacuation of damaged equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The senior leader supervises the management of unit casualties.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that immediate first aid was administered to casualties (self-aid or buddy aid).</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the supporting medical treatment facility for all other medical care required.</li> <li>c. Ensured that casualties requiring extraction from vehicles were removed without further injury.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The unit evacuates casualties to medical support elements when the tactical situation permits if adequate Army medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) assets are not available.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Carried casualties manually from place of injury to vehicles.</li> <li>b. Used improvised litters to evacuate casualties.</li> <li>c. Used nonstandard evacuation vehicles to transport casualties to a medical treatment facility.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 5. The senior leader requests casualty evacuation support from the supporting aviation MEDEVAC unit.</p> <p>6. Company personnel assist in loading casualties onto medical evacuation vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used proper loading techniques.</li> <li>b. Loaded patients in the sequence directed by the crew without causing unnecessary discomfort to the patients.</li> <li>c. Followed proper safety procedures for both patients and personnel while around aircraft.</li> <li>d. Decontaminated contaminated patients before loading them. Otherwise, covered contaminated patients to minimize hazards.</li> <li>e. Wore and made sure patients wore protective masks and other available protective gear when warranted by the tactical situation.</li> <li>f. Evacuated Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) casualties by the same means used for friendly casualties with the following exceptions:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Maintained security over EPW casualties.</li> <li>(2) Searched EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance before evacuation.</li> <li>(3) Safeguarded weapons and ordnance from EPWs.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 7. The senior leader or NCO reports the status of personnel, weapons systems, and equipment to higher headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the personnel killed, wounded, missing, and captured using DA Forms 1155 (Witness Statement on Individual) and DA Forms 1156 (Casualty Feeder Report) according to the standing operating procedures (SOP).</li> <li>b. Evacuated EPWs and deceased personnel according to SOP.</li> <li>c. Requested personnel and equipment replacements according to SOP.</li> <li>d. Updated the personnel battle roster as changes occurred.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. + The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES (01-2-2047.01-00CS)  
(FM 1-100) (FM 100-14) (FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The company/troop has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. Mission preparation was enhanced as a result of proper troop-leading procedures. Sufficient time was allocated to allow subordinate elements to conduct their preparations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The company/troop commander receives a mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted mission analysis using, mission, enemy, troops, terrain and weather, time available and civilian considerations (METT-TC).                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Performed mission analysis.</li> <li>(2) Analyzed enemy and friendly situation.</li> <li>(3) Performed terrain and weather analysis.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Provided back-brief/confirmation brief.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. +The company/troop commander issues the warning order to subordinate leaders, first sergeant, and the attached elements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning order.</li> <li>b. Delegated preparatory tasks.</li> <li>c. Designated air mission commander (AMC) (if applicable).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The company/troop commander makes a tentative plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued planning while the unit prepared for operations.</li> <li>b. Developed courses of action (COA) based on the factors of METT-TC.</li> <li>c. Conducted a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Used reverse planning to optimize time available.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The unit initiates movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established priorities of work.</li> <li>b. Prepared mission equipment for the mission.</li> <li>c. Conducted preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) and pre-flight (if applicable).</li> <li>d. Dispatched quartering party, if necessary.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The unit conducts reconnoiter.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted ground, air, and map reconnaissance IAW METT-TC.</li> <li>b. Identified information requirements.</li> <li>c. Confirmed/Identified routes, holding areas, lager sites, LZ/PZ, BP, etc.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 6. +The company/troop commander completes the plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Ensured that coordination with supported unit was conducted and/or:</p> <p>(1) Attended initial planning conference (for battalion/squadron or higher operations).</p> <p>(2) Coordinated with the battalion/squadron S3 and the supported unit S3 to ensure that all aspects of the specific operation had been addressed.</p> <p>(3) Coordinated (as necessary) with supporting units.</p> <p>b. Selected the best COA.</p> <p>c. Finalized the plan.</p> <p>* 7. +The company/troop commander issues an OPORD/FRAGO and ensures that all required briefings are conducted.</p> <p>a. Issued a 5-paragraph OPORD and/or an air mission brief.</p> <p>b. Conducted mission rehearsals.</p> <p>* 8. Leaders conduct pre-combat checks.</p> <p>* 9. Leaders supervise and refine preparations and execution.</p> <p>*10. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing	
011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-510-0504	Prepare a Company-Level Operation Order (OPORD)	
011-510-0505	Conduct Company-Level Rehearsals/AARs	
154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment	
301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process into Mission Planning	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT (01-2-7039.01-00CS)  
(FM 7-20) (FM 8-10-6) (FM 1-111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion/squadron is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The company/troop has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The company/troop is directed to conduct a hasty displacement when contact with threat forces has been broken. Indirect fire and smoke support will be provided to cover the move. Initial movement preparations have been made. Destruction of supplies, documents, and equipment has been coordinated with the battalion/squadron CP. Emergency burials have been authorized by the battalion commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. The company/troop relocated within the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. No serviceable supplies, equipment, or recognizable documents of military value were left behind.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The commander or first sergeant supervises hasty displacement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assembled soldiers at designated area.</li> <li>b. Briefed troops on the hasty displacement plan.</li> <li>c. Assigned the following tasks to sections or platoons:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Burial of casualties.</li> <li>(2) Destruction of supplies, equipment, and documents.</li> <li>(3) Load out.</li> <li>(4) Security of the unit during evacuation of the assembly area.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Designated vehicles to transport wounded soldiers.</li> <li>e. Coordinated indirect fire and smoke support.</li> <li>f. Briefed stay-behind security force.</li> <li>g. Forwarded situation report (SITREP) to the battalion/squadron CP.</li> </ul> <p>2. +The unit conducts emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed personal effects in bags.</li> <li>b. Attached identification personal effects tags to remains.</li> <li>c. Forwarded casualty feeder reports and witness statements to S1.</li> <li>d. Buried remains in unmarked, mass grave.</li> <li>e. Placed casualty identification tags on a wire/chain in the same order the remains were buried.</li> <li>f. Included an index marker that showed the first or the last interred remains and the direction of succession through the gravesite, if identification tags are placed on a closed loop.</li> <li>g. Prepared strip map with grid coordinates and terrain features of burial site.</li> </ul> <p>3. + The unit destroys supplies, equipment, and documents that it was unable to evacuate.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Destroyed documents according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). b. Destroyed supplies according to the unit SOP. c. Rendered equipment inoperative according to the unit SOP.  4. The unit departs the area. a. Loaded equipment according to commander's guidance. b. Exited area without confusion and excessive noise. c. Assembled at pre-designated area.  5. +The stay-behind security force covers unit displacement. a. Occupied fighting positions. b. Engaged threat with all available weapons to delay or disrupt advance. c. Performed disengagement under fire. d. Exited area by available means.  * 6. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-0001	Locate a Geographic Coordinate on a Sectional, JOG-A, or TPC	STP 1-93C1-SM STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center	STP 1-93P24-SM-TG
011-510-0006	Employ Fire Support	
011-510-0023	Conduct Assembly Area Operations	
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operations Order	
301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-2035.01-0NRC	IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2048.01-00CS	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-0012	Process Pilot Reports (PIREPS)	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0018	Provide Traffic Information/Advisories	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0020	Provide Flight Following Service	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0022	Provide Emergency Assistance	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0023	Issue Airport Condition Information	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0024	Perform Assumption of Duty Requirements	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0026	Control the Flight of Visual Flight Rules (VFR)/ Special Visual Flight Rules (SVFR) Aircraft	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0100	Transfer Radar Identification	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-1021	Communicate Using Interphone Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-1038	Provide Radar Approach Information	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-1039	Provide Airport Surveillance Radar Approach	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-1040	Provide Precision Approach Radar Approach	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-1044	Identify Aircraft Using Radar Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-1045	Provide Radar Separation	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-2001	Perform the Initial Orientation of Radar Set, AN/TPN-18A	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-2003	Assign Controllers to Operating Positions	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-2004	Perform the Responsibilities of a Shift Supervisor during or after an Aircraft Accident or Incident	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-3001	Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-3002	Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-3004	Perform the Responsibilities of an ATC Chief During or After an Aircraft Accident or Incident	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-3015	Develop Instrument Approach Procedures (Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR), Precision Approach Radar (PAR), Nondirectional Radio Beacon (NDB))	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-5006	Operate the Landing Control Central, AN/TSQ-71B	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5055	Record ATC Facility Daily Activities	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5057	Communicate Using Radio Communication Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5058	Supervise the Establishment of Terminal Instrument Approach	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-143-5059	Identify Airspace Control Measures	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-5062	Determine Army Airspace Command and Control Procedures	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0050.01-00CS	PERFORM ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) DUTIES IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0052.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0110.01-00CS	COORDINATE FLIGHT CHECKS OF AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES (ATS) FACILITIES AND NAVAIDS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0111.01-00CS	PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0201.01-00CS	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0032.01-00CS	CONDUCT GROUND-CONTROLLED APPROACH RADAR OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0033.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-70A OR AN/TSW-7A	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0034.01-00CS	CONDUCT TOWER OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0119.01-00CS	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0124.01-00CS	OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147 ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-4-3001.01-00CS	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS- ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** CONTROL TOWER TEAMS/TACTICAL TEAMS

**TASK:** CONDUCT TOWER OPERATIONS (01-4-0034.01-00CS)  
 (FM 1-303) (FAA ORDER 7110.65) (FM 1-120)  
 (TM 95-225) (TM 95-226)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The unit has coordinated with the supported aviation unit and forwarded required airspace data to the appropriate units. All soldiers and equipment are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. The team conducted control tower operations according to mission requirements and applicable references.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. +The tower team leader briefs the tower team on information pertinent to the current operation.</li> <li>* 2. +The tower team leader provides airfield information.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided airfield information to:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) TAIS—A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup>/AIC teams for inclusion with Tactical Approach Publications System (TAPS) report.</li> <li>(2) Tower team.</li> <li>(3) Ground-controlled approach (GCA) team leader.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Posted airfield information to the tactical Facility Training Manual.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. +The tower team leader determines airfield requirements.</li> <li>4. +The tower team provides terminal tower services.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed equipment checks to include navigational aids (NAVAIDS).</li> <li>b. Initiated and maintained the following:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) DA Forms 3502-R (Daily Report of Air Traffic Control Facility).</li> <li>(2) DA Forms 3503-R (Air Traffic Control Position Log).</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Performed flight check operations according to mission requirements.</li> <li>d. Recognized electronic attack and implemented electronic protection.</li> <li>e. Determined runway in use and traffic pattern.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with GCA team for arrival/departure radar services.</li> <li>g. Issued arrival/departure clearances.</li> <li>h. Issued control instructions within assigned airspace.</li> <li>i. Coordinated with AIC for arrival/departure information.</li> <li>j. Conducted arrival/departure/flight following services with aircraft according to mission requirements.</li> <li>k. Conducted ground control functions according to mission requirements.</li> <li>l. Provided traffic information and advisories.</li> <li>m. Provided emergency assistance as required.</li> <li>n. Conducted limited weather observations.</li> <li>o. Received and issued weather reports and updates.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
p. Received, solicited, and issued pilot reports. q. Transmitted airport condition information.  * 5. + The commander or leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-0012	Process Pilot Reports (PIREPS)	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0014	Process Flight Progress Strips	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0015	Control Aircraft, Vehicles, and Personnel by ATC Light Gun Signals	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0018	Provide Traffic Information/Advisories	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0019	Select Runway for Use	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0020	Provide Flight Following Service	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0022	Provide Emergency Assistance	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0023	Issue Airport Condition Information	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0024	Perform Assumption of Duty Requirements	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0026	Control the Flight of VFR/SVFR Aircraft	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-2003	Assign Controllers to Operating Positions	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-2004	Perform the Responsibilities of a Shift Supervisor During or after an Aircraft Accident or Incident	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-3001	Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-3002	Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-3004	Perform the Responsibilities of an ATC Chief during or after an Aircraft Accident or Incident	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-3015	Develop Instrument Approach Procedures (ASR, PAR, NDB)	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-5002	Operate the Air Traffic Control Central, AN/TSQ-70A	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5004	Operate the Air Traffic Control Central, AN/TSW-7A	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5055	Record ATC Facility Daily Activities	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5057	Communicate Using Radio Communication Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5059	Identify Airspace Control Measures	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-143-5060	Control Aircraft Taxi	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5062	Determine Army Airspace Command and Control Procedures	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-5063	Decode Meteorological Terminal Aviation Report (METAR) Weather Reports	STP 1-93C1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0050.01-00CS	PERFORM ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) DUTIES IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0052.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0111.01-00CS	PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0201.01-00CS	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0029.01-00CS	INSTALL THE LANDING CONTROL CENTRAL AN/TSQ-71 SERIES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0032.01-00CS	CONDUCT GROUND-CONTROLLED APPROACH RADAR OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0034.01-00CS	CONDUCT TOWER OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0119.01-00CS	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0124.01-00CS	OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-4-3001.01-00CS	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS- ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0021.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)1	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Posted identity, friend or foe (IFF) operation procedures, such as IFF on/off line.</li> <li>f. Posted alternate ADA identification procedures.</li> <li>g. Displayed weapons control status in effect.</li> <li>h. Posted airspace restrictions, such as:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Low-level routes.</li> <li>(2) Minimum risk routes.</li> <li>(3) High-density airspace control zones.</li> <li>(4) Restricted operation areas.</li> <li>(5) Standard use Army aircraft flight routes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>i. Posted other information pertaining to the operational area of responsibility.</li> <li>j. Posted on-call or demand activated navigation aids.</li> </ul> <p>4. The team provides information (via secure means only), when requested by supported units:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided type(s) and number of aircraft.</li> <li>b. Provided contact frequency and call sign.</li> <li>c. Provided routes of flight.</li> <li>d. Provided altitudes.</li> <li>e. Provided time and location that aircraft would enter or exit the ADA defended areas.</li> <li>f. Provided other information, as required.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. +Commander/Leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-0014	Process Flight Progress Strips	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0018	Provide Traffic Information/Advisories	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0020	Provide Flight Following Service	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-1021	Communicate Using Interphone Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-3002	Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-5057	Communicate Using Radio Communication Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5063	Decode METAR Weather Reports	STP 1-93C1-SM STP 1-93P1-SM

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-143-7000	Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decisionmaking Process	
011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings	
011-420-0018	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0052.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0111.01-00CS	PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0025.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TSC-61B	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0117.01-00CS	INSTALL THE TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM (TAIS) AN/TSQ-221	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0119.01-00CS	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0124.01-00CS	OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-3001.01-00CS	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS-ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. The AIC team provides information (via secure means only), when requested by supported units. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided type(s) and number of aircraft.</li> <li>b. Provided contact frequency and call sign.</li> <li>c. Provided routes of flight.</li> <li>d. Provided altitudes.</li> <li>e. Provided time and location that aircraft would enter or exit the ADA-defended areas.</li> <li>f. Provided other information as required.</li> </ul> 4. +The AIC team installs a nondirectional beacon as required. * 5. + The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-0014	Process Flight Progress Strips	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0018	Provide Traffic Information/Advisories	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0020	Provide Flight Following Service	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-1021	Communicate Using Interphone Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-3002	Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-5008	Operate the Flight Coordination Central, AN/TSC-61B	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5057	Communicate Using Radio Communication Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5063	Decode METAR Weather Reports	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-7000	Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures	STP 1-93C1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-0052.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0111.01-00CS	PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C <sup>2</sup> ) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0025.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TSC-61B	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0117.01-00CS	INSTALL THE TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM (TAIS) AN/TSQ-221	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0118.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (TAIS-AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0124.01-00CS	OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-3001.01-00CS	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS-ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(5) Conducted net calls and monitored acknowledgements  4. +The communications section establishes a radio retransmission station. a. Selected a site for equipment placement. (1) Selected the site which best met the retransmission requirements. (2) Ensured that a covered and concealed position was selected. (3) Ensured that the site provided egress routes. (4) Provided physical security. b. Operated a secure retransmission station.  5. +The communications section establishes and operates a tactical telephone network.  6. +The communications section implements electronic protection techniques as required. a. Recognized jamming and interference. b. Used appropriate countermeasures (continued to operate, increased power, rerouted radio traffic, relocated antenna, changed frequency, etc.). c. Notified the supervisor of suspected jamming/interference. d. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference report.  * 7. +The commander or leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1051	Implement Electronic Protections (EPs)	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1052	Operate Single Channel Ground and Air Radio System (SINCGARS) Equipment	STP 1-93C1-SM STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1054	Operate SINCGARS Data Device	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-141-1056	Operate the VRC-97 (MSRT)	STP 1-93P1-SM
011-500-2300	Operate Communications Security Equipment	
113-587-1064	Prepare SINCGARS (Manpack) for Operation	STP 1-93C1-SM STP 1-93P1-SM
113-587-2001	Operate Radio Set AN/PRC-77 or AN/PRC-25	STP 1-93P1-SM
113-587-2071	Operate SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) (Net Members)	STP 1-93C1-SM STP 1-93P1-SM
113-596-1068	Install Antenna Group OE-254/GRC (Team Method)	MOS E 31C 1 MOS E 31R 1
113-305-1001	Communicate by a Tactical Radio	STP 1-93P1-SM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1023.01-00CS	ESTABLISH AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1302.01-00CS	ESTABLISH A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0001.01-00CS	PLAN FOR UNIT MOVE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0101.01-00CS	OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0102.01-00CS	DEFEND UNIT POSITION	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2048.01-00CS	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-7102.01-0NRC	SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Conducted before operations preventive maintenance checks and services. b. Performed turn-on procedures. c. Established ground-to-air communications with supported aviation units.  6. +The team controls the flow of air traffic. a. Operated AN/TSQ-198. b. Established ground-to-air communications. c. Used lost communications procedures IAW SOP, when required. d. Used radio communication procedures consistent with the threat. e. Controlled/Advised arrivals and departures.  7. +The team set communications and controller requirements for localized air-space command and control.  * 8. + The commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-0018	Provide Traffic Information/Advisories	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0022	Provide Emergency Assistance	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-0026	Control the Flight of VFR/SVFR Aircraft	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-3001	Supervise the Emplacement of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-3002	Supervise the Operation of Tactical Equipment	STP 1-93C24-SM-TG
011-143-5050	Install Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or AN/TRN-30(V)2	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5051	Operate Beacon Set, AN/TRN-30(V)1 or (V)2	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-5060	Control Aircraft Taxi	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-7003	Install the AN/TSQ-198 (Tactical Terminal Control System)	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-143-7004	Operate the AN/TSQ-198 (Tactical Terminal Control System)	STP 1-93C1-SM
071-329-1006	Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point while Dismounted	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0050.01-00CS	PERFORM ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) DUTIES IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0052.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0111.01-00CS	PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0201.01-00CS	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0034.01-00CS	CONDUCT TOWER OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0119.01-00CS	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0124.01-00CS	OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-3001.01-00CS	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS-ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0021.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)1	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0116.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-198	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0123.01-00CS	CONDUCT LANDING ZONE/PICKUP ZONE (LZ/PZ) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-1353.01-00CS	PROVIDE PATHFINDER SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** TACTICAL TEAMS

**TASK:** CONDUCT LANDING ZONE/PICKUP ZONE (LZ/PZ) OPERATIONS (01-5-0123.01-00CS)  
 (FM 57-38) (FM 1-113)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The team is to conduct LZ/PZ mission(s) in support of close/deep aviation operations. The team may move by air/ground transportation to a designated location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit integrated digital systems, as appropriate. The unit completes the mission without loss of personnel or equipment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The team leader plans and coordinates the mission.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The ground unit commander is responsible for all tactical considerations (mission, enemy, troops, terrain, weather, time, available and civilian considerations [METT-TC], helicopter pickup zone (HPZ) location, and size of the element being moved) of the helicopter landing zone (HLZ). The aviation commander determines the size of the HLZ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned HLZ approach and departure routes.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Applied 10:1 obstacle clearance ratio rule.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The 10:1 rule can be reduced to no less than 5:1, depending on insertion or extraction load.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(2) Obtained prevailing wind data for HLZ location.</li> <li>(3) Determined departure heading.</li> <li>b. Obtained atmospheric conditions of temperature and humidity.</li> <li>c. Determined HLZ elevation in mean sea level (MSL).</li> <li>d. Determined type of load (equipment or personnel, internal or external, insertion or extraction).</li> <li>e. Coordinated emergency landing/crash procedures with aviation and ground unit commanders.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with aviation and ground unit commanders on aircraft operations, proposed communications checkpoint (CCP), and release point (RP).</li> <li>g. Coordinated with commanders on the preparation of loading/unloading plan.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Reconnaissance must be conducted before mission (may be photo/TAC air/ground reconnaissance).</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The most effective method, route of insertion, and extraction for team must be established before the mission.</p> <p>* 2. +The team leader prepares the team to conduct HPZ operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assembled team.</li> <li>b. Briefed team concerning:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy/friendly situations.</li> <li>(2) Mission.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Communications procedures.                      (4) Emergency extraction points.                      (5) Loading/unloading plan of aviation/ground commanders.</p> <p>c. Conducted equipment checks.                      d. Distributed necessary supplies to team members, such as rations, ammunitions, pyrotechnics, batteries, and landing aids.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The team establishes and maintains communications with the air traffic services (ATS) net and units as dictated by mission.</p> <p>3. +The team infiltrates the HLZ.</p> <p>a. Reported surface conditions.                      b. Established and maintained communications with the ATS net and units as dictated by mission.                      c. Established the HLZ.                      d. Operated the HLZ.                      e. Assessed the current situations and suitability of HLZ.                      f. Provided a situation report (SITREP), which included, as a minimum:</p> <p>(1) Threat.                      (2) HLZ ground slope using formula:  <math display="block">VD \times 57.3 = \text{Slope in degrees HD}</math>                     VD = Vertical distance                      HD = Horizontal distance                      (3) Surface conditions.                      (4) Changes to proposed location(s) of CCP and RP to supported units.</p> <p>g. Removed, reduced, or marked hazardous obstacles.                      h. Installed landing/navigational aids, such as, lights, panel markers, and beacon, as required.                      i. Established ground-to-air communications, if required.                      j. Relayed updated meteorological local weather observation (LWO) and flight pattern information to Tactical Airspace Integration System using FBCB2 and aircraft, as needed.                      k. Provided updated meteorological observation or LWO and flight pattern information to arriving aircraft.                      l. Communicated with aircraft without radio communications through hand, smoke, light, or signal panels, as necessary.</p> <p>* 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
071-329-1006	Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0050.01-00CS	PERFORM ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) DUTIES IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0052.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0111.01-00CS	PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0201.01-00CS	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0034.01-00CS	CONDUCT TOWER OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0119.01-00CS	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0124.01-00CS	OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-3001.01-00CS	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS- ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0021.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)1	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0033.01-00CS	PROVIDE AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES (ATS) AT A TEMPORARY LANDING SITE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0116.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-198	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-1353.01-00CS	PROVIDE PATHFINDER SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Established the LZ/PZ control center (CC).               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Selected a control site along the axis of flight but displaced from the landing site.</li> <li>(b) Prepared a supplementary position for the CC to serve as a manual release point or final approach fix in reduced visibility conditions.</li> <li>(c) Coordinated all aircraft movement into, out of, and around the LZ/PZ.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Provided air traffic advisories to aircraft.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Established air traffic patterns, if tactically feasible.</li> <li>(b) Established air control points to control ingress and egress of aircraft.</li> <li>(c) Maintained aircraft or unit separation.</li> <li>(d) Issued landing, takeoff, and equipment drop clearances.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(3) Established the landing site (site party has already been established).               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Determined landing sites.</li> <li>(b) Marked landing sites with marker panels and/or lights as required.</li> <li>(c) Determined the intercept heading from the release point to the landing sites.</li> <li>(d) Determined landing formations best suited for the LZ/PZ.</li> <li>(e) Designated slingload points.</li> <li>(f) Cleared slingload and touchdown points.</li> <li>(g) Arranged personnel and loads for air movement.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(4) Established communications.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Operated a ground-to-air radio net.</li> <li>(b) Operated an internal pathfinder net as required.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducted LZ/PZ operations for an air assault.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assisted with aircraft landing.</li> <li>(2) Directed air assault ground elements to landing sites.</li> <li>(3) Assisted with loading personnel into aircraft.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Conducted LZ/PZ operations for an air movement operation.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Organized load and slingload points.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Determined appropriate landing point for slingloads.</li> <li>(b) Checked the weight, rigging, and positioning of loads.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Provided advice and technical assistance to the supported unit.</li> <li>(3) Supervised the rigging and inspection of loads.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Maintained records of aircraft arrivals, departures, and type loads.</li> <li>e. Reported information to headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>5. +The pathfinder team performs drop zone (DZ) operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established a DZ.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Organized a DZ support team.</li> <li>(2) Checked equipment for current calibration.</li> <li>(3) Selected the location of the CC.</li> <li>(4) Selected the point of impact location.</li> <li>(5) Selected the release point location.</li> <li>(6) Conducted the final ground and aerial reconnaissance at least 1 hour before drop time.</li> <li>(7) Provided visual acquisition aids.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Maintained positive control of drop operations.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Maintained records of aircraft arrivals, departures, and type loads. d. Reported information to headquarters.  * 6. +Commander/leader performs, or delegates the performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-0008	Conduct Landing Zone/PickUp Zone (LZ/PZ) Operations	STP 1-93C1-SM
011-420-0018	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-0050.01-00CS	PERFORM ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> ) DUTIES IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0052.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S6)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0111.01-00CS	PROVIDE SIGNAL SUPPORT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0112.01-00CS	CONDUCT TACTICAL AIRSPACE INTEGRATION SYSTEM—ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (TAIS-A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> )	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0113.01-00CS	CONDUCT CIVIL-MILITARY LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-0125.01-00CS	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS A <sup>2</sup> C <sup>2</sup> IN SUPPORT OF A DIVISION OR HIGHER LEVEL OF COMMAND	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-1-1311.01-00CS	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0201.01-00CS	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-2-2047.01-00CS	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0034.01-00CS	CONDUCT TOWER OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0119.01-00CS	CONDUCT AIRSPACE INFORMATION CENTER (AIC) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-0124.01-00CS	OPERATE THE ELECTRONIC SHOP SHELTER-MOUNTED AVIONICS AN/ASM-146 AND AN/ASM-147	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-3001.01-00CS	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS-ELECTRONICS (COM/NAV) MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0021.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TRN-30(V)1	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0033.01-00CS	PROVIDE AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES (ATS) AT A TEMPORARY LANDING SITE	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0116.01-00CS	INSTALL THE AN/TSQ-198	ARTEP 1-425-MTP
01-5-0123.01-00CS	CONDUCT LANDING ZONE/PICKUP ZONE (LZ/PZ) OPERATIONS	ARTEP 1-425-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



## Chapter 6

# EXTERNAL EVALUATIONS

### 6-1. General.

a. This chapter is a guide for preparing and conducting external evaluations. Major paragraphs detail how to prepare the evaluation, select and train observer/controllers (O/Cs), conduct the evaluation, and conduct the after action review (AAR).

b. External evaluations are designed to provide the battalion commander and his higher headquarters with an assessment of the unit's ability to perform its critical wartime missions. Battalion evaluations are administered at the discretion of the chain of command and are usually planned, administered, and evaluated at a level two headquarters higher than the unit being evaluated. For example, the division headquarters evaluates the battalion with input from the brigade headquarters. The unit should modify the evaluation based on METT-TC, contingency plans, and the battalion's METL. The METL, in conjunction with the T&EOs in chapter 5 of this MTP, provides the primary basis and focus for an external evaluation.

### 6-2. Preparing the Evaluation.

a. **General Preparation Procedures.** To ensure the evaluation accurately measures the battalion's capabilities, the headquarters administering the evaluation must develop a plan for preparation, administration, evaluation, and reporting of the examination results. This section outlines evaluation preparation procedures.

(1) The method used to prepare the evaluation depends on the intent of the commander administering the evaluation. If the intent is to determine the unit's ability to execute its wartime mission, the evaluation should mirror the missions required by their contingency plans. If the evaluation is to be a diagnostic tool to help the commander develop future training plans, the emphasis should be on devising an evaluation that allows him to see his unit perform as many tasks or subtasks as possible in the given time, with as little redundancy as possible.

(2) An evaluation developed to evaluate fighting abilities should use, as a start point, the battalion's wartime contingency plan and possible missions associated with the execution of that plan. While the scenarios will reflect contingency plans, the preparer of the evaluation must realize that because of the nature of missions being evaluated, those tasks that must be executed will include redundancies.

(3) In formulating a diagnostic evaluation to help develop future training plans, the initiating headquarters should look across the spectrum of missions the battalion might be called upon to execute. It should select those with as little task and subtask redundancy as possible. This should give the battalion a more comprehensive evaluation in a given time period.

(4) The battalion evaluation often will be a combination of evaluating fighting abilities and developing plans and orders. It will include some missions selected because of the battalion's wartime contingency mission and others selected because of the value of the tasks and their contribution to a well-rounded evaluation. Regardless of the technique used, after the mission and tasks are identified, they should be arranged in a logical sequence based on the order in which they will occur in the scenario. The selected missions and tasks are then grouped into events. The end of each event represents a break point where the evaluation scenario can be interrupted, if required, for assessment, AARs, or a change in the scenario. After missions and tasks are grouped into events, they are listed on the unit evaluation worksheet (see figure 6-1). The worksheet serves as the base document for the AAR.

UNIT EVALUATION WORKSHEET						Date: _____
Unit: _____						
No.	Mission/ Task	Company Platoon Section	Company Platoon/ Section	Company Platoon/ Section	Company Platoon/ Section	Unit Overall Rating & Remarks
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	

\*If more space is required for remarks use the back side of this form.  
Page \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_

Figure 6-1. Sample Unit Evaluation Worksheet.

(5) Preparation includes development of enemy situations, friendly situations, warning orders, FRAGOs, OPORDs, overlays, milestones, and message input to support the scenario. In addition to being a vital requirement for a well-coordinated evaluation, production of these materials and documents provides excellent staff training (see FM 25-4).

(6) O/C organization and O/C information packets must be developed. O/C AARs and meeting requirements should be considered with the milestone schedule and key events list.

(7) In preparing the evaluation for a battalion, the higher headquarters should ensure that ample maneuver space is available; supporting forces (OPFOR and CS and CSS elements normally attached to the unit being evaluated) are identified and made available; and sufficient ammunition, POL, and spare parts are on hand.

**b. Mission Essential Task List.** The battalion METL, in conjunction with the T&EOs in chapter 5 of this MTP, provides the foundation and focus for external evaluations. It lists the collective tasks the unit must successfully perform to accomplish its wartime mission. It also serves as the start point for the development of the evaluation. All mission essential tasks should be evaluated to obtain an accurate assessment of the battalion's capability to perform its mission. Additional collective tasks from chapter 5 can be added to complement the mission essential tasks. Since it is impossible to evaluate every task in this MTP, selective tailoring is required. The list of evaluated tasks also can be modified when the evaluation is used primarily as a diagnostic tool.

**c. Evaluation Scenario Development.** Once evaluation tasks are identified and listed, the evaluating headquarters develops a broad exercise scenario and supporting materials. The scenario (graphically portrayed in figure 4-2) approximates the logical sequence in which tasks would usually be performed on the battlefield. It should depict general events and broad time-planning factors so it can be revised, refined, and expanded as needed. The materials in chapter 4 of this MTP are valuable in developing the scenario. Development of the scenario requires manpower devoted to planning and scheduling activities. Many of these actions can be accomplished concurrently. A sample evaluation scenario is provided in table 6-1.

(1) The scenario requires development of a variety of supporting materials. The friendly and enemy situations are developed in detail and prepared in the form of intelligence summaries (INTSUMs), OPORDs, map overlays, and related documents. These are used later during the evaluation. A master event or incident list is prepared. It depicts the cues or events that will cause the battalion to perform the mission essential tasks. Developed along with the master event list are the actual event drivers such as FRAGOs, messages, OPFOR missions, controller tasks, role player assignments, and records and reports. Included in this process are determinations of evaluation requirements and responsibilities and preparation of materials that will help the O/Cs conduct the evaluation.

(2) In preparing the master event list, developers must ensure they incorporate the cues or events that will cause the battalion to perform all mission essential tasks. Because mission essential tasks are directly related to the collective tasks in chapter 5, developers will find cues already identified in the condition statement of each T&EO. Throughout planning and development of the exercise, the primary focus must be on structuring the evaluation in such a way that it provides the battalion an opportunity to perform its mission essential tasks to the standards specified in this MTP.

(3) A method of ensuring that most, if not all, mission essential tasks are included in the evaluation is to expand the general scenario by listing the mission essential tasks that will be performed under each phase of the evaluation. Adding an evaluation column to the unit evaluation worksheet produces a chart that can be used to summarize results of the evaluation of each critical task.

Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario.

FTX: CONDUCT COMBAT/COMBAT SUPPORT OPERATIONS				
SEQUENCE	EVENT	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED	PROPOSED TIMEFRAME	
1	Administrative preparations.	Pre FTX		
2	Battalion receives OPORD.	1 hour	Day 1	
3	Battalion initiates personnel recall and issues warning order to companies.	2 hours		
*4	Battalion prepares for tactical movement.	4 hours		
5	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and prepares OPORD.	(2 to) 4 hours (Depending on the complexity of the mission)		
*6	Coordinate required assistance during movement.	6 hours		
7	Battalion issues OPORD to subordinate elements.	1 hour		
*8	Monitor movement of subordinate elements.	6 hours		
*9	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours		
10	Main body conducts tactical move.	1.5 hours (Total en route time without training events, based on distance traveled)		
*11	Advance party secures assembly area (AA) and establishes hasty defense.	1 hour		
12	Main body crosses a contaminated area (decontamination is not performed; crossing is to train or evaluate crossing procedures only).	0.5 hour (AAR if required)		
13	Main body continues tactical move to AA.	N/A		
14	Main body reacts to hostile aircraft.	0.5 hour (AAR if required)		
15	Main body continues tactical move to AA.	N/A		

FTX: CONDUCT COMBAT/COMBAT SUPPORT OPERATIONS				
SEQUENCE	EVENT	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED	PROPOSED TIMEFRAME	
16	Main body closes on and occupies AA.	1 hour (Unit SOP will vary on when AA occupation is complete)		
*17	Battalion establishes perimeter defense.	1 hour		
18	Battalion headquarters establishes tactical operations center (TOC).	1 hour		
*19	Companies establish command posts.	1 hour		
*20	Battalion establishes communications with higher HQ (may be simulated).	0.5 hour		
*21	Battalion establishes internal communications.	0.5 hour		
22	Conduct AAR: Company and Battalion.	1.5		
23	Battalion conducts tactical sustainment.	72.0 hours		
*24	Battalion executes STX-A: Conduct terminal ATS.	14.5 hours	Day 2	
*25	Battalion executes STX-B: Conduct forward area ATS.	9 hours	Day 3	
26	Battalion receives FRAGO to redeploy to home station.	1 hour	Day 4	
*27	Battalion prepares for redeployment.	3 hours		
28	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and issues a FRAGO to the companies.	2 (to 4) hours (Depending on the complexity of the mission)		
30	Redeployment OPORD issued by battalion.	1 hour		
*30	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours		
31	Main body conducts tactical move.	1.5 hours		
32	Main body closes on and occupies AA home station.	3.0 hours (May be extended for equipment servicing and storage)		

FTX: CONDUCT COMBAT/COMBAT SUPPORT OPERATIONS			
SEQUENCE	EVENT	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED	PROPOSED TIMEFRAME
33	Conduct final AAR: Company and battalion.	1.5 hours	
		Total time 97 hours	
<p>* Indicates time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.</p> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <p>Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.</p> <p>Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the staff.</p> <p>AARs are not time-constrained.</p>			

**6-3. Resource Requirements and Planning Considerations.** Resource requirements and other planning considerations become evident as the evaluation is expanded and developed. Even in the planning stages, when everything is subject to change, developers must begin scheduling, coordinating, and other planning to ensure a successful evaluation. Table 6-2 is an example of consolidated support requirements. Requirements and considerations for the evaluation team or other staff agencies that have been designated specific responsibilities include—

- a. Scheduling training areas.
- b. Preparing a calendar of events and key milestones for the evaluation, including the final AAR and preparation of the after action report.
- c. Identifying individual and battalion support requirements. Tasking applicable agencies, personnel, and units required to perform O/C, safety, support, OPFOR, and other functions.
- d. Requisitioning training ammunition, training aids, other training materials, fuel, rations, and other required supplies.
- e. Coordinating unit movement and transportation support requirements.
- f. Identifying equipment requirements and coordinating support.
- g. Notifying supporting and supported units of the planned evaluation dates and coordinating adjustments, to include personnel and unit support required to perform the unit's mission while it is undergoing evaluation.
- h. Scheduling and conducting safety training.
- i. Scheduling O/C training and orientation sessions.
- j. Identifying and scheduling OPFOR training.

**Table 6-2. Example Consolidated Support Requirements.**

<b>AMMUNITION</b>	<b>QUANTITY</b>
5.56-mm (blank)	134 rounds/rifleman
5.56-mm(blank, link)	400/M249
Caliber .50 (blank)	200 rounds per M2 machinegun
Hand grenade (practice)	2 per soldier
Hand grenade fuse (practice)	2 per soldier
Simulator, artillery	8 per co./10 OPFOR
Simulator, boobytrap	6 per co./3 OPFOR
<b>OTHER ITEMS</b>	<b>QUANTITY</b>
Diesel and MOGAS	500 gal.
JP8	10,000 gal.
Batteries – BA 200 (6-volt)	48 ea.
Batteries – BA 3090 (9-volt)	560 ea.
Chemlights	4 box per co.
War wound moulage kit	1 ea.
Miles equipment for all weapons and personnel.	
Miles controller guns per O/C.	

**6-4. Selecting and Training Observers/Controllers.** An accurate evaluation depends heavily on selecting O/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the conduct of the evaluation. Standard procedures are essential in ensuring that the evaluation is administered fairly and correctly for all units commanded by the evaluating headquarters.

**a.** At the battalion level, the number of O/Cs required varies, depending on the technique of evaluation. If the intent is to conduct a multiechelon, simultaneous evaluation, the number of O/Cs can be high. If the intent is to stick to the two-echelons-above rule (that is, division evaluates battalions; battalions evaluate platoons; companies evaluate sections), the number of O/Cs can be reduced. An O/C team comprised of the following personnel is the minimum recommended to performing an external evaluation of a battalion:

- (1) Senior O/C: aviation lieutenant colonel.
- (2) Staff O/C: aviation major or captain.
- (3) Operations O/C: aviation major.
- (4) Administrative O/C: MOS 75Z sergeant first class.
- (5) Logistics O/C: MOS 76Y sergeant first class.
- (6) NBC O/C: MOS 54B sergeant first class.

**b.** O/Cs must be thoroughly familiar with the battalion missions, organization, equipment, and doctrine. They need to understand the overall operation of the battalion and how it is integrated into and supports Army operations. Team members must have a comprehensive working knowledge of common individual and collective tasks in areas of ATS, basic soldier skills, communications, and NBC. At least one member of the evaluation team must have detailed expertise in the NBC and local defense common task areas. O/Cs should be at least equal in grade to the person in charge of the element of which they are making the primary evaluation. If possible, O/Cs should have had previous experience in the position being evaluated. All members of the team must be able to make objective assessments, function effectively as team members, and articulate their findings orally and in writing.

c. O/C training focuses on providing O/Cs a general understanding of the overall evaluation, providing each O/C a detailed understanding of his specific duties and responsibilities, and building a spirit of teamwork. O/C training should include the following:

(1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master event list, and specific evaluation purposes and objectives. Each event is designed to evaluate specific critical missions or tasks within the overall scenario. The O/Cs must know the evaluation thoroughly and precisely to ensure that it is implemented correctly.

(2) The battalion METL, and the manner in which it relates to T&EOs and other materials in this MTP. The O/C must understand the task, the doctrine required to execute the task, the standards, and the methods used to measure mission and task accomplishment. Also, each O/C should be furnished with the battalion TACSOP. The evaluation validates this document.

(3) O/C team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each team member.

(4) Detailed duties and responsibilities of individual team members, with special emphasis on the master event list items for which they will be responsible. Information is included on the evaluation control system and its use to ensure that the evaluation is administered in a consistent, standardized manner and that the correct data are collected for the final evaluation.

(5) A review of the written instructions and materials contained in the O/C folders.

(6) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.

(7) The O/C and command and control systems, to include a review of the O/C organization apparatus. The organization is usually depicted on a flow chart showing evaluation coverage in depth. The command and control system normally includes a separate radio net and signal operating instructions (SOI) for O/Cs. The SOI should include call signs and frequencies for the evaluated unit, controllers, and OPFOR as well as for all O/Cs. O/Cs should never rely on the organic tactical radio nets of the unit being evaluated.

(8) Safety procedures.

(9) The evaluation data collection plan and procedures. The plan states how data are to be reported, collected, consolidated, and briefed. It covers times and locations of O/C meetings and when O/Cs should debrief their counterparts.

(10) AAR procedures and techniques in accordance with FM 25-4.

d. Talk-through of the entire evaluation in which the evaluation team wargames all items of the master event list in order of occurrence. The team reviews the objective of each event, individual team member responsibilities, and anticipated problems.

e. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides team leadership, focusing his efforts on assuring evaluation personnel fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan. He answers questions concerning the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of team members, ensures close coordination among team members, holds periodic team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the battalion AAR, and conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

**6-5. Selecting and Training Opposing Forces.** Selection and training of the OPFOR is crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. While OPFOR support may be used in only a few tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to assure a proper assessment of unit capabilities. OPFOR provide one of the control measures that influences the conditions under which the evaluation is administered. While it is impossible to have the same OPFOR unit each time, the better trained the OPFOR is to a stated standard, the more standard the evaluation. During an external evaluation, OPFOR support should depict the most likely threat force the battalion will encounter. The force must be augmented with sufficient CS and CSS to accurately portray the expected threat.

a. **OPFOR Commander.** The OPFOR commander should be well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. His grade is determined by the size of the OPFOR element he commands; he can range from senior NCO to field grade officer. In addition to duties and responsibilities leading various

OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander is a part-time member of the O/C team. To fulfill these responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities. He also must be present during AARs.

**b. OPFOR Elements.** OPFOR elements must be trained, organized, equipped, and maneuvered to depict threat forces as realistically as possible. As a minimum, they must be distinguishable on the battlefield from friendly forces through use of visual modifications (VISMOD). The characteristics of OPFOR weapons (range of weapons, rounds on board, protection, and penetration) should be the same as the enemy force being depicted. Some characteristics can be portrayed using the MILES, while others must be represented by O/C interaction. OPFOR training must include—

- (1) Threat tactics.
- (2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- (3) Rules of engagement.
- (4) OPFOR tasks and standards for each mission.
- (5) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- (6) Command and control.
- (7) Safety.
- (8) The evaluation scenario (who does what and when).
- (9) Impact of personnel and equipment shortages in the evaluated unit.

**c. Offensive Strength.** If available, OPFOR should be armed with weapons organic to the force it is depicting. OPFOR must have the mobility to move rapidly around the battlefield and should be strong enough to offer the evaluated unit a realistic challenge.

**b. Defensive Strength.** As in the offense, OPFOR must have weapons organic to the force being depicted. Attack and defense ratios can be greatly reduced directly proportional to the amount of time available for the OPFOR to prepare the defense. The defense should be challenging, and like the offense, it also depends on METT-TC.

## **6-6. Conducting the Evaluation.**

**a. General.** The senior O/C exercises overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He also oversees support provided by the individuals and elements selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

(1) O/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit. Their selection, training, and duties were covered earlier in this chapter.

(2) The battalion's next higher headquarters or a specialized cell drawn from that headquarters should be selected and trained to serve as the control element for the evaluation. This element issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR. This cell is commonly referred to as the "White Cell."

(3) All exercise participants and supporting personnel have a continuing mission to ensure every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to correct them and advise superiors of the situation.

**b. Phases of the Evaluation.** Conduct of the evaluation is divided into three phases: pre-evaluation, evaluation, and post-evaluation.

### **(1) Pre-evaluation phase.**

(a) Reconnaissance of the evaluation area. The senior O/C and all other O/Cs must make a reconnaissance of the evaluation area. This will ensure that all O/Cs understand the boundaries of the area and the locations of key terrain, and objectives.

(b) Review of O/C folders. Under control of the senior O/C, O/Cs should review their evaluation packets to ensure they contain all pertinent administrative and tactical directives. The senior O/C must ensure all O/Cs understand the directives. He should review the milestone schedule and answer any questions pertaining to the evaluation plan, control plan, or tactical scenario for the evaluated unit.

**(2) Evaluation phase.**

**(a) Controlling the exercise.** Normally, the next higher headquarters acts as the controlling unit in a battalion evaluation. In the role as the White Cell, this headquarters issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR. This frees the O/Cs to perform their principal duty of observing, reporting, and recording the actions of the evaluated unit. The higher headquarters may choose to designate a separate control element to accompany the evaluated unit; this allows the O/C maximum flexibility because he does not have to function as both a controller and evaluator.

**(b) O/C control.** In the absence of a separate control element, or if a problem in the control plan proves detrimental to the continuity of the scenario, the O/C must be able to step in and implement the controls required to salvage the operation. If the O/C is forced to take action, he must guard against overreacting and, thus, disrupting the initiative and momentum of the exercise.

**(c) Terminating the event.** The senior O/C should terminate an event when the evaluated unit has completed all tasks and missions in a particular event or when the unit has suffered such extensive casualties or damage that assigned missions or tasks cannot be executed. Coordination with the senior O/C is crucial to ensure events are stopped and started in a timely fashion. The senior O/C may decide he wants to run several events in sequence before halting the scenario to conduct a critique or gather evaluation data. While this decision is normally made before the exercise begins, adjustments can be made during the operation if coordinated with the control headquarters.

**1** Guidelines for O/Cs.

**2** Observe critical events based on the milestone schedule and record any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission outcome. Be specific. Using T&EOs, evaluate events in accordance with the unit evaluation worksheet, current doctrine, and unit SOPs.

**3** Ensure that the control headquarters is kept abreast of the unit's location, and intent. This enables the headquarters to control OPFOR action in accordance with the desired sequence of events.

**4** Enforce rules of engagement.

**5** Enforce safety.

**(3) Post-evaluation phase.**

**(a)** Immediately upon termination of the exercise, the senior O/C should assemble his O/Cs and prepare the final AAR and begin work on the final after-action report. The after-action report is a formal document the commander uses to develop future training plans. It addresses all combined arms functional tasks performed in the missions executed during the evaluation. While the format and content for the after action report may vary among commands, all after-action reports should have, as a foundation, the unit evaluation worksheet (figure 6-1) annotated with the proper rating criteria as demonstrated during the course of the evaluation. In addition, the AAR conducted at the end of the exercise aids in preparation of the written after action report. This provides the commander a precise evaluation of his unit training status and serves as the bridge between evaluation and training. It also eliminates ambiguity resulting from use of generalized strength and weakness statements.

**(b)** Unit evaluation worksheets provide a consolidated rollup of the unit's performance and of the battalion's overall mission rating, i.e. "Go," "No-Go," for the missions and their supporting collective tasks. Composition of the worksheet may vary depending on the unit's location, contingency plans, and intent of the evaluation. For example, if the evaluation was designed to give an overall diagnostic assessment, the worksheet concentrates on underlying tasks. For an evaluation to test contingency plans, the worksheet focuses on specific missions.

**(c)** To aid in planning future training, the battalion's training status is recorded on the unit proficiency worksheet. The worksheet contains assessments of strong and weak areas noted during training and external evaluations. The battalion commander and S3 use this record of training status to develop and modify long- and short-range training plans to prepare the unit for success in combat.

**6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information.**

a. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for preparing and implementing the evaluation scoring system. While the commander makes the final evaluation assessment, the full team takes part in the process. Their report reflects the overall proficiency of unit in accomplishing its wartime missions.

b. The evaluation system is based on assessment of the unit's performance on each mission essential task and all other collective tasks in the overall evaluation plan. Evaluations use the following steps:

(1) Step 1: Identify each mission in the evaluation scenario. Prepare a Task Summary Worksheet for each mission (figure 6-2).

(2) Step 2: Identify the T&EOs in chapter 5 that correspond to each mission of the evaluation scenario.

(3) Step 3: Use T&EO standards to evaluate the battalion's performance of the tasks. Do this for each evaluation task.

(4) Step 4: On the T&EO, record a GO for each task step performed to standard, and a NO-GO for each task step not performed to standard.

(5) Step 5: Record T&EO evaluation information on the Task Summary Worksheet (figure 6-2).

(6) Step 6: Determine the battalion's overall capability to perform the task using the information recorded on each Task Summary Worksheet and the task standard information from the T&EOs. Use the following as guidance in making this determination:

- Go—The battalion successfully accomplished all critical task and task step standards.
- No-Go—The battalion did not accomplish the task-to-task step standards.

(7) Step 7: Record Go, No-Go rating for each mission task on the Unit Evaluation Worksheet (figure 6-1).

<b>TASK SUMMARY WORKSHEET</b>			
<b>MISSION:</b> CONDUCT TERMINAL ATS			
<b>T&amp;EO NUMBER</b>	<b>TASK TITLE</b>	<b>EVALUATION</b>	
		<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
01-4-0124	Operate the Electronic Shop Shelter-Mounted Avionics AN/ASM-146 and AN/ASM-147		
01-4-3001	Conduct Communications and Electronic Maintenance		
01-2-2047	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		
01-2-0203	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment		
01-2-0120	Employ Air Defense Measures		
01-2-0101	Occupy an Assembly Area		
01-2-0001	Prepare for Unit Move		
01-2-2048	Conduct Unit Movement		
01-2-0715	Perform Field Sanitation		
01-4-0029	Install the Landing Control Central AN/TSQ-71 Series		
01-4-0032	Conduct Ground Controlled-Approach Radar Operations		
01-4-0033	Install the AN/TSQ-70A or AN/TSW-7A		
01-4-0034	Conduct Tower Operations		
01-5-0021	Install the AN/TRN-30(V)1		
01-5-0116	Install the AN/TSQ-198		
01-5-0033	Provide ATS at a Temporary Landing Site		
<b>EVALUATOR'S COMMENTS</b>			
<b>EVALUATOR'S SIGNATURE</b>		<b>DATE</b>	

Figure 6-2. Task Summary Worksheet.

c. Other locally designed reports approved by the senior O/C and prescribed in the evaluation plan may be used to collect evaluation information. These reports should assist the team in recording the information concerning the battalion's capability to perform its wartime mission in accordance with the established standards. This information also assists the senior O/C in determining the unit's overall final rating. Some reports that may be used include—

(1) **Unit Data Sheet.** This report records personnel and equipment status information as well as narrative strength and weakness data (Figure 6-3).

(2) **Environmental Data Sheet.** This report records information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during task performance (Figure 6-4).

(3) **Personnel and Equipment Loss Report.** This report records information concerning battalion personnel and equipment losses in OPFOR engagements (Figure 6-5).

(4) **Other Reports.** These cover battlefield operating systems, losses, equipment status, supply status, and weapons effects, as locally prescribed. (See examples in Figures 6-6 through 6-10).

### 6-8. Conducting After Action Review.

a. AARs expand the value of an evaluation. They provide direct feedback to battalion members by involving them in the training diagnosis process and enabling them to discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation and why. Participants themselves identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning. The senior O/C is responsible for the AAR process. He coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through after-action phases.

b. Key steps in the AAR process include the following:

(1) **Planning.** Planning for AARs is initiated during preparation activities long before the start of the actual evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical breakpoints and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed later. Qualified O/Cs are selected and trained. This phase also includes identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) **Preparation.** Preparation for the AAR begins with the start of the actual evaluation. Besides the O/Cs watching the battalion perform its combat critical tasks, this phase includes a review of training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed, and time and attendance requirements are established. AAR information is gathered from O/Cs and applicable battalion personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) **Conduct.** AARs are an ongoing process throughout the evaluation. They are conducted at logical breakpoints in the exercise, at the end of each event or mission, at intervals directed by the senior O/C, and at the end of the evaluation. In a multilevel evaluation, an oral AAR of the action to date takes place at every level between the O/C and his counterpart in the evaluated unit. After AAR participants assemble, the senior O/C opens the AAR with a statement of purpose. He also establishes the AAR ground rules and procedures and restates the training and evaluation objectives. The following are some guidelines for a successful AAR.

(a) AARs are not critiques. They are professional discussions of training events.

(b) The senior O/C guides the discussion to ensure the participants openly discuss important lessons.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among O/Cs and unit personnel. Discussion covers not only strengths and weaknesses, but also the rationale behind the decisions and actions that resulted in the demonstrated strengths or weaknesses.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR if possible. As a minimum, every unit or element that participated in the exercise is represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened but also how it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Events that were not directly related to the major training objectives are not examined.

(g) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(h) The reason for success or failure of a unit is specifically tied to its performance on a task. Summations by the O/C should focus on the demonstrated proficiency of the unit in executing T&EOs.

(i) Sequentially, the discussion will normally cover what was planned and what happened relative to the doctrine that applies to the action, followed by critiques from the O/C and from the OPFOR view.

(j) Discussion should focus on training objectives as they relate to the battlefield operating systems.

(k) The end result should be that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their combat critical tasks.

UNIT DATA SHEET						
1. BATTALION DESIGNATION:			DATE:			
2. UNIT LEADERS (CIRCLE MOST CORRECT ANSWER)						
POSITION	RANK	TIME IN UNIT (MONTHS)				
BN CDR	COL	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
BN XO	LTC	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
BN S3	LTC	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
BN MAINT OFFICER	MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
HHC CDR	MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
CO CDR	LTC	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
CO CDR	LTC	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
CO CDR	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
CO CDR	LTC	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
3. BATTALION STRENGTH (excluding leaders):						
4. EQUIPMENT SHORTAGES (Major items):						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
5. COMMENTS:						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
_____						
OBSERVER/CONTROLLER'S SIGNATURE:						

Figure 6-3. Sample Unit Data Sheet.

<b>ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET</b>						
<b>EXERCISE NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION:</b>						
<b>DATE/TIME EXERCISE STARTED:</b>						
<b>DATE/TIME EXERCISE ENDED:</b>						
<b>1. WEATHER CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)</b>						
Clear	Partly Cloudy	Cloudy	Hazy	Rain	Snow	Fog
Other:						
Temperature:						
<b>2. GROUND CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)</b>						
Dry	Wet	Ice	Snow			
Other:						
<b>3. LIGHT CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)</b>						
Day			Night			
Moon Phase:	None	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	Full	
Average Range of Visibility Due to Light:						
<b>4. TERRAIN: (Circle appropriate description)</b>						
Flat	Rolling	Mountainous	Jungle	Desert	Urban	Arctic
Other:						
Top Soil:	Sandy	Rocky	Clay	Other:		
Average Range of Visibility Due to Terrain:						
<b>5. REMARKS:</b>						

Figure 6-4. Sample Environmental Data Sheet.



<b>COMMAND AND CONTROL</b>					
<b>OBSERVABLE RESULTS:</b>	<b>BDE</b>	<b>ATKB</b>	<b>CAVS</b>	<b>HHC</b>	<b>GSAB</b>
Mission OPORD received at					
Warning order issued at					
OPORD and graphics disseminated (one-third/two-thirds rule)					
Reconnaissance conducted					
Precombat checks					
Rehearsal conducted					
Coordination with adjacent/rearward supporting elements					
Plan refined					
Fire plans made—direct and indirect					
Combat status— Number and percentage of operationally ready vehicles and pacing items					
KEY EVENTS					

Figure 6-6. Sample AAR Collection Chart: Command and Control System.

<b>NBC</b>			
<b>OBSERVABLE RESULTS:</b>			
	<b>LOSSES</b>	<b>ELEMENT</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
Friendly losses to chemical tasks			
	<b>LOSSES</b>	<b>ELEMENT</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
Friendly losses persistent contamination (after attack)			
	<b>MINUTES</b>	<b>ELEMENT/TYPE</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
Time after chemical strike mission continues			
<b>KEY EVENTS</b>			

Figure 6-7. Sample AAR Collection Chart: NBC.

<b>COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT</b>				
<b>OBSERVABLE RESULTS</b>				
	<b>HHC</b>	<b>A CO</b>	<b>B CO</b>	<b>C CO</b>
Number/percentage of battalion vehicles/elements that ran out of Class III or Class V items				
Number/percentage of damaged vehicles recovered versus not recovered				
<b>KEY EVENTS:</b>				

Figure 6-8. Sample AAR Collection Chart: Combat Service Support.

<b>COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT (VEHICLE STATUS)</b>						
<b>TYPE VEHICLE</b>	<b>BUMPER/ TAIL NUMBER</b>	<b>DAMAGED/ DESTROYED/ MAINTENANCE</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>DATE NON- AVAILABLE</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>	<b>TOTAL DAYS</b>
Combat vehicles listed						
Recovery vehicles listed						
Supply vehicles listed						
Command and control vehicles listed						
<b>KEY EVENTS:</b>						

Figure 6-9. Sample AAR Collection Chart: CSS - Vehicle Status.

<b>COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT (REQUISITION STATUS SUPPLY ITEMS)</b>			
<b>UNIT PRIORITIES</b>	<b>03</b>	<b>06</b>	<b>13</b>
HHC			
A CO			
B CO			
C CO			
<b>TOTAL</b>			
<b>REMARKS:</b>			

Figure 6-10. Sample AAR Collection Chart: CSS – Requisition Status Supply Items.

## Appendix A

# COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY

### A-1. General.

a. Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS) is the Army's "over-arching training architecture." CATS contains approved training and doctrinal strategy, and provides the framework for total Army structured training for both units and institutions. CATS functionally groups tasks to guide the integration of tasks into combined arms oriented training strategies. Current CATS provides doctrine-based training strategies, including events, gates, and training resource options for the institution or unit trainer and integrates training horizontally among levels of a type unit and vertically across the combined arms and services team.

b. Commanders are expected to become intimately familiar with these doctrine-based training strategies as tools to determine who (units, individuals), when, where, and how collective and individual tasks will be trained. CATS also helps commanders identify, quantify, and acquire required training resources. There are long and short-range individual and collective CATS.

**A-2. Short-Range CATS.** Commanders are most concerned with short-range CATS. They are the training plans to attain and sustain the desired level of performance proficiency on each critical war-fighting task. They are prescriptive rather than descriptive for unit commanders and—

- a. Identify specifically who, what, when, where, and how each critical task is trained.
- b. Identify training media/method/site options.
- c. Identify initial and sustainment training requirements for individual and unit critical tasks.
- d. Estimate resource requirements.
- e. Provide a doctrinally based foundation for a unit's training plan.

**A-3. Long-Range CATS.** Long-range CATS look to the future training requirements of the Army. They describe in broad terms how the Army will train its units and soldiers. Although they may not appear to be an immediate tool to support training, commanders and staffs should become familiar with ongoing training development initiatives. Future training processes, tools, and resources (such as training support packages, distance learning products, and training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations (TADSS)) often are made available in a piecemeal approach; and may be useful to the commander who is aware of their availability.

**A-4. Self-Development CATS.** Self-development is the individual's responsibility. Self-development CATS, published as Part 2 of the Career Development Model, provide a guide for an individual to posture himself for promotion, better job performance, or self-motivated improvement in personal performance. They are available to facilitate leader development.



## Appendix B

# OPERATION ORDERS AND FRAGOS

**B-1. General.** Exercise scenarios present a general situation that provides the participants with the background information normally available in a combat situation. Exercise OPORDs/FRAGOs issued from a higher headquarters are the primary instruments used to provide sufficient detail and guidance so the training unit can prepare OPORDs/FRAGOs, annexes, and overlays, and to ensure the training unit takes actions that lead to achieving the training objectives of the exercise. Exercise OPORDs/FRAGOs may be identical to standard OPORD/FRAGO formats (see FM 101-5), or they may use peculiarities that facilitate modularity, retraining, administrative conditions, flexibility, and reusability. For example, the dates used in the exercise OPORD/FRAGO may be in terms of training days rather than actual dates. This especially applies for exercises that use simulations, since battle-field conditions can be easily manipulated to allow a unit to repeat a particular day's training with little resource impact. Samples of an air traffic services battalion exercise OPORD and FRAGO follow. They portray the general scenario, including the missions of higher and adjacent units (whether live, virtual, or constructive) and the training that the battalion will conduct.

## CLASSIFICATION

Copy \_\_\_ of \_\_\_ copies  
 1-58 Avn  
 SEOUL (CD2459), KOREA  
 230545Z Feb 01  
 RD03

**OPERATION ORDER 01-03**

References: Maps, series L752, Korea, sheets 3121 I (Dongduchon), 3122 II (Yonch-On), 3122 I (Chorwon), edition 2, 1:50,000.

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local (L)

Task Organization:

A/1-58 Avn

En Route Control Plt	Co Control
AIC	2/3/B/10th Engr Bn (OPCON)
TACT 1	1/A/3-187 Inf (attached)
TACT 2	1/A/1-66 ADA (attached)

Terminal Control Plt

Twr Tm  
 GCA Tm

**1. SITUATION****a. Enemy Forces.**

- (1) The 12th Corps. The 12<sup>th</sup> Corps (North Korean Peoples Army) will attack south with two divisions abreast (102d Inf Div in the west and 104th Inf Div in the east). The second echelon follows with two additional infantry divisions abreast (106th Inf Div in the west and 100th Inf Div in the east). The 12th Corps Independent Armored Regiment (26th Armd Regt) follows the 100th Inf Div to exploit the success of the infantry divisions in the east.
- (2) Close air support. The 4th Atk Hel Regt has been providing CAS for the 12th Corps. It is capable of conducting Level III assaults within the XVIII Abn Corps area.
- (3) Fourth tactical air force. BAI missions (4th TAF) consisting of approximately 70 sorties (MiG-27, Su-7B, Su-17D, Su-24A) have attacked C<sup>3</sup>, FA, and aviation assembly areas within the corps boundaries. The 4th TAF can attain local air superiority for short periods (no longer than 30 minutes).
- (4) Battlefield air interdiction. The 4th TAF will continue to conduct BAI throughout the sector.
- (5) Chemical weapons. The 12th Corps has employed nonpersistent chemical weapons to support offensive operations. In all cases, a nerve agent has been used. Expect employment of nerve agents against aviation assembly areas and airfields if detected.

CLASSIFICATION

### CLASSIFICATION

- (6) Terrorist threat. Numerous small sabotage and special-purpose units have been inserted into the XVIII Abn Corps area. Nonuniformed saboteurs will conduct attacks primarily on C3, logistical sites, and aviation assembly areas and airfields. Level I attacks within the corps rear area have destroyed two logistical sites. Expect Level I attacks to increase within the next 24 to 48 hours in support of the enemy offensive.
- (7) Enemy probable course of action. The 12th Corps will continue to attack to the south, with the main effort occurring in the east. The 26th Armd Regt will exploit any tactical successes in the east. Expect concerted efforts by Level I and III threat forces to find and destroy friendly aviation assets and airfields in the XVIII Abn Corps rear area to support the 12th Corps offensive.
- (8) Weather. Appendix I to Annex A.

#### **b. Friendly Forces.**

- (1) XVIII Abn Corps. The XVIII Abn Corps continues to defend in sector with the 24th Inf Div (Mech) in the east, the 101st Abn Div (AASLT) in the west, and the 82d Abn Div as the corps reserve to defeat the enemy offensive. The corps will then conduct a hasty attack to destroy all company-size and larger enemy forces south of the 38th Parallel.
- (2) Corps commander's intent. I want to defend in sector with my heavy forces in the east to meet and defeat the main enemy attack into the Chorwon Valley. Once the enemy attack has faltered, I want to insert the corps reserve into the 12th Corps rear area to cut off enemy escape routes while the 24th Inf Div (Mech) and the 101st Abn Div (AASLT) attack to maintain heavy pressure on 12th Corps combat forces. We must destroy all company-size elements to allow the uninterrupted flow of logistics forward.
- (3) The 24th Inf Div (Mech). The 24<sup>th</sup> Inf Div (Mech) defends in sector along PL IMJIN (CT172249 to CT368209) to PL SEOUL (CT167080 to CT350112) to defeat enemy forces and to prevent their crossing the Imjin River. The div conducts a hasty attack to destroy company-size and larger enemy forces south of the 38th Parallel.
- (4) The 101st Abn Div (AASLT). The 101st Abn Div (AASLT) defends in sector along PL IMJIN (CT002217 to CT172249) to PL SEOUL (CT001198 to CT167080) to defeat enemy forces and to prevent their crossing the Imjin River. The div conducts a hasty attack to destroy company-size and larger enemy forces south of the 38th Parallel.
- (5) The 82d Abn Div. The 82d Avn Div is the corps reserve. The div is responsible for conducting rear area operations and destroying Level III threats.

#### **c. Attachments and Detachments.** See task organization.

## **2. MISSION**

A/1-58 Avn establishes a tactical NDB and AIC in OBJ FLIGHT (CT251224) and establishes an instrumented airfield in OBJ AIRFIELD (CT243009) NLT 251300 Feb 01 to support the XVIII Abn Corps defensive operations. O/O deploys the Airspace Information Services Plt and the TACT forward to provide support to the 82d Abn Div air insertion into the 12th Corps rear area.

CLASSIFICATION

## CLASSIFICATION

**3. EXECUTION**

- a. Commander's Intent.** I want to deploy the company forward as soon as possible to establish the airfield and the AIC before the main enemy thrust to the south. We must be operational to assist in the control of both Army and Air Force aircraft. It is imperative that we make maximum use of terrain for electromagnetic shielding. The TACTs must be ready to deploy forward within 1 hour after site closure by the main body to support offensive operations.
- b. Concept of the Operation.** The Airspace Information Services Plt conducts a night tactical road march on ROUTE RED from AA RADAR to OBJ FLIGHT. The Airspace Information Services Plt will deploy forward of the company to install, operate, and maintain the AIC and the tactical NDB. The rest of the company will conduct a night tactical road march on ROUTE RED from AA RADAR to OBJ AIRFIELD and install, operate, and maintain the instrumented airfield. The TACTs will be ready for redeployment within 1 hour after site closure by the main body. 1/A/3-187 Inf will provide local security for the company. A/1-58 will link up with 1st Plt, A Btry, 1-66 ADA, at OBJ AIRFIELD. 1/A/1-66 ADA will provide air defense artillery support at OBJ AIRFIELD. 2/3/B/10th Engr Bn will provide engineer support along ROUTE RED and at OBJ AIRFIELD.
- c. Tasks to Units.**
- (1) TACT 1.
- (a) Advance party for the Airspace Information Services Plt.
  - (b) First in order of march on ROUTE RED.
  - (c) Determine the trafficability of ROUTE RED.
  - (d) Conduct a recon of OBJ FLIGHT for NBC contamination and overall site suitability.
  - (e) Establish communications at OBJ FLIGHT.
  - (f) Be prepared to deploy forward within 1 hour after site closure by the main body.
- (2) Airspace Information Services Plt.
- (a) Second in order of march along ROUTE RED.
  - (b) Operate the tactical NDB AN/TRN-30(V)2 at OBJ FLIGHT NLT 250600 Feb 01.
  - (c) Operate the AIC at OBJ FLIGHT NLT 250600 Feb 01.
- (3) TACT 2.
- (a) Advance party for the company (-).
  - (b) Third in order of march on ROUTE RED.
  - (c) Conduct recon of OBJ AIRFIELD for NBC contamination and overall site suitability.
  - (d) Establish communications at OBJ FLIGHT.

CLASSIFICATION

## CLASSIFICATION

- (4) Terminal Control Plt.
- (a) Fourth in order of march along ROUTE RED.
  - (b) Operate the AN/TRN-30(V)1 for an instrumented airfield at OBJ AIRFIELD NLT 250600 Feb 01.
  - (c) Request flight check with bn within 8 hours after closure on the objective.
- (5) 1/A/3-187 Inf.
- (a) Provide security to the Airspace Information Services Plt for its deployment to OBJ FLIGHT.
  - (b) Provide security for the rest of the company during the night tactical road march to OBJ AIRFIELD.
  - (c) Provide local area security for OBJ AIRFIELD.
- (6) 2/3/B/10th Engr Bn.
- (a) Provide mobility support on ROUTE RED as required.
  - (b) Assist in the security of the main body during the night tactical road march.
  - (c) Prepare OBJ AIRFIELD facilities.
  - (d) Prepare defensive positions on OBJ AIRFIELD.
- (7) 1/A/1-66 ADA.
- (a) Coordinate with A/1-58 Avn for linkup at OBJ AIRFIELD.
  - (b) Provide ADA support for OBJ AIRFIELD.
    - 1/A/1-66 ADA: Attached.
    - ADA/weapons control status: YELLOW/HOLD.
    - Priority of protection: OBJ AIRFIELD.

**d. Engineer Support.**

- (1) Priority of mission: Mobility, survivability, countermobility.
- (2) Priority of effort: Terminal Control Plt, OBJ AIRFIELD, defensive positions.

**e. Coordinating Instructions.**

- (1) Task organization effective 241000 Feb 01.
- (2) MOPP level: 2.
- (3) OEG: Moderate risk.
- (4) Troop safety. Negligible to unwarned, exposed personnel. Troops will not be exposed to greater than negligible risk to unwarned, exposed personnel.

CLASSIFICATION

## CLASSIFICATION

- (5) Terrorist threat.
  - (a) Level I threat currently is low but is expected to increase within the next 24 to 48 hours. Level III threat is possible.
  - (b) Keep civilians out of OBJ AIRFIELD.
  - (c) Notify the commander of any suspicious activities.
- (6) Report all checkpoints along ROUTE RED.
- (7) Report closure on objectives.
- (8) Report when ATS equipment is operable.
- (9) Hostile aircraft criteria: Positive identification of threat aircraft attacking friendly elements that respond improperly to IFF interrogation.
- (10) Movement. See Annex B (Movement).
- (11) Submit reports according to SOP. Negative reports are required.

**4. SERVICE SUPPORT****a. General.**

- (1) Field trains will remain in AA RADAR until the Terminal Control Pit is operational in OBJ AIRFIELD. Field trains will collocate with the combat trains upon closure on OBJ AIRFIELD.
- (2) Combat trains will deploy forward with the company. Initial location in OBJ AIRFIELD is CT244008.

**b. Material and Services.**

- (1) Class I.
  - (a) Meal cycle for 24 and 25 Feb is T-M-M.
  - (b) Maintain a 3-day supply of MREs.
  - (c) Resupply will not be available during movement.
- (2) Class III.
  - (a) Vehicles will be topped off NLT 241800 Feb 01.
  - (b) Refuel point will be located at CT219001. Diesel and MOGAS will be available.
- (3) Class V.
  - (a) Each soldier will maintain the required combat load.
  - (b) No resupply will be available during movement.
- (4) Requests for MEDEVAC. MEDEVAC requests will be coordinated through the commander. MEDEVAC frequency is 32.50. Call sign is DUSTOFF.

CLASSIFICATION

CLASSIFICATION

**5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL**

**a. Command.**

- (1) Succession of command: Cdr, 1SG, Terminal Control PSG, senior soldier on site.
- (2) Company CP initially in AA RADAR. CP location on OBJ AIRFIELD is CT243007.

**b. Signal.** Per ANCD, XVIII Airborne CORPS, TEK/TSK.

Acknowledge.

I. E. JONES  
LTC

OFFICIAL:  
SMITH  
S3

Annexes:                   A—Weather  
                                  B—Movement

Distribution: B

CLASSIFICATION

## CLASSIFICATION

Copy \_\_\_ of \_\_\_ copies  
A/1-58 Avn  
SEOUL (CD2459), KOREA  
230545Z Feb 01  
RD03

**FRAGO 01-04**

Reference: OPERATION ORDER 92-03 Maps, series L752, Korea, sheets 3121 I  
(Dongduchon), 3122 II (Yonch-On) 3122 I  
(Chorwon), edition 2, 1:50,000.

Task Organization: No change.

**1. SITUATION** (no change).**2. MISSION.**

The Airspace Information Services Plt deploys forward at 242200 Feb 01 to install, operate, and maintain the AIC and tactical NDB at OBJ FLIGHT (CT251224) in support of the 82d Abn Div air insertion into the 12th Corps rear area.

**3. EXECUTION**

- a. Commander's Intent.** I want to deploy the Airspace Information Services Plt forward with TACT 1 as the advance party as soon as possible to establish the AIC site and a tactical NDB before the main enemy thrust to the south. We must be operational to assist both Army and Air Force aircraft. It is imperative that we make maximum use of terrain for electromagnetic shielding. TACT 2 must be ready to redeploy forward within 1 hour after site closure by the Airspace Information Services Plt to support offensive operations.
- b. Concept of the Operation.** TACT 2 and 1/1/A/3-187 Inf will be the advance party for the Airspace Information Services Plt and will conduct a night tactical road march on ROUTE RED to OBJ FLIGHT. The Airspace Information Services Plt conducts a night tactical road march on ROUTE RED from AA RADAR to OBJ FLIGHT. Airspace Information Services Plt will deploy forward of the company to install, operate, and maintain the AIC and tactical NDB. The TACT 2 will be ready for redeployment within 1 hour after site closure by the Airspace Information Services Plt. 1/1/A/3-187 Inf will provide local security for the Airspace Information Services Plt.
- c. Tasks to Units.**
  - (1) TACT 2.
    - (a) First in order of march with 1/1/A/3-187 Inf on ROUTE RED.
    - (b) Advance party for the Airspace Information Services Plt.

CLASSIFICATION

## CLASSIFICATION

- (c) Establish communications at OBJ FLIGHT.
  - (d) Be prepared to deploy forward within 1 hour after site closure by the Airspace Information
- (2) Airspace Information Services Plt
- (a) Second in order of march along ROUTE RED.
  - (b) Install, operate, and maintain the tactical NDB AN/TRN-30(V)2 at OBJ FLIGHT NLT 250600 Feb 01.
  - (c) Install, operate, and maintain the AIC at OBJ FLIGHT NLT 250600 Feb 01.
- (3) 1/A/3-187 Inf.
- (a) First in order of march with TACT 2 along ROUTE RED.
  - (b) Conduct a recon of ROUTE RED.
  - (c) Provide 1st Squad for security to TACT 2 for their deployment to OBJ FLIGHT.
  - (d) Conduct a recon of OBJ FLIGHT for NBC contamination and overall site security.
  - (e) Provide local security to the Airspace Information Services Plt at OBJ FLIGHT.

**d. Coordinating Instructions.**

- (1) MOPP level: 2.
- (2) OEG: Moderate risk.
- (3) Troop safety. Negligible to unwarned, exposed personnel.
- (4) Terrorist threat.
  - (a) Level I threat currently is low but is expected to increase within the next 24 to 48 hours. Level III threat is possible.
  - (b) Keep civilians out of OBJ AIRFIELD.
  - (c) Notify the commander of any suspicious activities.
- (5) Report all checkpoints along ROUTE RED.
- (6) Report closure on objectives.
- (7) Report status of ATS equipment when checks are completed.
- (8) ADA/weapons control status: YELLOW/HOLD.
- (9) Hostile aircraft criteria: Positive identification of threat aircraft attacking friendly elements that respond improperly to IFF interrogation.

CLASSIFICATION

CLASSIFICATION

4. **SERVICE SUPPORT** (no change).

5. **COMMAND AND SIGNAL** (no change).

Acknowledge.

B. M. CAMPUS  
CPT

CLASSIFICATION

**B-2. Tailoring Orders.** Subsequent higher headquarters OPORDs/FRAGOs are developed that portray various factors that affect the difficulty of the missions. This affords the commander/exercise director options to tailor the exercise to the unit's level of proficiency using the "crawl/walk/run" training philosophy (see Chapter 4, Training Enhancers). For example, as portrayed in the upper half of figure B-1, based on his assessment of the unit, the commander/exercise director used the crawl version of the Mission 1 FRAGO. Based on the unit's performance, this was followed by the walk version of the Mission 2 FRAGO, and then the run version of the Mission 3 FRAGO. In the lower half of figure B-1, the commander/exercise director also began with the crawl version of the Mission 1 FRAGO. However, based on the unit's performance and his judgment, the unit repeated Mission 1, but this time was issued the walk version of the Mission 1 FRAGO. These are just two of the many options/combinations that are possible.

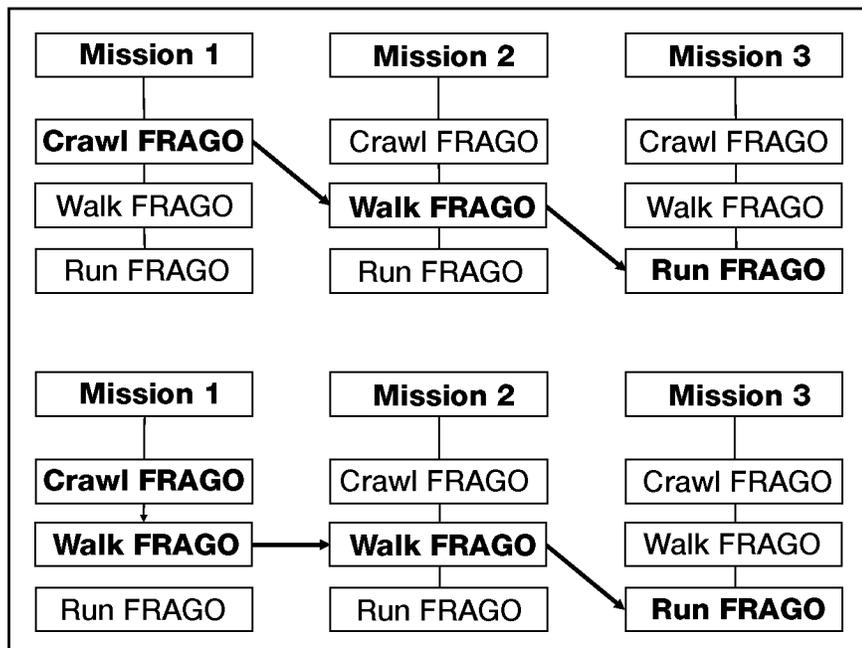


Figure B-1. Tailoring Orders.

## Appendix C

# RISK MANAGEMENT

**C-1. Background.** Risk management is the process of identifying and controlling hazards to protect the force. It is the Army's principal risk reduction process. The intuitive management of risk in conducting military training and operations is old, but its systematic application, as part of Army doctrine is relatively new. Therefore, this appendix presents a summary of how-to-do-it information based on FM 101-5 and FM 100-14. Note: Key risk management terms are defined at the end of this appendix.

**C-2. Application.** Risk management is applied to reduce the risk of the full range of METT-TC hazards, including enemy action. It is integrated into the Military Decisionmaking Process (MDMP) as indicated in figure C-1.

Military Decision Making Process*	Risk Management Steps				
	Identify Hazards	Assess Hazards	Develop Controls & Make Risk Decision	Implement Controls	Supervise & Evaluate
1. Receipt of Mission	X				
2. Mission Analysis	X	X			
3. COA Development	X	X	X		
4. COA Analysis (War Game)	X	X	X		
5. COA Comparison			X		
6. COA Approval			X		
7. Orders Production				X	
8. Rehearsal	X	X	X	X	X
9. Execution & Assessment	X	X	X	X	X

\* FM 101-5, 31 May 1997

**Figure C-1: Risk Management Integrated into the Military Decisionmaking Process.**

### C-3. Responsibilities.

**a. General Responsibilities at Battalion/Squadron and Higher.** Every staff officer must integrate risk management into the planning and execution of training and operational missions. Staff officers assist the commander in minimizing unnecessary risk by increasing certainty in all operations. They use the risk management process to assess their functional area and make control measure recommendations to reduce or eliminate risk to support the combat power dynamic of force protection. Examples include—

(1) Applying risk management during the MDMP to identify force protection shortcomings in the BOS functions.

(2) Developing and implementing controls for the commander that support the mission by avoiding unnecessary risk and loss of combat power.

(3) Providing support to operational requirements and establishing procedures and standards that are clear and practical for each specified and implied task.

**b. Specific Responsibilities at Battalion/Squadron and Higher.**

**(1) Commander (Overall).**

- (a) Provide risk guidance.
- (b) Select hazard control options.
- (c) Make risk decision for COA.
- (d) Enforce and evaluate controls.

**(2) XO (Staff Supervision).**

- (a) Supervise risk management integration across entire staff.
- (b) Ensure hazards and controls are integrated into plans and orders.
- (c) Ensure staff monitors and enforces controls during execution.

**(3) Staff Officers (Functional Area).**

(a) Identify hazards most likely to result in loss of combat power (i.e., hazards that are not adequately controlled).

(b) Develop control options that address reasons for hazards.

(c) Integrate hazards and selected controls into functional area paragraphs, graphics, and annexes of OPORD.

**(4) Safety Officer/ NCO (Coordination).**

(a) Assist commander and staff with risk management integration during mission planning, execution and assessment.

(b) Collect hazards and controls identified by staff; use to prepare risk assessment and control measures for all operations.

(c) Coordinate staff risk management and make recommendations to S3.

**c. Responsibilities at Company/Troop and Lower.** The commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see figure C-2).

Troop-Leading Steps	Identify Hazards	Assess Hazards	Develop Controls & Make Risk Decision	Implement Controls	Supervise & Evaluate
1	Receive mission	X			
	Perform initial METT-TC Analysis	X			
2	Issue the warning order	X			
3	Make a tentative plan	X	X		
	a. Make an estimate of the situation	X	X		
	b. Detailed mission analysis	X	X		
	c. Develop situation and courses of action for:	X	X		
	(1) Enemy situation (enemy COAs)	X	X		
	(2) Terrain and weather (OCOKA)	X	X		
	(3) Friendly situation (troops and time available)	X	X		
	(4) Courses of action (friendly)	X	X		
	d. Analyze courses of action—wargame	X	X		
	e. Compare courses of action			X	
f. Make decisions			X		
g. Expand selected COA into tentative plan			X		
4	Initiate movement			X	
5	Reconnoiter			X	
6	Complete the plan			X	
7	Issue the order			X	
8	Supervise and refine the plan				X

Figure C-2. Risk Management Integrated into Troop-Leading Procedures.

**C-4. Risk Management Procedures.** The commander and staff perform the actions listed below. The safety officer collects the information generated during these actions and enters it on the risk management worksheet (figure C-3).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET					PAGE 1 of 1	
1. MSN/TASK: Insertion / Extraction		2. DTG BEGIN: 042100SEP97 END: 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97		
4. PREPARED BY: MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S-3 <small>RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION</small>						
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. REVISORY RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	13. CHECKLIST
<u>Adverse Environment</u> - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility during Flight - Brownout						
<u>Continuous Operations</u> - Fatigue						
<u>Unfamiliar Terrain</u> - Flight Plan - Landing Zone						
<u>Inadequate Planning Time</u>						
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW   MODERATE   HIGH   EXTREMELY HIGH				10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY:  <small>RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION</small>		

Figure C-3: Risk Management Worksheet - ID Hazards.

**a. Identify Hazards.**

(1) Collect METT-TC hazard facts for each course of action (COA) for the mission or task (See figure C-4 example). Sources include—

- (a) Mission order/task instructions.
- (b) Commander's critical information requirements.
- (c) Mission planning systems.
- (d) Tactical SOP.
- (e) Unit accident history.
- (f) Reconnaissance.
- (g) Experience.

<p><b>MISSION:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ AIR ASSAULT INFANTRY PERSONNEL</li> <li>□ INSERT NLT 042100 SEP, ROVER BEACH LZ</li> <li>□ PREPARED TO EXTRACT NLT 042200 SEP, SAME LZ</li> </ul> <p><b>CONDITIONS:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ ONE COMPANY UH-60, 2 CH47-D, 2 AH-64</li> <li>□ LOAD: 14 FULLY EQUIPPED SOLDIERS, 540 LBS SPECIAL EQUIPMENT</li> <li>□ BLACKOUT CONDITIONS</li> <li>□ LZ: 114 MI. FROM DEPARTURE POINT, 100 YDS WIDE, SAND/DIRT/GRASS</li> <li>□ WX: RESTRICTED VISIBILITY EN ROUTE &amp; LZ (ILLUM, RAIN, FOG, LOOSE SAND)</li> </ul> <p><b>SITUATION:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ CREW: FULLY QUALIFIED, EXPERIENCED, SUPERB TEAMWORK</li> <li>□ MISSION BRIEF AT 041530 SEP (CREW &amp; PAX)</li> </ul>
--

**Figure C-4: Example Mission Factors.**

(2) Review the mission's METT-TC factors to identify those enemy and accident/fratricide hazards that are most likely to cause loss of combat power. That is, identify those hazards that are not adequately controlled at this or the next lower echelon of command. To do this, answer the questions in the matrix below (figure C-5) to determine if the hazard needs to be risk managed.

	<i>Adequate</i>	
	<i>Yes</i>	<i>No</i>
<p><b>Support:</b> Is type/amount/capability/condition of support adequate to control hazard?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Personnel</li> <li>□ Equipment/material</li> <li>□ Supplies</li> <li>□ Services/facilities</li> </ul>		
<p><b>Standards:</b> Is guidance/procedure adequately clear/practical/specific to control hazard?</p>		
<p><b>Training:</b> Is training adequately thorough and recent to control hazard?</p>		
<p><b>Leader:</b> Is leadership ready, willing, and able to enforce standards required to control hazard?</p>		
<p><b>Unit Self-Discipline:</b> Is unit performance and conduct self-disciplined to control hazard?</p>		
<p>If all "yes," no further action. If one or more "no," risk manage this hazard (ENTER IT ON THE RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET).</p>		

**Figure C-5: Does Hazard Require Risk Management?**

(3) Hazards determined to require risk management are identified to the safety officer/NCO who enters them on the worksheet in block 5.

**b. Assess Hazards.**

(1) Determine the risk level of each hazard that is not adequately controlled. Use figure C-6 and your best judgment to select the risk level.

<b>Risk Level:</b> <i>E - Extremely High</i> <i>H - High</i> <i>M - Moderate</i> <i>L - Low</i>		<b>HAZARD PROBABILITY</b>				
		<i>Frequent</i>	<i>Likely</i>	<i>Occasional</i>	<i>Seldom</i>	<i>Unlikely</i>
<b>S e v e r i t y</b>	<i>Catastrophic</i>	<b>E</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>
	<i>Critical</i>	<b>E</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>
	<i>Marginal</i>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>
	<i>Negligible</i>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>

**Figure C-6: Risk Assessment Matrix - Assess Hazards.**

(2) Provide the risk level for each hazard to the safety officer/NCO. The safety officer/NCO enters this information in Block 6 of the risk management worksheet as the initial risk level for each hazard (figure C-7).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET					PAGE 1 of 1
1. MSN/TASK : <b>Insertion / Extraction</b>		2. DTG BEGIN : 042100SEP97 END : 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97	
4. PREPARED BY: <b>MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S-3</b> <small>RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION</small>					
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE
<b>Adverse Environment</b> - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility during Flight - Brownout	EH				
<b>Continuous Operations</b> - Fatigue	H				
<b>Unfamiliar Terrain</b> - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H				
<b>Inadequate Planning Time</b>	EH				
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): <b>LOW   MODERATE   HIGH   EXTREMELY HIGH</b>			10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY:  <small>RANK/LASTNAME/DUTY POSITION</small>		

**Figure C-7: Risk Management Worksheet - Assess Hazards.**

**c. Develop Controls.**

(1) Develop one or more controls to eliminate each hazard or to reduce its level of risk. Controls should address the reason(s) the hazard needs to be risk managed (see C4a(2) above).

(2) Provide controls to the safety officer/NCO who enters them in Block 7 of the risk management worksheet (figure C-8).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET						PAGE <u>1</u> of <u>1</u>
1. MSN/TASK: Insertion / Extraction		2. DTG BEGIN: 042100SEP97 END: 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97		
4. PREPARED BY: MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S-3 RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION						
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	13. C. E. APPROVED (Signature)
<b>Adverse Environment</b> - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility during Flight - Brownout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL Ensure crew has current hazard map NVDs will be used PC/AC will brief brown-out procedures Aircraft ramp tongue and cargo door closed				Develop Controls
<b>Continuous Operations</b> - Fatigue	H	Ensure crew rest plan is adhered to				
<b>Unfamiliar Terrain</b> - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H	Ensure crew has current photos/maps of LZ				
<b>Inadequate Planning Time</b>	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted				
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW    MODERATE    HIGH    EXTREMELY HIGH			10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY: RANK/LASTNAME/DUTY POSITION			

Figure C-8: Risk Management Worksheet - Develop Controls.

d. Determine Residual Risk.

(1) For each hazard, use the risk assessment matrix (figure C-9) and judgment to determine the level of risk remaining, assuming the controls are implemented.

<b>Risk Level:</b> <i>E - Extremely High</i> <i>H - High</i> <i>M - Moderate</i> <i>L - Low</i>		<b>HAZARD PROBABILITY</b>				
		<i>Frequent</i>	<i>Likely</i>	<i>Occasional</i>	<i>Seldom</i>	<i>Unlikely</i>
S e v e r e t y	<i>Catastrophic</i>	<b>E</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>
	<i>Critical</i>	<b>E</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>
	<i>Marginal</i>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>
	<i>Negligible</i>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>

Figure C-9: Risk Assessment Matrix - Determine Residual Risk.

(2) Provide the residual risk level for each hazard to the safety officer/NCO who enters it in block 8 of the risk management worksheet (figure C-10).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET						PAGE 1 of 1
1. MSN/TASK : Insertion / Extraction		2. DTG BEGIN : 042100SEP97 END : 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97		
4. PREPARED BY: MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S-3 <small>RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION</small>						
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	13. C E O F N T E R C O T L I
<b>Adverse Environment</b> - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility during Flight - Brownout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL Ensure crew has current hazard map NVDs will be used PC/AC will brief brown-out procedures Aircraft ramp tongue and cargo door closed	H			
<b>Continuous Operations</b> - Fatigue	H	Ensure crew rest plan is adhered to	M			
<b>Unfamiliar Terrain</b> - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H	Ensure crew has current photos/maps of LZ	M			
<b>Inadequate Planning Time</b>	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted	H			
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW   MODERATE <b>HIGH</b> EXTREMELY HIGH				10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY: <b>COLONEL BATTISTE/BDE CDR</b> <small>RANK/LASTNAME/DUTY POSITION</small>		

Figure C-10: Risk Management Worksheet - Residual Risk.

**e. Determine COA Risk.**

(1) The safety officer/NCO determines the overall risk level for each COA assuming the commander selects the controls and they are implemented. He uses procedures in the unit's SOP to do this. If the unit has no such procedures, the COA's overall risk level is the same as the hazard with the highest residual risk. He circles the COA's risk level in block 9 (See figure C-10).

(2) The safety officer/NCO analyzes the feasibility and acceptability of each COA in terms of residual risk. He scores the residual risk criterion for each COA using weights determined by the XO and provides these scores for entry on the decision matrix.

(3) The safety officer/NCO presents hazards, controls, and risks during the commander's decision briefing. Risk management worksheets may be used for this purpose.

**f. Make Risk Decision.**

(1) The commander selects the COA and decides whether or not to accept the COA's risk level. He decides what level of residual risk he will accept and approves control measures that will result in that level or a lower level of risk. He obtains the higher commander's approval to accept any level of residual risk that might imperil the higher commander's intent or is not consistent with his risk guidance. In block 10, the safety officer/NCO enters the name, rank and duty position of the commander accepting the COA's risk level (figure C-10).

(2) The S3 develops and issues a warning order that contains the commander's refined risk guidance.

**g. Implement Controls.**

(1) Based on the commander's decision and risk guidance, staff determines how each control

will be put into effect or communicated to the personnel who will make it happen. For example, FRAGO, OPORD, TACSOP, mission briefing, and rehearsals. The safety officer/NCO enters this information in block 11 of the risk management worksheet (figure C-11).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET					PAGE <u>1</u> of <u>1</u>	
1. MSN/TASK: <u>Insertion / Extraction</u>			2. DTG BEGIN: <u>042100SEP97</u> END: <u>042200SEP97</u>		3. DATE PREPARED: <u>041300SEP97</u>	
4. PREPARED BY: <u>MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S-3</u> RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION						
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	13. EFFECTIVE
<u>Adverse Environment</u> - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility during Flight - Brownout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL Ensure crew has current hazard map NVDs will be used PC/AC will brief brown-out procedures Aircraft ramp tongue and cargo door closed	H	Mission Brief Rehearsals Mission Brief Rehearsals	← ←	<b>IMPLEMENT</b>
<u>Continuous Operations</u> - Fatigue	H	Ensure crew rest plan is adhered to	M	TACSOP	←	
<u>Unfamiliar Terrain</u> - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H	Ensure crew has current photos/maps of LZ	M	Mission Brief Rehearsals	← ←	
<u>Inadequate Planning Time</u>	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted	H	FRAGO	←	
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW    MODERATE <b>HIGH</b> EXTREMELY HIGH				10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY: <u>COLONEL BATTISTE/BDE CDR</u> RANK/LASTNAME/DUTY POSITION		

Figure C-11: Risk Management Worksheet - Implement.

(2) The staff coordinates controls, integrates them into the FRAGO and/or appropriate paragraphs and graphics of the OPORD, and confirms understanding by subordinate units during the rehearsal.

**h. Supervise.**

(1) The staff determines how each control will be monitored and/or enforced to ensure it is effectively implemented. For example: command presence, direct supervision, procumbent inspection (PCI), procumbent checks (PCC), situation report (SITREP), spot check, radio net monitoring and crosswalk, back-brief, etc.

(2) The staff provides control supervision methods to the safety officer/NCO who enters them in block 12 (figure C-12).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET						PAGE <u>1</u> of <u>1</u>
1. MSN/TASK : <u>Insertion / Extraction</u>		2. DTG BEGIN : <u>042100SEP97</u> END : <u>042200SEP97</u>		3. DATE PREPARED : <u>041300SEP97</u>		
4. PREPARED BY : <u>MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S-3</u> <small>RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION</small>						
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	13. SUPERVISOR COMMENTS
<u>Adverse Environment</u> - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility during Flight - Brownout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL Ensure crew has current hazard map NVDs will be used PC/AC will brief brown-out procedures Aircraft ramp tongue and cargo door closed	H	Mission Brief Rehearsals Mission Brief Rehearsals	Direct Supv Mission Updates	SUPERVISE 
<u>Continuous Operations</u> - Fatigue	H	Ensure crew rest plan is adhered to	M	TACSOP	Direct Supv	
<u>Unfamiliar Terrain</u> - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H	Ensure crew has current photos/maps of LZ	M	Mission Brief Rehearsals	Direct Supv Mission Update	
<u>Inadequate Planning Time</u>	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted	H	FRAGO	Direct Supv	
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE):				10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY:		
LOW    MODERATE <b>HIGH</b> EXTREMELY HIGH				<u>COLONEL BATTISTE/BDE CDR</u> <small>RANK/LASTNAME/DUTY POSITION</small>		

Figure C-12: Risk Management Worksheet - Supervise.

**i. Risk Management Assessment.**

(1) The staff evaluates the effectiveness of each control in reducing the risk of the targeted hazard. They provide a "yes," if effective, or "no," if not, to the safety officer/NCO who enters this information in block 13.

(2) For each control judged not effective, the staff determines why and what to do the next time the hazard is identified. For example, change the control, develop a different control, or change the method of implementation or supervision. They provide this information to the safety officer/ NCO who reports it during the after action review (AAR).

(3) The safety officer/NCO evaluates the unit's risk management performance and reports it during the AAR. The matrix below (figure C-13) may be used for this report.

	GO	NO GO
<b>Identified the most important hazards.</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/> Available facts for each METT-TC factor gathered and considered?		
<input type="checkbox"/> Hazards (enemy and accident) most likely to result in loss of combat power identified?		
<b>Assessed risk level of each hazard.</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/> Valid method/tool used to assess initial risk levels?		
<b>Developed appropriate control options and determined residual risk.</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/> Each control addressed hazard reason(s)?		
<input type="checkbox"/> Residual risk level realistic for each hazard?		
<input type="checkbox"/> Valid method/tool used to determine the residual risk level for each COA?		
<input type="checkbox"/> Residual risk level for each COA entered on decision matrix?		
<b>Made risk decision for selected COA.</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/> Valid procedure/guidance used for determining risk decision authority?		
<b>HAZARDS AND CONTROLS CLEARLY COMMUNICATED TO RESPONSIBLE UNIT/LEADERSHIP.</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/> Controls integrated into appropriate paragraphs and graphics of the OPORD/FRAGO and rehearsals?		
<b>Implemented and enforced controls.</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/> Effective methods used to supervise/enforce controls?		

Figure C-13: Risk Management Task Standards and Performance Assessment.

**C-5. Definitions.**

**a. Hazard.** Actual or potential condition that can cause injury, illness, or death of personnel; damage to or loss of equipment or property; or mission degradation.

**b. Condition.** The readiness status of personnel and equipment with respect to the operational environment during mission planning, preparation, and execution. Readiness that is below standard leads to human error, material failure, and inadequate precautions for environmental factors, which may cause accidents, fratricide, and mission degradation.

**c. Risk.** The probability of exposure to injury or loss from a hazard. Risk level is expressed in terms of hazard probability and severity.

**d. Probability.** The likelihood that an event will occur. Levels of probability are—

- Frequent - Occurs often, continuously experienced.
- Likely - Occurs several times.
- Occasional - Occurs sporadically.
- Seldom - Unlikely but could occur at some time.
- Unlikely - Can assume it will not occur.

**e. Severity.** The expected consequence of an event in terms of degree of injury, property damage, or other mission-impairing factors. Level of severity are—

- Catastrophic - Death or permanent total disability, system loss, major damage, significant property damage, mission failure.
- Critical - Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of 3 months, major system damage, significant property damage, significant mission degradation.
- Marginal - Minor injury, lost workday accident, minor system damage, minor property damage, and some mission degradation.
- Negligible - First aid or minor medical treatment, minor system impairment, little/no impact on mission accomplishment.

**f. Controls.** Actions taken to eliminate hazards or reduce their risk.

**g. Risk Assessment.** The identification and assessment of hazards (the first two steps of the risk management process).

**h. Residual Risk.** The level of risk remaining after controls have been selected for hazards. (Controls are identified and selected until residual risk is at an acceptable level or until it cannot be practically reduced further.)



## Appendix D

# TRAINING AIDS, DEVICES, SIMULATORS, AND SIMULATIONS (TADSS)

**D-1. General.** The development of new simulation and simulator technology will provide essential tools to train individual soldiers and crews, as well as allow air and ground units and their staffs to train for a myriad of operations under trying environmental conditions.

**D-2. TADSS Overview.** The Army has a long history of using Models and Simulations (M&S) in every facet of operations, worldwide. M&S are vital tools for achieving combat readiness. Decision-makers consider analytical results derived from M&S. M&S are used to improve the quality of the acquisition process and the products delivered to soldiers. (See figure D-1.)

### a. Definitions.

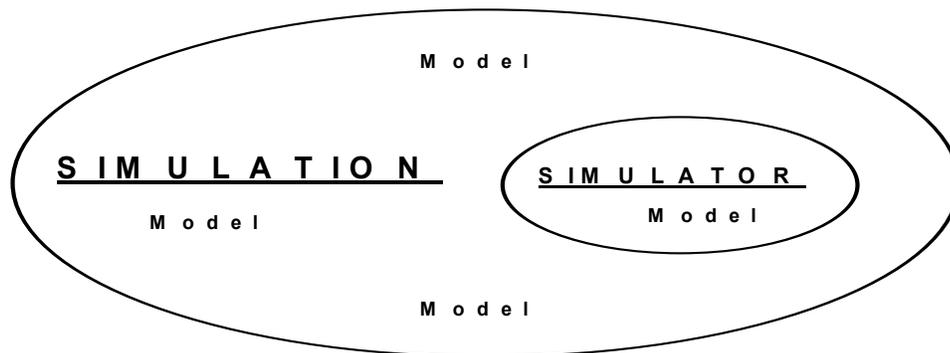
**(1) Model.** A model is a representation of some or all of the properties of a device, system, or object. There are three basic classes of models: mathematical, physical, and procedural.

**(2) Simulation.** A simulation is an operating representation of selected features of real-world or hypothetical events and processes. It represents activities and interactions over time. A simulation may be fully automated (i.e., it executes without human intervention), or it may be interactive or interruptible (i.e., the user may intervene during execution). The Corps Battle Simulation (CBS) is a simulation that integrates various models. The functionality of a simulation depends on the numerous models that serve as the building blocks. For example, an Apache-equipped attack helicopter unit within CBS requires a model of how an AH-64 fights under different conditions. Likewise, the simulation needs models of a M1 Abrams tank, M2 Bradley Fighting Vehicle, M3 Cavalry Fighting Vehicle, and other systems, operating under different conditions. These different models are then consolidated and processed to build the simulation.

**(3) Models and Simulations (M&S).** M&S often are used as synonyms. Although they relate significantly to each other, they are not exactly the same in a technical sense. Models are the essential elements or characteristic(s) of a simulation. (Note: M&S is used as both singular and plural for models and simulations.)

**(4) Simulator.** Although M&S are sometimes used as synonyms (both internal and external to DOD), the terms simulators and simulations should not be used in that manner. In the training context, simulators are most often associated with either individual or crew skill training. These simulators replicate either significant segments or the entire piece of equipment.

**(5) Wargame.** Wargaming is used in both training simulations and simulators. A wargame is a simulation of a military operation that involves two or more opposing forces, using rules, data, and procedures designed to depict an actual or assumed real-life situation. Wargaming allows the participants to experiment with alternative tactics and operations against an opposing force. This process forces participants to react to the opposing force in the development of plans and the execution of operations. The complexity and sophistication of current simulations bring a high degree of reality to wargame participants.



**Figure D-1. Relationship of Simulations, Simulators, and Models.**

**b. Types of Simulations.** Simulations can be categorized as constructive, virtual, and live.

**(1) Constructive Simulation.** A constructive simulation consists of wargames and models, many of which rely heavily on mathematical methods. Examples include Janus (A), Spectrum, and Brigade/Battalion Battle Simulation (BBS).

**(2) Virtual Simulation.** A virtual simulation focuses largely on manned simulators interacting within a synthetic environment and in many cases with other simulators. Well-known examples are the Simulations Network (SIMNET) simulators in common use throughout the Army for both training and developmental work.

**(3) Live Simulation.** The best description of live simulation is actual soldiers and equipment operating together, often on instrumented ranges. The Army's Combat Training Centers (CTCs) are highly instrumented, live simulation facilities. (See figure D-2.)

**D-3. Unit-Level TADSS Training.** An integrated use of live, virtual, and constructive training tools can provide commanders the best trained Army soldiers and units. Igor Sikorsky wrote that the use of the helicopter is limited only by the imagination of the user. This wisdom also holds true for the use of simulations and simulators..

**a. How Simulations Support Training.** Simulations support training in unique ways. Understanding how simulations support training benefits the commander as he incorporates these unique features into an overall unit training strategy. Simulations—

- Can portray large areas for conducting operations.
- Can portray large, capable, and doctrinally correct opposing forces.
- Can stress commanders and staffs and provide realistic conditions under which commanders make decisions.
- Allow different units to train under the same conditions and to the same standards.

**b. Battalion Training.**

**(1)** In the constructive environment, simulations such as BBS, Janus, or Modular Semi-Automated Forces (ModSAF) can provide commanders, crews, and staff members some mission battlefield visualization skills. BBS and Janus enable the user to portray friendly and enemy forces on a two-dimensional map using high fidelity terrain information. ModSAF accomplishes the same objective, but in a three-dimensional world. Staffs can wargame various mission options and judge the effectiveness of their plans accordingly. Crews can gain an appreciation of the effect of terrain display those drills under the conditions the crews may expect to encounter. Maintenance personnel can observe the commander's desired operational tempo and determine appropriate support options.

Increased portability of the WARSIM, OneSAF, or some other type of Mission and movement as the battle unfolds. In future developments, BBS/CBS and Janus will be replaced by Warfighters' Simulation (WARSIM); ModSAF will be replaced by One Semi-Automated Forces (OneSAF). Various mission options can be executed to include evasive actions, multiple target engagements, and actions on contact. Leaders can develop battle drills and visually Planning Rehearsal Tool (MPRT), will allow the battalion to transport simulation equipment to the field and conduct training using simulations while deployed. Digital terrain walks can be conducted and units can see the terrain in which they will operate.

(2) Units may conduct operations under various mission profiles and examine potential branches and sequels. The situational experience gained from the constructive and virtual environment is value added. Units are exposed to multiple challenges in realistic environments. These virtual and constructive situational experiences should be viewed as opportunities to enhance readiness and ensure mission success. Live missions are still conducted. The overall training tempo increases without a corresponding increase in resource requirements.

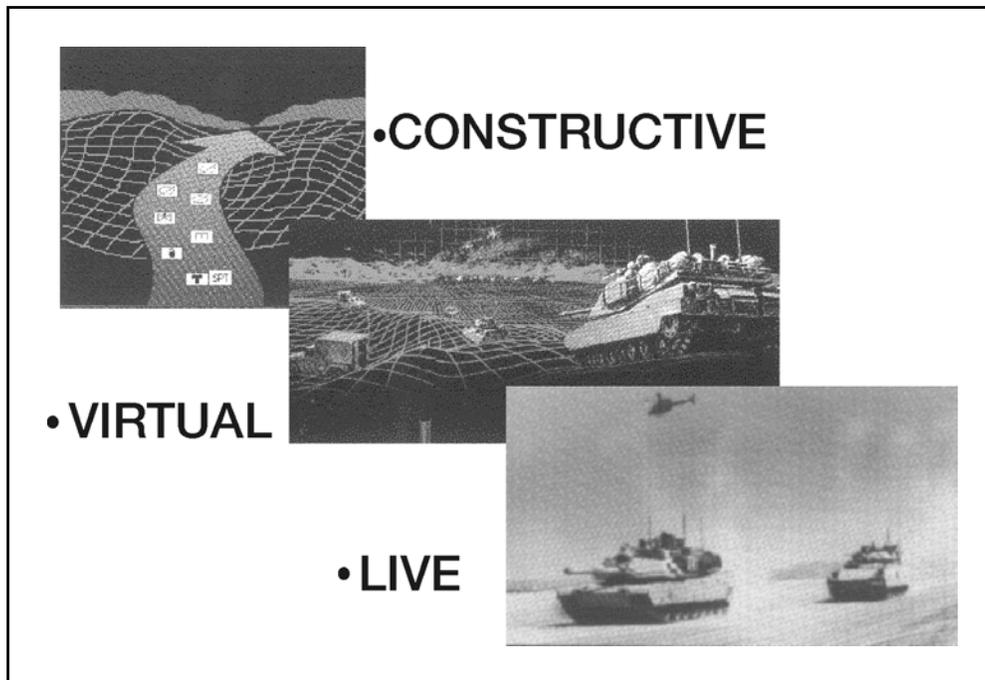


Figure D-2. Types of Simulations.

**c. Company Training.** The company commander and his unit benefit from the integration of simulators and simulations into their training. With an integrated training vision, the training does not slow down. The commander has more options available to support his plan while allowing his soldiers the opportunity to maintain complex systems. During a typical weekly training schedule, events such as Sergeant's Time and facility training are included. Integrated throughout the week are windows for simulator and simulations training to support the overall training plan. Platoon sergeants and company commanders use simulators to prepare for live training. Crews work in the appropriate simulator or simulation to reinforce the live training conducted during the week or to prepare for the next week's training. Units are able to train and maintain—without compromising readiness.

**d. Individual Training.** TADSS will never replace live training events. Soldiers require a baseline of hands-on experience that can only be gained through realistic training on actual equipment in tough, demanding conditions. This baseline, called situational experience, is the basis for individual

success. Once this solid foundation of situational experience is established, we can begin to exploit the tremendous potential of simulators and simulations.

**D-4. Simulations in Command and Control (C<sup>2</sup>) Training.** The Army's C<sup>2</sup> training simulations are computer-driven simulations that assist in training commanders and their staffs. Most of these simulations place C<sup>2</sup> elements in a combat-like environment that stimulates decisionmaking, command and staff interaction, and staff coordination. In a simulation-driven exercise, the participating commanders and staffs (the trainees or training audience) may operate in command posts (CPs) or tactical operation centers (TOCs) at field locations. Specifically, C<sup>2</sup> training simulations can—

- Assist units in preparing for external evaluations while minimizing costs and resources.
- Exercise and evaluate internal staff training and unit SOPs.
- Aid units in developing an awareness of the lethality and complexity of the modern battlefield.
- Provide a forum to evaluate written material and verbal communication processes between units, vertically and horizontally.
- Provide feedback to measure situational responses and staff ability to develop alternative courses of action.

**D-5. Simulations and Simulators Available for Battalion and Below Training.**

**a. The Family of Simulations (FAMSIM)**

(1) The Army FAMSIM consists of a proponent-approved group of simulations for training unit commanders and battle staffs in command post exercises (CPXs) and leader development training simulations. The overall objective for FAMSIM is to continue evolutionary enhancements to ensure that the simulations remain relevant. The current objectives are to give commanders the ability to train subordinate commanders and staffs from platoon through corps in synchronizing all the BOSs under conditions that closely replicate the battlefield. Each corps and division will be able to conduct home station CPXs for a variety of theaters and scenarios to include the integration of heavy, light, and Special Operations Forces (SOFs). There are six fielded simulations in FAMSIM:

- Janus.
- Spectrum.
- Brigade/Battalion Battle Simulation (BBS).
- Corps Battle Simulation (CBS).
- Tactical Simulation (TACSIM).
- Combat Service Support Training Simulation System (CSSTSS).

(2) The FAMSIM members are effective training tools when their capabilities are matched with the targeted echelons and trainees. FAMSIM members are normally used to support training as outlined in figure D-3. Janus, Spectrum, and BBS are most appropriate for battalion and below training.

Simulation	Training Audience
TACSIM	Intelligence staffs at all echelons in the joint and combined communities, including analysts
Spectrum	Company to division commanders, staffs, first sergeants, and platoon leaders
Janus	Platoon leaders to brigade/regiment commanders and staffs
BBS	Battalion and brigade/regiment commanders and staffs Company commanders (secondary)
CBS	Division to EAC commanders and staffs Brigade commanders (secondary)
CSSTSS	CSS commanders and staffs from battalion to EAC

**Figure D-3. FAMSIM Training Audiences.**

**(a) Janus.** Janus is a low-cost, flexible, interactive, event-driven wargaming simulation used for training platoon and company-level commanders, as well as battalion and brigade staffs. As a staff trainer, Janus provides an environment requiring detailed interaction between the commander and S2/S3 as they develop and execute the tactical plan. Commanders must apply sound warfighting principles and achieve full synchronization of the Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS) to fight a successful Janus battle.

**(b) Spectrum.** Spectrum was designed to address deficiencies in C<sup>2</sup> training in SASO. All other military simulations model force on force combat operations. Spectrum operates in the Windows™ environment on personal computers.

**(c) Brigade/Battalion Battle Simulation (BBS).** BBS is designed as a low cost training simulation used to provide maneuver brigade and battalion commanders and their battle staffs an opportunity to practice decisionmaking skills in a realistic, multi-threat, time-stressed combat environment. They must be able to develop, correlate, and assess large quantities of tactical and logistical data, formulate situational estimates, and make immediate decisions in the C<sup>2</sup> and synchronization of combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets. BBS supports training of combat maneuver commanders and the staffs at brigade/regiment and battalion levels. Company commanders, CS, and CSS units also receive valuable secondary training as part of any BBS driven CPX.

**(2) Future developments.** The major development effort for FAMSIM is WARSIM 2000. WARSIM 2000 will exploit new technology to enable CPs at all echelons to train in a realistic, Distributed Interactive Simulation (DIS) compliant environment. The increased realism of WARSIM 2000 over existing models will allow units to synchronize across each operating system in depth. WARSIM 2000's design will allow warfighting CPs to interact with the simulation using TO&E equipment to train in the field, not in simulation centers. WARSIM 2000 will also be capable of depicting a joint and combined environment across the operational continuum.

**b. Other Army Simulations/Simulators.**

**(1) Simulation Networking Trainer (SIMNET-T).** SIMNET was a joint Army/Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) project exploiting the ability of computer technology to transfer data streams across networks containing large numbers of simulators with real time update of all simulators in the network. SIMNET-T trains combat units at the crew through battalion echelons. Existing simulators are in the form of reconfigurable helicopter simulators, M-1 tanks, and infantry fighting vehicles. Emulation of artillery, engineer, dismounted infantry, air defense (AD), and CSS also exist. The follow-on system is the Close Combat Tactical Trainer (CCTT).

**(2) Combined Arms Tactical Trainer (CATT) Concept.** This simulation concept links the training requirements of several functional areas to form a combined arms virtual battlefield. The CCTT is the first component in this concept. The training audience for this concept consists of crew,

company, and battalion elements. CATT supports units as they work on fundamentals that directly or indirectly support their mission essential task list (METL). These fundamentals include battle drills, tactical maneuvers, combat engagements, communications, SOPs, synchronization of unit and supporting elements' activities and interface, and fire support coordination. Used in a pre-exercise situation, the CATT can help units gain higher levels of proficiency before field training. As a post-exercise medium, CATT can hone skills from the field and limit skill degradation between field training opportunities. When this concept is totally operational, the following combat trainers will be part of CATT:

- Close Combat Tactical Trainer (CCTT).
- Aviation Combined Arms Tactical Trainer—Aviation (AVCATT-A) Reconfigurable Manned Simulator.
- Fire Support Combined Arms Tactical Trainer (FSCATT).
- Air Defense Combined Arms Tactical Trainer (ADCATT).
- Engineer Combined Arms Tactical trainer (ENCATT).

When networked, the CATT family of simulators will permit units to conduct combined arms training. When the systems are used separately with the workstations representing other BOS, units will be able to train in a combined arms environment. As each follow-on CATT manned simulator is fielded, that manned simulator replaces a Semi-Automated Forces (SAF) component.

**(a) CCTT.** CCTT is a collective training system in which armor and mechanized infantry units man full-crew simulators to conduct unit training in a combined arms environment. CCTT has a great deal of flexibility to support the commander's training intent and exercise design. It can stretch to accommodate a battalion or task force training exercise when leaders are in the trainers' vehicles computer-generated forces that report and shoot represent subordinate vehicles. Commanders must exercise normal command and control of these forces. CCTT consists of networked vehicle simulator manned-modules, SAF, Combat Support workstations, computer networks and protocols, and After Action Review (AAR) systems. CCTT manned-modules consist of the M1A1, M1A2, M2/3A2, FIST-V, M113A3, HMMWV, and dismounted soldier. These manned-modules are high-fidelity simulators that require individuals and crews to perform their respective tasks correctly to accomplish their collective missions. SAF has the capacity to create a variety of OPFOR and BLUFOR vehicles and units with which units can train. SAF entities exhibit highly realistic behaviors and can be tailored to varying levels of competence. The components of this system combine to create a highly complex synthetic battlefield on which soldiers can conduct training in a combined arms environment. The system allows unit commanders to train collective tasks in a variety of virtual environments to include: day, night, and varying limitations on visibility.

**(b) AVCATT-A.** The AVCATT-A is a modular suite of reconfigurable aviation warfighting platforms driven by software that creates a virtual battlefield. It provides a realistic, high-intensity, task-loaded combat environment, composed of attack, reconnaissance, and lift aircraft platforms, SAF work stations, Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS), AAR capability, and battalion/squadron level staff work stations. AVCATT-A can be tailored to specific unit needs such as mission planning and rehearsal and collective task training through use of DIS protocols and tactical simulation interface units (TSIUs). This system is aviation-specific and is designed to complement and function in conjunction with the CATT family of virtual reality simulators. It provides the third dimension of maneuver on the virtual battlefield. AVCATT-A supports institutional, organizational, and sustainment training for aviation units worldwide.

#### **D-6. Unit Simulations Training Strategy.**

**a. Incorporating Simulations into the Training Plan.** The commander and staff determine how simulations are incorporated into a unit's training strategy. Chapter 3, Training Plans, outlines the training planning process and links the organization's METL with subsequent execution and evaluation of training. A relatively centralized process, planning develops mutually supporting METL-based training at all levels within an organization. Thus, higher and lower command echelons may train simultaneously in the same exercise at different levels of realism based on participation. The

commander and staff must determine who is to be trained, the specific tasks on which they need training, which simulation can provide that training, and the availability of the simulation and resources necessary to provide the required training. Guidance on simulation uses and capabilities can be found in *Training with Simulations: A Handbook for Commanders and Trainers* (National Simulation Center, January 1999), from simulation users' guides, and from the experienced staff at simulation facilities. Simulation users' guides specify the actions necessary to plan and conduct simulation exercises by addressing most of the following items:

- Exercise organization.
- Key personnel resources and their primary responsibilities.
- Planning time lines.
- Development of the commander's training objectives.
- Assigned responsibilities for planning.
- Conduct of the exercise.

**b. Selecting the Proper C<sup>2</sup> Training Simulation to Meet Training Needs.** When simulations are selected, they should be selected because they can assist the commander in achieving or maintaining task performance. They should not be selected if a more appropriate training vehicle is available.

(1) The commander should not get caught in a trap by thinking that simulations use equals training or that simulations can train everything well 100 percent of the time. Simulations do not train. They are merely training aids that allow the commander to practice certain tasks and skills in a scenario specifically developed to test them. In addition, simulations do not give a 100-percent replication of the real world. They can simulate a number of battlefield and operational conditions very well; however, most simulations are limited in imposing psychological stresses, a major factor on the battlefield and in the success of military operations.

(2) The assistance that simulations provide the commander is invaluable as long as the commander places the simulation experience into the overall development of the unit and its individual members. Tactical success in a C<sup>2</sup> simulation exercise will not necessarily equate to tactical success on the battlefield.

(3) Simulations use can be broken down into two areas: leader development training and collective task training.

(a) In leader development training, the primary purpose of the training is to develop the skills of an individual. Often this is accomplished in a formal educational setting specifically designed to train and test individual skills. Some of the characteristics of this area of training are—

- Development of specific skills, knowledge, and attitudes.
- Some built-in flexibility for individual experimentation.
- Focused interaction between the trainer and trainee.
- Immediate individual feedback.

(b) The second area of simulation use, collective task training, is best incorporated in a unit setting where team-building is desired so collective task effectiveness can be improved. This is not to say that individual training does not occur here. However, by design, the predominate focus is on collective tasks rather than on individual leadership development or skill(s) performance. Selecting the C<sup>2</sup> simulation that provides the level of resolution needed is based primarily on the specific end use and focus of the simulations. Figure D-4 shows the level, type, and echelon of trainee for each of the C<sup>2</sup> simulations in the Family of Simulations.

<b>Leader Development Training* (Individual Skill Development)</b>	
<b>Trainees</b>	<b>Simulation</b>
Squad Leaders Platoon Leaders Company, Troop, Battery and Battalion Commanders	Janus (excellent for S2 and S3 skill development, weak in CSS)
<b>Collective Task Training* (Team Building)</b>	
<b>Trainees</b>	<b>Simulation</b>
Company (Combat or CS)	BBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, for all BOSs), Janus
Battalion (Combat or CS)	BBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
Battalion (CSS)	CSSTSS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
Battalion and Brigade (Combat or CS)	Janus (Command and Staff Trainer, but weak on CSS)
Brigade (CSS)	BBS/CBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
DISCOM, COSCOM, TAACOM Groups (CSS) (Corps and EAC)	CSSTSS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
Division Corps Echelons above Corps Joint and Multinational	CSSTSS/CBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
<b>NOTES:</b> * - SPECTRUM can be used in all the above.	

**Figure D-4. C<sup>2</sup> Simulation Training Applications.**

**c. Developing a simulation strategy.** Several items should be taken into consideration when developing the unit simulation training strategy. They are—

(1) Integrate unit simulation training strategy into the overall training strategy during the training plan process.

(2) Determine which simulations would be beneficial to units with upcoming training events (e.g., external evaluation). The trainer must determine the echelon to train, the upcoming event requirements, and the simulation most likely to benefit this echelon when used as a train-up device. In developing a training strategy, one must answer the following questions:

- Who am I trying to train?
- What tasks am I trying to train?
- What conditions must be presented against which tasks are to be trained?
- What are the training objectives?
- What training tool will assist in meeting the training objectives?

(3) Ascertain which leaders and staff members must be trained. It is possible that they can receive training with other units, in addition to specific opportunities for their unit.

(4) Review the higher commander's guidance to assure that his intent is met. List each training activity and determine how sister units can assist and support training activities and receive secondary reinforcement in their skills in the process.

(5) Use simulation to complement live training. When a live training event cannot be conducted, simulations should be considered as an alternate.

# GLOSSARY

## Section I—Abbreviations

<b>A<sup>2</sup>C<sup>2</sup></b>	Army airspace command and control
<b>AA</b>	avenue of approach; assembly area
<b>AAR</b>	after action review
<b>ABCS</b>	aircraft battlefield countermeasures and survivability; Army Battle Command System
<b>AC</b>	Active component; assistant commandant; aircrew; alternating current
<b>ACA</b>	airspace coordination area; airspace control authority
<b>ACM</b>	airspace control measures
<b>ACO</b>	airspace control order; airspace coordination order
<b>ACP</b>	allied communication publication; air control point; airspace control plan
<b>AD</b>	air defense
<b>ADA</b>	air defense artillery
<b>ADCATT</b>	Air Defense Combined Arms Tactical Trainer
<b>AG</b>	adjutant general
<b>AGL</b>	above ground level
<b>AIC</b>	Airspace Information Center
<b>ALOC</b>	Administrative and Logistics Operations Center
<b>AM</b>	amplitude modulation
<b>AMC</b>	U.S. Army Materiel Command; air mission commander
<b>AMPS</b>	Aviation Mission Planning System
<b>AO</b>	area of operations
<b>AOAP</b>	Army Oil Analysis Program
<b>AR</b>	Army regulation; Army Reserve
<b>ARMS</b>	Aviation Resource Management Survey
<b>ARFOR</b>	Army Forces
<b>ARTEP</b>	Army Training and Evaluation Program
<b>ASAS</b>	All-Source Analysis System
<b>ASAT</b>	Automated Systems Approach to Training
<b>ASR</b>	airport surveillance radar
<b>AT</b>	antitank; assessment team; Army training; air traffic
<b>ATB</b>	annual training brief
<b>ATC</b>	Army Training Center; air traffic control
<b>ATCCS</b>	Army Tactical Command and Control System

<b>ATCTP</b>	Air Traffic Controller Training Program
<b>ATO</b>	air tasking order
<b>ATS</b>	air traffic services
<b>AVCATT-A</b>	Aviation Combined Arms Tactical Trainer—Aviation
<b>AVIM</b>	aviation intermediate maintenance
<b>AWOL</b>	absent without leave
<b>BBS</b>	Brigade and Battalion Simulation
<b>BCBST</b>	battle command and battle staff training
<b>BDAR</b>	battle damage assessment repair
<b>BDE</b>	brigade
<b>BOS</b>	Battlefield Operating System
<b>BP</b>	battle position
<b>BSX</b>	battle simulation exercise
<b>C<sup>2</sup></b>	command and control
<b>C<sup>3</sup></b>	command, control, and communications
<b>C<sup>4</sup></b>	command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence
<b>CALFEX</b>	combined arms live fire exercise
<b>CALL</b>	Center for Army Lessons Learned
<b>CATS</b>	combined arms training strategy
<b>CATT</b>	Combined Arms Tactical Trainer
<b>CAX</b>	computer-assisted exercise
<b>CBS</b>	Corps Battle Simulation
<b>CC</b>	chemical corps; control center
<b>CCAD</b>	Corpus Christi Army depot
<b>CCIR</b>	commander's critical information requirements
<b>CCP</b>	casualty collection point; consolidation and containerization point
<b>CCTT</b>	Close Combat Tactical Trainer
<b>C-E</b>	communications-electronics
<b>CFX</b>	command field exercise
<b>CIP</b>	Command Inspection Program
<b>CIS</b>	Command Information System
<b>CJCS</b>	chairman of the joint chiefs of staff
<b>CMT</b>	company maintenance team
<b>COA</b>	course of action
<b>COMEX</b>	communications exercise
<b>COM/NAV</b>	communication and navigation (aid maintenance section)
<b>COMMO</b>	communications

---

<b>COMSEC</b>	communications security
<b>COSCOM</b>	Corps Support Command
<b>CP</b>	command post
<b>CPX</b>	command post exercise
<b>CS</b>	combat support; irritant symbol (o-chlorobenzalamlon)
<b>CSM</b>	command sergeant major
<b>CSS</b>	combat service support
<b>CSSTSS</b>	Combat Service Support Training Simulation System
<b>CTA</b>	consolidated training activities; common table of allowances
<b>CTC</b>	combat training center
<b>CTG</b>	command training guidance
<b>CTT</b>	common task training
<b>CTX</b>	combined training exercise
<b>DA</b>	Department of the Army; irritant symbol (diphenylchloroarsine)
<b>DA Form</b>	Department of the Army form
<b>DA Pam</b>	Department of the Army pamphlet
<b>DARPA</b>	Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency
<b>DARR</b>	Department of the Army regional representative
<b>DC</b>	direct current; displaced civilians
<b>DD Form</b>	Department of Defense form
<b>DEPEX</b>	deployment exercise
<b>DIS</b>	Defense Information System
<b>DISCOM</b>	division support command
<b>DMX</b>	decisionmaking exercise
<b>DOTDS</b>	Directorate of Training, Doctrine, and Simulation
<b>DTG</b>	date time group
<b>DTLOMS</b>	doctrine, training, leader development, organization, materiel, and soldiers
<b>DTX</b>	digital training exercise
<b>DZ (Avn)</b>	drop zone
<b>EA</b>	engagement area; electronic attack (formerly electronic countermeasures)
<b>EAC</b>	echelon above corps
<b>ECCM</b>	electronic counter-countermeasures
<b>EDRE</b>	emergency deployment readiness exercise
<b>EEFI</b>	essential elements of friendly information
<b>ENCATT</b>	Engineer Combined Arms Tactical Trainer
<b>EOC</b>	emergency operations center

<b>EP</b>	electronic protection
<b>EPW</b>	enemy prisoner of war
<b>EW</b>	electronic warfare
<b>FAA</b>	functional area assessment; Federal Aviation Administration
<b>FAAD</b>	forward area air defense
<b>FAAO</b>	Federal Aviation Administration order
<b>FAC</b>	forward air controller
<b>FAMSIM</b>	family of simulations
<b>FARP</b>	forward arming and refueling point
<b>FBCB<sup>2</sup></b>	Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below
<b>FCC</b>	flight coordination center; fire control computer
<b>FCX</b>	fire coordination exercise
<b>FER</b>	final exercise report
<b>FH</b>	frequency hopping
<b>FLIP</b>	flight information publication
<b>FM</b>	field manual; frequency modulation (radio)
<b>FOC</b>	flight operations center
<b>FORSCOM</b>	U.S. Army Forces Command
<b>FRAGO</b>	fragmentary order
<b>FSB</b>	forward support battalion
<b>FSCATT</b>	Fire Support Combined Arms Tactical Trainer
<b>FST</b>	field sanitation team; finance support team
<b>FTM</b>	facility training manual
<b>FTX</b>	field training exercise
<b>G1</b>	Assistant Chief of Staff, personnel
<b>G2</b>	Assistant Chief of Staff, intelligence
<b>G3</b>	Assistant Chief of Staff, operations
<b>GCA</b>	ground-controlled approach
<b>GRREG</b>	graves registration
<b>HD</b>	horizontal distance
<b>HF</b>	high frequency
<b>HHC</b>	headquarters and headquarters company
<b>HHT</b>	headquarters and headquarters troop
<b>HIMAD</b>	high-to-medium-altitude air defense
<b>HLZ</b>	helicopter landing zone
<b>HPZ</b>	helicopter pickup zone

---

<b>HQ</b>	headquarters
<b>HQDA</b>	Headquarters, Department of the Army
<b>IAW</b>	an accordance with
<b>ICAC<sup>2</sup></b>	integrated combat airspace command and control
<b>ICAO</b>	International Civil Aviation Organization
<b>IDT</b>	inactive duty training
<b>IEW</b>	intelligence and electronic warfare
<b>IFF</b>	identification, friend or foe
<b>IFR</b>	instrument flight rules
<b>IMC</b>	instrument meteorological conditions
<b>INTSUM</b>	intelligence summary
<b>IPB</b>	intelligence preparation of the battlefield
<b>ITEP</b>	Individual Training Evaluation Program
<b>JCS</b>	joint chiefs of staff
<b>JOG-A</b>	Joint Operations Group-A
<b>JP</b>	joint publication
<b>JRTC</b>	joint readiness training center
<b>JTX</b>	joint training exercise
<b>LAN</b>	local area network
<b>LCX</b>	logistical coordination exercise
<b>LFX</b>	live fire exercise
<b>LNO</b>	liaison officer
<b>LOA</b>	letter of agreement
<b>LOGEX</b>	logistics exercise
<b>LOI</b>	letter of instruction
<b>LOS</b>	line of sight
<b>LP</b>	listening post
<b>LTX</b>	lane training exercise
<b>LWO</b>	local weather observation
<b>LZ</b>	landing zone
<b>M&amp;S</b>	models and simulations
<b>MACOM</b>	major Army command
<b>MAPEX</b>	map exercise
<b>MARKS</b>	Modern Army Recordkeeping System
<b>MCS</b>	Maintenance Control System; Maneuver Control System

<b>MDMP</b>	military decisionmaking process
<b>MEDEVAC</b>	medical evacuation
<b>METAR</b>	meteorological terminal aviation report
<b>METL</b>	mission essential task list
<b>METT-TC</b>	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time, and civilian considerations
<b>MI</b>	military intelligence
<b>MIJI</b>	meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion
<b>MILES</b>	Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System
<b>MOBEX</b>	mobilization exercise
<b>ModSAF</b>	modular semi-automated forces
<b>MOPP</b>	mission-oriented protective posture
<b>MOS</b>	military occupational specialty
<b>MPRT</b>	mission planning rehearsal tool
<b>MQS</b>	military qualification standards
<b>MSL</b>	maintenance supply liaison; mean sea level
<b>MSRT</b>	mobile subscriber radio-telephone terminal
<b>MTOE</b>	modified table of organization and equipment
<b>MTP</b>	mission training plan
<b>N/A</b>	not applicable
<b>NATO</b>	North Atlantic Treaty Organization
<b>NAVAID</b>	navigational aid
<b>NBC</b>	nuclear, biological, and chemical
<b>NCO</b>	noncommissioned officer
<b>NCOPD</b>	noncommissioned officer professional development
<b>NDB</b>	nondirectional radio beacon
<b>N-hour</b>	notification hour
<b>NLOS</b>	nonline of sight
<b>NLT</b>	not later than
<b>NTC</b>	national training center
<b>NVD</b>	night vision device
<b>OB</b>	order of battle
<b>O/C</b>	observer/controller
<b>OEG</b>	operational exposure guide
<b>OFS</b>	Officer Foundation Standards
<b>OIC</b>	officer In charge
<b>OneSAF</b>	one semi-automated force
<b>OP</b>	observation post

---

<b>OPCON</b>	operational control
<b>OPD</b>	officer professional development
<b>OPFOR</b>	opposing force
<b>OPLAN</b>	operation plan
<b>OPORD</b>	operation order
<b>OPSEC</b>	operations security
<b>OPTEMPO</b>	operational tempo
<b>P</b>	needs practice
<b>PAC</b>	Personnel and Administration Center
<b>PAR</b>	precision approach radar
<b>PC</b>	pilot in command
<b>PCC</b>	precombat checks
<b>PCI</b>	precombat inspection
<b>PERSTEMPO</b>	personnel tempo
<b>PFPX</b>	partnership for peace exercise
<b>PIR</b>	priority intelligence requirements
<b>PIREP</b>	pilot report
<b>PLL</b>	prescribed load list
<b>PMCS</b>	preventive maintenance checks and services
<b>POL</b>	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
<b>POM</b>	preparation for overseas movement; program objective memorandum
<b>PPR</b>	periodic personnel report
<b>PSNCO</b>	personnel service noncommissioned officer
<b>PSRC</b>	partial selective reserve callups
<b>PT</b>	physical training
<b>PX</b>	Army Exchange
<b>PZ</b>	pickup zone
<b>QA</b>	quality assurance
<b>QTB</b>	quarterly training briefing
<b>QTG</b>	quarterly training guidance
<b>R&amp;R</b>	rest and recuperation
<b>R&amp;S</b>	reconnaissance and surveillance
<b>RC</b>	Reserve component
<b>RES</b>	radiation exposure status
<b>RETRANS</b>	Retransmit (panel nomenclature)

<b>RDL</b>	General Dennis J. Reimer Training and Doctrine Digital Library
<b>RF</b>	reserve forces; radio frequency
<b>ROE</b>	rules of engagement
<b>ROM</b>	refuel on the move
<b>RP</b>	reference point; release point; red phosphorus; reporting point
<b>S1</b>	adjutant
<b>S2</b>	intelligence officer
<b>S3</b>	operations and training officer
<b>S4</b>	supply officer
<b>S5</b>	civil affairs officer (U.S. Army)
<b>S6</b>	communications-electronics officer; signal officer
<b>SAEDA</b>	subversion and espionage directed against U.S. Army
<b>SAF</b>	semi-automated forces
<b>SARSS-O</b>	Standard Army Retail System
<b>SASO</b>	stability and support operations
<b>SATS</b>	Standard Army Training System
<b>SE</b>	synthetic environment
<b>SEDRE</b>	sealift emergency deployment readiness exercise
<b>SIDPERS</b>	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System
<b>SIF</b>	selective identification feature
<b>SIGO</b>	signal officer
<b>SIGSEC</b>	signal security
<b>SIMNET-T</b>	Simulations Networking Trainer
<b>SINCGARS</b>	Single Channel Ground and Air Radio System
<b>SITMAP</b>	situation map
<b>SITREP</b>	situation report
<b>SJA</b>	Staff Judge Advocate
<b>SM</b>	soldier's manual
<b>SOF</b>	Special Operations Forces
<b>SOI</b>	signal operation instructions
<b>SOP</b>	standing operating procedure
<b>SORTS</b>	Status of Resource and Training System
<b>SP</b>	start point
<b>SSA</b>	supply support activity
<b>STAARS</b>	Standard Army After Action Review System
<b>STAFFEX</b>	staff exercise
<b>STP</b>	soldier training publication
<b>STX</b>	situational training exercise

---

<b>SVFR</b>	special visual flight rules
<b>T</b>	trained
<b>TAACOM</b>	theater Army area command
<b>TAC</b>	Tactical Air Command; tactical air coordinator; trainer, advisor, and counselor; type of activity code
<b>TAC CP</b>	tactical command post
<b>TACCS</b>	Tactical Army Combat Computer System
<b>TACSIM</b>	Tactical Simulation
<b>TACSOP</b>	tactical standard operating procedure
<b>TACT</b>	tactical aviation control team
<b>TADIL A</b>	tactical data link A
<b>TADIL B</b>	tactical data link B
<b>TADSS</b>	training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations
<b>TAGS</b>	Theater Air Ground System
<b>TAIS</b>	Tactical Airspace Integration System
<b>TAM</b>	training assessment module
<b>TAMMS</b>	The Army Maintenance Management System
<b>TAPS</b>	Tactical Approach Publications System
<b>TB</b>	technical bulletin
<b>TC</b>	technical coordinator; training circular; tank commander
<b>TD</b>	training development
<b>T&amp;EO</b>	training and evaluation outline
<b>TERPS</b>	terminal instrument procedures
<b>TEWT</b>	tactical exercise without troops
<b>TM</b>	technical manual
<b>TMDE</b>	test, measurement, and diagnostic equipment
<b>TOC</b>	tactical operations center
<b>TOCEX</b>	tactical operations center exercise
<b>TOE</b>	table of organization and equipment
<b>TPC</b>	tactical pilotage chart
<b>TRAMOD</b>	training module
<b>TRADOC</b>	U.S. Army Training and Doctrine Command
<b>TSIU</b>	tactical simulation interface unit
<b>TSOP</b>	tactical standing operating procedures
<b>TSP</b>	training support package
<b>TSBN</b>	training support battalion
<b>TTP</b>	tactics, techniques, and procedures
<b>TTCS</b>	Tactical Terminal Control System, AN/TSQ-198

<b>U</b>	untrained
<b>U.S.</b>	United States (of America)
<b>UAP</b>	unit airspace plan
<b>UCMJ</b>	Uniform Code of Military Justice
<b>UHF</b>	ultra high frequency
<b>ULLS-A</b>	Unit Level Logistics System—Aviation
<b>USAAVNC</b>	United States Army Aviation Center
<b>USAF</b>	U.S. Air Force
<b>USO</b>	United Services Organization
<b>USR</b>	unit status report
<b>UVU</b>	UHF/VHF/UHF
<b>VHF</b>	very high frequency
<b>VISMOD</b>	visual modification
<b>VMC</b>	visual meteorological condition
<b>VUV</b>	VHF/UHF/VHF
<b>WSRO</b>	weapon systems replacement operations
<b>XO</b>	executive officer

## Section II—Terms

### **DUSTOFF**

Call sign for medical evacuation helicopter

### **JANUS**

Name of a computer-driven battle simulation

### **Meaconing, Intrusion, Jamming, and Interference**

A joint program that encompasses the reporting, evaluating, and issuing of information on suspected hostile electronic warfare (EW) activities

### **SIMNET**

Simulations network simulators

### **SPECTRUM**

Name of a computer-driven program that addresses deficiencies in C<sup>2</sup> training for SASO

### **WARMD**

Warfighters' Modernization

### **WARSIM**

Warfighters' Simulation

# REFERENCES

## REQUIRED PUBLICATIONS

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or comply with this publication.

### ARMY REGULATIONS

AR 25-400-2. The Modern Army Recordkeeping System (MARKS), 26 February 1993.

AR 27-10. Legal Services: Military Justice, 24 June 1996.

AR 34-4. Army Standardization Policy, 15 March 1984.

AR 95-2. Air Traffic Control, Airspace Airfields, Flight Activities, and Navigation Aids, 10 August 1990.

AR 220-10. Preparation of Overseas Movement of Units (POM), 15 June 1973.

AR 381-10. U.S. Army Intelligence Activities, 01 July 1984.

AR 381-12. Subversion and Espionage Directed Against U.S. Army (SAEDA), 15 January 1993.

AR 385-95. Army Aviation Accident Prevention, 20 May 1991.

### DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY FORMS

DA Forms are available on the Army Electronic Library (AEL) CD (EM001) and the USAPA web site ([www.usapa.army.mil](http://www.usapa.army.mil)).

DA Form 31. Request and Authority for Leave, 00 September 1993.

DA Form 647. Personnel Register, 01 August 1978.

DA Form 1155. Witness Statement on Individual, 01 June 1966 (Available through normal forms supply channels)

DA Form 1156. Casualty Feeder Report, 01 June 1966. (Available through normal forms supply channels)

DA Form 1594. Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log, 01 November 1962.

DA Form 2028. Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms, 01 February 1974.

DA Form 2404. Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet, 01 April 1979.

DA Form 3479-8-R. Tactical Approach Publications System (TAPS), 00 November 1987.

DA Form 3501-R. GCA Operations Log, 00 November 1978.

DA Form 3502-R. Daily Report of Air Traffic Control Facility, 00 April 1993.

DA Form 3503-R. Air Traffic Control Position Log, 00 November 1987.

DA Form 3955. Change of Address and Directory Card, 01 February 1979.

DA Form 4179-R. Leave Control Log. 00 Sep 93.

DA Form 4186. Medical Recommendation for Flying Duty, 00 January 1985.

### DEPARTMENT OF ARMY PAMPHLETS

DA PAM 385-1. Small Unit Safety Officer/NCO Guide, 29 November 2001.

DA PAM 600-41. Military Personnel Managers Mobilization Handbook, 01 January 1987

DA PAM 600-8. Management and Administrative Procedures, (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1), 25 February 1986.

DA PAM 600-8-20. SIDPERS Handbook for Commanders, 01 April 1986

DA PAM 738-750. Functional User's Manual for The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS), 01 August 1994.

### **DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD) FORMS**

DD Forms are available from the OSD web site ([www.dior.whs.mil/ICDHOME/DDEFORMS.HTM](http://www.dior.whs.mil/ICDHOME/DDEFORMS.HTM))

DD Form 551. Record of Internment, 00 August 1984. (Reproduced locally)

DD Form 565. Statement of Recognition of Deceased, 00 July 1998.

DD Form 567. Record of Search and Recovery, 00 July 1998.

### **DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE REGULATION**

DOD 4500.9-R. Defense Transportation Regulation, Part III, Mobility, November 2001. (Formerly Movement of Units in Air Force Aircraft, 10 November 1989. (FM 55-12))

### **FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION (FAA) FORM**

FAA Form 7230-21. Flight Progress Strip, 00 April 1975. (Available through normal forms supply channels)

### **FAA ORDERS**

FAA Order 7110.65. Air Traffic Control, 28 February 1999.

FAA Order 7210.3. Facility Operations and Administration, 24 February 2000.

### **FIELD MANUALS**

FM numbering is in transition to a new system. The first number shown is the current number. The second number, shown in parentheses, is the old or superseded FM. If no old number appears, the publication will be superseded by a new publication or rescinded. A statement following gives the new number that will be used when the FM is revised.

FM 1-100. Army Aviation Operations, 21 February 1997. (Will be revised as 3-04.100)

FM 1-111. Aviation Brigades, 27 October 1997. (Will be revised as 3-04.111)

FM 1-112. Attack Helicopter Operations, 01 April 1997. (Will be revised as FM 3-04.112)

FM 1-113. Utility and Cargo Helicopters, 12 September 1997. (Will be revised as FM 3-04.113)

FM 1-114. Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations, 01 February 2000. (Will be revised as FM 3-04.114)

FM 1-120. Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations, 22 May 1995. (Will be revised as 3-04.120)

FM 1-303. Air Traffic Control Facility Operations and Training, 05 April 1993. (Will be revised as FM 3-04.303)

FM 3-0 (FM 100-5). Operations, 14 June 2001.

FM 3-04.513 (FM 1-513). Battlefield Recovery and Evacuation of Aircraft, 27 September 2000.

FM 3-3. Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance, 16 November 1992, C1, 29 September (Will be revised as FM 3-11.3)

FM 3-4. NBC Protection (Reprinted W/Basic and Incl C1), 29 May 1992 (Will be revised as 3-11.4)

FM 3-5. NBC Decontamination, 28 July 2000. (Will be revised as FM 3-11.5)

FM 3-7 (FM 3-8). NBC Field Handbook, 29 September 1994. (Will be revised as 3-11.7)

FM 3-19.30 (FM 19-30). Physical Security. 08 January 2001.

- FM 3-19.40 (FM 19-40). Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees, and Detained Persons, 01 August 2001.
- FM 3-20.15 (FM 17-15). Tank Platoon, 03 April 1996. 01 November 2001.
- FM 3-50. Smoke Operations, 04 December 1990, C1, 11 September 1996. (Will be revised as 3-11.50)
- FM 3-52 (FM 100-103). Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone, 1 August 2002.
- FM 3-100. Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals, 08 May 1996. (Will be revised as FM 3-11.100)
- FM 3-100.2 (FM 100-103-1). ICAC<sup>2</sup> Multi-Service Procedures for Integrated Combat Airspace Command and Control, 30 June 2000.
- FM 4-25.13 (FM 21-10-1). Unit Field Sanitation, 25 January 2002.
- FM 4-30.3 (FM 9-43-1)(FM 43-5) Maintenance Operations and Procedures, 01 September 2000.
- FM 5-103. Survivability, 10 June 1985. (Will be revised as FM 3-34.103)
- FM 6-20. Fire Support in the AirLand Battle, 17 May 1988. (Will be revised as FM 3-09)
- FM 6-22.5 (FM 22-9). Combat Stress, 23 June 2001.
- FM 7-7. The Mechanized Infantry Platoon, 15 March 1985. (Will be revised as FM 3-21.7)
- FM 7-8. Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad, 22 April 1992. (Will be revised as FM 3-21.8)
- FM 7-10. The Infantry Rifle Company, 14 December 1990, C1, 31 October 2000. (Will be revised as FM 3-21.10)
- FM 7-20. The Infantry Battalion, 06 April 1992, C1, 29 December 2000. (Will be revised as FM 3-21.20)
- FM 7-91. Tactical Employment of Antiarmor Platoons, Companies, and Battalions. (Will be revised as FM 3-21.9)
- FM 8-10-06 (FM 8-35) Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures, 14 April 2000. (Will be revised as 4-02.6)
- FM 10-27-4. Organizational Supply and Services for Unit Leaders, 14 April 2000.
- FM 10-450-3. Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Basic Operations and Equipment, 10 April 1997. (Will be revised as FM 4-20.197)
- FM 10-450-4. Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Single-Point Load Rigging Procedures, 30 May 1998, C1, 01 February 2000. (Will be revised as FM 4-10.198)
- FM 11-43. The Signal Leader's Guide, 12 June 1995. (Will be revised as FM 6-02.43)
- FM 12-6 (TC 12-6). Personnel Doctrine, 09 September 1994. (Will be revised as FM 1-0)
- FM 16-1. Religious Support, 26 May 1995. (Will be revised as FM 1-05)
- FM 17-95. Cavalry Operations, 24 December 1996. (Will be revised as FM 3-20.95)
- FM 20-3 (FM 5-20). Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys, 30 August 1999. (Will be revised as FM 3-24.3)
- FM 21-10-1. Unit Field Sanitation Team, 11 October 1989. (Will be revised as FM 4-25.12)
- FM 21-60. Visual Signals, 30 September 1987. (Will be revised as FM 3-25-60)
- FM 21-75. Combat Skills of the Soldier, 03 August 1984. (Will be revised as FM 3-25.75)
- FM 22-100. Army Leadership, 31 August 1999. (Will be revised as FM 6-22)
- FM 24-1. Signal Support Operations in the AirLand Battle, 15 October 1990. (Will be revised as FM 6-02)
- FM 24-11. Tactical Satellite Communications, 20 September 1990. (Will be revised as FM 6-24.11)

- FM 24-16. Communications-Electronics Operations, Orders, Records, and Reports, 07 April 1978. (Will be revised as FM 6-24.11)
- FM 24-18. Single-Channel Radio Communications Technique, 1 April 2002. (Will be revised as FM 6-24.18)
- FM 24-19. Radio Operator's Handbook, 24 May 1991. (Will be revised as FM 6-24.10)
- FM 24-22. Communications-Electronics Management System, 30 June 1977. (Will be revised as FM 6-24.22)
- FM 24-33. Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures, 17 July 1990 (Will be revised as FM 6-24.33)
- FM 24-35. (O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI," 26 October 1990. (Will be revised as FM 6-24.35)
- FM 25-4. How to Conduct Training Exercises, 1 September 1984. (Will be revised as 7-10.2)
- FM 34-1. Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations, 17 September 1994. (Will be revised as FM 2-0)
- FM 34-2-1. Tactical, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance and Surveillance, 19 June 1991. (Will be revised as FM 2-00.21)
- FM 34-130. Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield, 08 July 1994. (Will be revised as FM 2-01.3)
- FM 41-10. Civil Affairs Operations. 14 February 2000. (Will be revised as FM 3-57)
- FM 44-8. Combined Arms for Air Defense. 01 June 1999. (Will be revised as FM 3-01.8)
- FM 55-9. Unit Air Movement Planning (reprinted w/Basic Incl C1, 05 April 1993. (Will be revised as FM 4-01.9)
- FM 55-20. Rail Transport in a Theater of Operations. 91 June 2000. (Will be revised as FM 4-01.12)
- FM 55-30 (FM 55-312). Army Motor Transport Units and Operations, 27 June 2000. Will be revised as FM 4-01.30)
- FM 55-38. Pathfinder Operations, 09 April 1993. (Will be revised as FM 3-21.38)
- FM 71-2. The Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force. (Will be revised as FM 3-91.2)
- FM 100-5. Operations. 24 June 2001.
- FM 100-10. Combat Service Support, 03 October 1955. (Will be revised as FM 4-0)
- FM 100-14. Risk Management, 23 April 1998. (Will be revised as 3-100.14)
- FM 100-17 Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization, 28 October 1992. (Will be revised as FM 3-35)
- FM 100-20. Military Operations in Low Intensity Conflict, 05 December 1990. (Will be revised as FM 3-07)
- FM 100-103-2. TAGS Multi-Service Procedures for the Theater Air Ground System, 29 July 1998. (Will be revised as FM 3-52.2)
- FM 101-5. Staff Organization and Operations, 31 May 1997. (Will be revised as FM 5-20)
- FM 101-5-1. Operational Terms and Graphics, 30 September 1997. (Will be revised as FM 5-20.1)

#### **JOINT PUBLICATIONS**

- JP 3-50.21. Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Combat Search and Rescue, 23 March 1998.
- JP 3-52. Doctrine for Joint Airspace Control in the Combat Zone, 22 July 1995.

**TECHNICAL MANUALS**

- TM 11-4940-238-14-1. Operator's, Organizational, Direct Support and General Support Maintenance Manual for Electronic Shops, Shelter Mounted, Avionics AN/ASM-146B and AN/ASM-146C, AN/ASM-147B and AN/ASM-147C. 16 January 1978.
- TM 11-5825-255-12. Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual For Beacon Sets Radio AN/TRN-30(V)1 and AN/TRN-30(V)2, (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1), 19 October 1983.
- TM 11-5840-281-12. Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Radar Set AN/TPN-18 (reprinted w/Basic incl C1-2), 24 November 1970.
- TM 11-5840-281-12-1. Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Radar Set, AN/TPN-18A, 15 January 1986.
- TM 11-5895-1568-14. Operator, Unit, Direct Support, and General Support Maintenance Manual for Tactical Terminal Control System, AN/TSQ-198, 01 May 1997.
- TM 11-5895-469-12. Operators and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Flight Coordination Central, AN/TSC-61B, 15 August 1979.
- TM 11-5895-474-12. Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Landing Control Central, AN/TSQ-71B and AN/TSQ-71B Modified, 01 September 1990.
- TM 11-5895-579-12. Operators and Organizational Maintenance Manual: Air Traffic Control Facility, AN/TSQ-97, 01 April 1980.
- TM 95-225. United States Standard: Flight Inspection, 01 May 1963.
- TM 95-226. United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS), 01 July 1976.
- TM 95-228. United States Interagency Ground Inspection Manual: Air Traffic Control and Navigational Aids Facilities, 01 April 1967.

**TRAINING CIRCULAR**

- TC 24-20 (FM 24-20) Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques, 3 October 1988.

**RELATED PUBLICATIONS**

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

**ARMY REGULATIONS**

- AR 380-5. Department of the Army Information Security Program, 29 September 2000.
- AR 385-10. The Army Safety Program, 23 May 1988.
- AR 40-5. Preventive Medicine, 15 October 1990.
- AR 710-2. Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level, 31 October 1997.

**DEPARTMENT OF ARMY PAMPHLETS**

- DA PAM 600-67. Effective Writing for Army Leaders, 02 June 1986.
- DA PAM 710-2-1. Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures), 31 December 1997.

**FIELD MANUALS**

- FM 1-300. Flight Operations Procedures, 15 July 1998. (Will be revised as FM 3-04.300)
- FM 21-10. Field Hygiene and Sanitation, 21 June 2000. (Will be revised as FM 4-25.10)
- FM 22-6. Guard Duty, 17 September 1971. (Will be revised as FM 3-22.6)
- FM 34-3. Intelligence Analysis, 15 March 1990. (Will be revised as FM 2-33.5)

FM 34-25-3. All-Source Analysis System and the Analysis and Control Element, 03 October 1995.  
(Will be revised as FM 2-50.301)

### **TECHNICAL BULLETIN**

TB 750-25. Maintenance of Supplies and Equipment: Army Test, Measurement and Diagnostic Equipment (TMDE) Calibration and Repair and Support Program, 01 March 1997.

### **ARMY REGULATIONS**

AR 385-10. The Army Safety Program, 23 May 1988.

AR 40-5. Preventive Medicine, 15 October 1990.

AR 710-2. Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level, 31 October 1997.

### **DEPARTMENT OF ARMY PAMPHLETS**

DA PAM 600-67. Effective Writing for Army Leaders, 02 June 1986.

DA PAM 710-2-1. Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures), 31 December 1997.

### **SOLDIER'S TRAINING PUBLICATIONS**

STP 1-15II-MQS. Military Qualification Standards II, Aviation Branch (15), Company Grade Officer's and Aviation Commissioned Warrant Officer's Manual, 23 March 1992.

STP 1-93C1-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 93C, Air Traffic Control Operator, Skill Level 1, 28 December 1994.

STP 1-93C24-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 93C, Air Traffic Control Operator, Skill Levels 2/3/4, 08 December 1994.

STP 1-93P1-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 93P, Aviation Operations Specialist, Skill Level 1, 31 July 1996.

STP 1-93P24-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Level 2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 93P, Aviation Operations Specialist, 31 July 1996.

STP 3-74II-MQS. Military Qualification Standards II, Chemical Branch (74), Company Grade Officer's Manual, 29 March 1991.

STP 3-54B1-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 54B, Chemical Operations Specialist, Skill Level 1, 16 June 1995.

STP 3-54B2-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 54B, Chemical Operations Specialist, Skill Level 2, 03 October 1995.

STP 3-54B34-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 54B, Skill Level 3/4, Chemical Operations Specialist, 26 January 1996.

STP 9-52C13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide for Utilities Equipment Repairer Skill Levels 1, 2, 3 MOS 52C, 26 April 2001.

STP 9-52D13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 52D, Power Generator Equipment Repairer, Skill Levels 1, 2, 3, 15 September 2001.

STP 9-63B12-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 63B, Light Wheel Vehicle Mechanic, Skill Level 1/2, 17 September 1990.

STP 9-63B14-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 63B, Light Wheeled Vehicle Mechanic, Skill Levels 1, 2, 3, and 4, 23 June 2001.

STP 9-63Z5-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 63Z, Mechanical Maintenance Supervisor, Skill Level 5, 30 October 1989.

STP 10-77F15-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 77F, Petroleum Supply Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4/5, 08 May 1996.

- STP 10-92A12-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 92A, Automated Logistical Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2, 19 November 1993.
- STP 10-92G1-SM-TG. Soldiers Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 92G, Food Service Specialist, Skill Level 1, 16 February 1999.
- STP 10-92Y24-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 92Y, Unit Supply Specialist, Skill Level 2/3/4, 23 February 1994.
- STP 11-25II-MQS. Military Qualification Standards II, Signal Corps (25) Company Grade, Officer's Manual, 09 August 1991.
- STP 11-31C13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 31C, Radio Operator-Maintainer, Skill Levels 1/2/3, 29 August 1997.
- STP 11-31U14-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 31U, Signal Support Systems Specialist, Skill Levels 1-4, 14 June 1996.
- STP 12-71D15-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 71D, Legal Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4/5, 08 January 1996.
- STP 12-71L12-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 71L, Administrative Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2, 05 July 1995.
- STP 12-75H35-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 75H, Personnel Services Specialist, Skill Levels 3/4/5, 22 October 1995.
- STP 16-56II-MQS. Military Qualification Standards II, Chaplain Branch (56), Company Grade Officer's Manual, 05 February 1992.
- STP 16-71M1-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 71M, Chaplain Assistant, Skill Level 1, 02 July 1990.
- STP 21-1-SMCT. Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks, Skill Level 1, 01 October 1994.
- STP 21-24-SMCT. Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT), Skill Level 2-4, 01 October 1994.
- STP 34-96B14-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 96B, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4, Intelligence Analyst, 07 September 1994.



# MISSION TRAINING PLAN USER FEEDBACK

MTP NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_ DATE \_\_\_\_\_

MTP TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

User feedback is an important link in the improvement of training publications. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, this standard questionnaire is provided. Please answer each question frankly, and mail the questionnaire to Commander, U.S. Army Aviation Center, ATTN: ATZQ-TDS-D, Fort Rucker, AL 36362-5000.

## THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

1. What is your position (company commander, platoon sergeant, other)?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. How long have you served in this position? \_\_\_\_\_

3. How long have you served in this unit? \_\_\_\_\_

4. What is your component?  Active  Reserve

5. Where is your unit?

CONUS

Eighth U.S. Army

U.S. Army, Europe

U.S. Army Western Command

Other (specify) \_\_\_\_\_

## THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL:

6. How do you feel this MTP has affected training in your unit compared to other training products?

It has made training better.

It has had no effect on training.

It has made training worse (If so, explain why.)

7. Is this MTP easy to use, compared to other training products?

Easier

About the same

More difficult (If so, explain why.) \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

8. What part of the MTP was **most useful**? Why?

- Chapter 1, Unit Training
- Chapter 2, Training Matrixes
- Chapter 3, Mission Outline
- Chapter 4, Training Exercises
- Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines
- Chapter 6, External Evaluations

Why?

---

---

9. What part of the MTP was **least useful**? Why?

- Chapter 1, Unit Training
- Chapter 2, Training Matrixes
- Chapter 3, Mission Outline
- Chapter 4, Training Exercises
- Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines
- Chapter 6, External Evaluations

Why?

---

---

10. What part of the MTP was the **easiest to understand**?

- Chapter 1, Unit Training
- Chapter 2, Training Matrixes
- Chapter 3, Mission Outline
- Chapter 4, Training Exercises
- Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines
- Chapter 6, External Evaluations

Why?

---

---

11. What part of the MTP was the **most difficult to understand**?

- Chapter 1, Unit Training
- Chapter 2, Training Matrixes
- Chapter 3, Mission Outline
- Chapter 4, Training Exercises
- Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines
- Chapter 6, External Evaluations

Why?

---

12. What do you **like best** about this ARTEP?

- Format
- Content
- Graphics
- Readability
- Organization

13. What would you like to see **added** to this MTP? \_\_\_\_\_

14. What would you like to see **deleted** from this MTP? \_\_\_\_\_

15. Would you like to have added to this MTP a training matrix that contains an **alphabetical listing** of all tasks?       Yes                       No

16. Would you like to have added to this MTP a training matrix that contains a **separate crosswalk** between each collective task and its individual tasks?       Yes                       No

**THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES (FTX AND STXs):**

17. The training exercises prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime missions. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

- They provide 100 percent of my unit's training requirements.
- They provide 75 percent or more of my unit's training requirements. (Identify deficiencies on separate sheet.)
- They provide 50 percent or less of my unit's training requirements. (Identify deficiencies on a separate sheet.)
- They provide 25 percent or less of my units training requirements. (Identify deficiencies on a separate sheet.)

18. Would you recommend **adding or deleting** an STX or FTX to this MTP?

- Yes                       No

19. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises? (If more than one problem, please rank in order of importance; that is, 1, 2, 3, and so on.)

- Too many pages.
- Need more illustrations.
- Hard to read and understand.
- Need more information on leader training.
- Need more information on support and resources.
- Need more information on normally attached elements.
- Need more information on how to set up the exercises.
- Need more information on how to conduct the exercises.
- Do not interface well with other training products, such as crew drills.

20. How many STXs or FTXs have you trained on or participated in personally? \_\_\_\_\_

21. Additional comments:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**ARTEP 1-425-MTP  
19 DECEMBER 2002**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

**ERIC K. SHINSEKI**  
General, United States Army  
Chief of Staff

**Official:**



**JOEL B. HUDSON**  
Administrative Assistant to the  
Secretary of the Army  
0234001

**DISTRIBUTION:**

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and U.S. Army Reserve:* Distribute in accordance with initial distribution number 121556 requirements for ARTEP 1-425-MTP.

**PIN: 074486-000**